



South Africa Yearbook 2018/19



REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA





South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

FOREWORD

It is an honour to present South Africans and the international community with the official *South Africa Yearbook 2018/19*.

This volume provides inspiring reminders of and insightful data on a year marked by renewal and the collective effort of South Africans and our partners globally to move our country further forward.

Our nation dedicated 2018 to the centenary of Struggle stalwarts former President Nelson Mandela and Mama Albertina Nontsikelelo Sisulu. Our observance of this centenary year was born out of our recognition of these exceptional leaders' contribution in our past as well as our belief that the values they held dear will stand our society in good stead for centuries into the future.

Indeed, it was the values that Tata Mandela and Mama Sisulu had realised in their own lives and in the lives of the millions they led, that inspired our renewal in 2018.

Changes in the national leadership; firm actions to turn around years of corruption and flawed governance across many public institutions and our pursuit of inclusive growth made 2018 a watershed in our recent history.

Events of national importance during this year included the Presidential Health Summit which encompassed all sectors of society and the Jobs Summit where social partners adopted measures to create more jobs, prevent job losses, provide more investment in black-owned enterprises and support companies in distress.

Equally significant were the South Africa Investment Conference and an inaugural Africa Investment Forum which respectively saw South African and global enterprises commit and recommit themselves to growing our economy, and investors stepping up to reshape the fortunes of the African continent.

An economic stimulus and recovery plan containing a range of measures to ignite economic activity, restore investor confidence and create new jobs paved the way for the investment forums. The stimulus and recovery plan included measures to address challenges in education and healthcare, and improve municipal social infrastructure.

This Yearbook revisits 12 months in which South Africans from all walks of life recorded extraordinary achievements within our national borders and in the international arena.

This Yearbook should inspire all readers and users to contribute to South Africa's growth and renewal in ways that will ensure that the story we will tell in yearbooks to come will be even more inspiring and compelling.

We must be part of the change we want to see in South Africa, by uniting to build a society founded on the principles of justice, equality and prosperity for all.



Cyril Ramaphosa

Mr Cyril M. Ramaphosa
President of the Republic of South Africa
July 2019

South Africa Yearbook 2018/19
Twenty-sixth (26th) edition
(Originally published as *South Africa Official Yearbook*)

Compiled, edited and published by:
Government Communications (GCIS)
Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001

Telephone: 012 473 0000

Website: www.gcis.gov.za

Managing Editor: Elias Tibane

Editor: Miriam Mokoena

Assistant Editor: Malphia Honwane

Picture coordinator: Elizabeth Sibiya

Images supplied by: GCIS

Design and layout: Moipone Mampane

ISBN: 978-0-620-83194-9

The *South Africa Yearbook* (SAYB) is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring formal confirmation of any data in the SAYB, or more detailed specific information, should consult the sources as indicated. The information is also available on *Government Online* (www.gov.za).

Unless otherwise specified, the information contained in this book was the latest available in October 2019.

For any enquiries, please contact the Editor, Miriam Mokoena, tel: 012 473 0089, email: miriam@gcis.gov.za





South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

Land and its people

South Africa occupies the most southern tip of Africa with its long coastline stretching more than 3 000 km from the desert border with Namibia on the Atlantic coast southwards around the tip of Africa and then north to the border of subtropical Mozambique on the Indian Ocean.

The country has more than 290 conservation parks. It is home to almost 300 mammal species, about 860 bird species and 8 000 plant species. The annual sardine run is the biggest migration on the planet.

South Africa comprises nine world heritage sites and is divided into eight biomes.

The heritage sites are:

- Fossil Hominid Sites of South Africa (i.e. Cradle of Humankind, Taung Skull Fossil Site and Makapan Valley)
- Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape
- Robben Island
- Cape Floral Region Protected Areas
- iSimangaliso Wetland Park
- Vredefort Dome
- uKhahlamba / Drakensberg Park
- #Khomani Cultural Landscape

The biomes are:

- Grassland
- Savanna
- Succulent Karoo
- Nama Karoo
- Forest
- Fynbos
- Desert
- Thicket.

The country is considered to be the cradle of humankind and boasts 40% of all hominid finds on Earth.

The land

Stretching latitudinally from 22°S to 35°S and longitudinally from 17°E to 33°E, South Africa's surface area covers 1 219 602 km².

Physical features range from bushveld, grasslands, forests, deserts and majestic mountain peaks, to wide unspoilt beaches and coastal wetlands.

The country shares common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland, while the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho is landlocked by South African territory in the south-east.

The Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947, lie some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town.

The oceans and coastline

The warm Mozambique-Agulhas Current skirts the east and

south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the cold Benguela Current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola.

The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for significant differences in climate and vegetation, as well as differences in marine life.

Owing to the cold waters of the west coast being much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast.

Saldanha Bay on the west coast is the only ideal natural harbour.

Rivers and lakes

None of the country's rivers are commercially navigable and most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbanks block entry for most of the year.

South Africa has no significant natural lakes. Artificial lakes are used mostly for crop irrigation.

The Orange River is South Africa's largest river. Rising in the Drakensberg Mountains, it traverses through the Lesotho Highlands and joins the Caledon River between the Eastern

Cape and the Free State before it empties into the Atlantic Ocean forming the border with Namibia.

Other major rivers include the Vaal, Breede, Komati, Lepelle (previously Olifants), Tugela, Umzimvubu, Limpopo and Molopo.

Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major physiographic categories: the interior plateau and the land between the plateau and the coast.

Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 m in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert. The plateau is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level. The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and 60 km to 80 km in the west. At least three major subdivisions are recognised – the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions, and the western plateau slopes.

Climate

A subtropical location, moderated by ocean on three sides of the country and the altitude of the interior plateau, account for the warm temperate conditions. South Africa is a relatively dry country, with an average annual rainfall of about 500 mm.

While the Western Cape gets most of its rainfall in winter, the rest of the country is generally a summer-rainfall region.

Temperatures in South Africa tend to be lower than in other countries at similar latitudes owing mainly to greater elevation above sea level. On the interior plateau, the altitude – Johannesburg lies at 1 694 m – keeps the average summer temperatures below 30 °C. In winter, for the same reason, night-time temperatures can drop to freezing point or lower in some places. South Africa's coastal regions are therefore relatively warm in winter.

The hottest place in South Africa is Letaba in Limpopo, with a mean annual temperature of 23.7 °C and an average annual maximum temperature of 30.7 °C. The coldest place is Buffelsfontein near Molteno in the Eastern Cape, with a mean annual temperature of 11.5 °C and an average annual minimum temperature of 2.9 °C.

The wettest place is Matiwa in Limpopo with an average annual rainfall of 2004 mm (calculated over a 60-year period).

Average temperatures (°C) in South Africa

City	Summer		Winter	
	Max	Min	Max	Min
Bloemfontein	31	15	18	-2
Cape Town	26	16	18	7
Durban	28	21	23	11
East London	26	18	21	10
George	25	16	19	8
Johannesburg	26	15	17	4
Kimberley	33	17	19	2
Mthatha	27	17	21	5
Musina	34	22	25	8
Nelspruit	28	18	22	7
Pietermaritzburg	28	19	23	6
Polokwane	28	17	21	5
Port Elizabeth	26	18	20	8
Pretoria	29	18	20	5
Richards Bay	29	21	23	12
Skukuza	33	21	26	6
Thohoyandou	30	20	23	10
Upington	36	20	21	4

Source: South African Weather Service

The driest place in the country is Alexander Bay in the Northern Cape, with an average annual rainfall of only 46 mm and the windiest place is Cape Point in the Western Cape, which experiences only 2% of all hours in the year with calm conditions. The average wind speed is 6.9 m/s with 42.1% of the wind speeds higher than 8 m/s.

The people

For 2019, Statistics South Africa estimates the mid-year population at 58.78 million. The black African population is in the majority (47.4 million) and constitutes approximately 81% of the total South African population. The white population is estimated at 4.7 million, the coloured population at 5.2 million and the Indian/Asian population at 1.5 million. Approximately 51.2% (about 30 million) of the population is female.

Gauteng comprises the largest share of the South African population, with approximately 15.2 million people (25.8%) living in this province. KwaZulu-Natal is the province with the second largest population, with an estimated 11.3 million people (19.2%) living in this province. With a population of approximately 1.26 million people (2.2%), the Northern Cape remains the province with the smallest share of the South African population.

About 28.8% of the population is aged younger than 15 years and approximately 9.0% (5.3 million) is 60 years or older. Of those younger than 15 years of age, the majority reside in Gauteng (21.5%) and KwaZulu-Natal (21.1%). Of the elderly (those aged 60 years and older), the highest percentage 23.9% (1.27 million) reside in Gauteng. The proportion of elderly persons aged 60 and older is increasing over time.

Migration is an important demographic process, as it shapes the age structure and distribution of the provincial population. For the period 2016 – 2021, Gauteng and the Western Cape are estimated to experience the largest inflow of migrants of approximately, 1 643 590 and 493 621 respectively.

Life expectancy at birth for 2019 is estimated at 61.5 years for males and 67.7 years for females.

The infant mortality rate for 2019 is estimated at 22.1 per 1000 live births.

Languages according to mother tongue

Language	Percentage	Language	Percentage
IsiZulu	24.6%	isiNdebele	1.6%
IsiXhosa	17.0%	Siswati	2.6%
Afrikaans	12.1%	Tshivenda	2.4%
Sepedi	9.5%	Xitsonga	4.2%
English	8.3%	Sesotho	8%
Setswana	8.8%		

Source: Community Survey 2016 and mid-year population estimates, 2019

The estimated overall HIV prevalence rate is approximately 13.5% among the South African population. The total number of people living with HIV is estimated at approximately 7.97 million in 2019. For adults aged 15 – 49 years, an estimated 19.07% of the population is HIV positive.

Languages

Besides the official languages, scores of others – African, European, Asian and more – are spoken in South Africa, as the country lies at the crossroads of southern Africa. Other languages spoken here and mentioned in the Constitution are the Khoi, Nama and San languages, sign language, Arabic, German, French, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telugu and Urdu. There are also a few indigenous creoles and pidgins.

English is generally understood across the country, being the language of business, politics and the media, and the country's lingua franca. But it only ranks fourth out of 11 as a home language.

South Africa's linguistic diversity means that all 11 languages have had a profound effect on one another. South African English, for example, is littered with words and phrases from Afrikaans, isiZulu, Nama and other African languages.

According to Stats SA's Community Survey 2016, isiZulu is the most common home language spoken by 24.6% of the population, followed by isiXhosa (17%), Afrikaans (12.1%), Sepedi (9.5%), Setswana (8.8%), and English (8.3%), Sesotho (8%), Xitsonga (4.2%), Siswati (2.6%), Tshivenda (2.4%) and isiNdebele (1.6%).

In terms of the Use of Official Languages Act in 2012, and as part of promoting social cohesion and nation-building, every government department, public entity and enterprise is expected to establish a language unit and adopt a language policy.

Religion

South Africa is a secular democracy with freedom of religion. Many religions are represented in the ethnic and regional diversity of the population.

The majority of South Africans or 79.8%, are Christian. The independent African Zion Christian churches predominate, being the faith of 15.3% of the total population, and 19.2% of all Christians. Roughly 15% of the population have no religion, and 1.4% are undetermined about their faith. Islam is the religion of 1.5% of South Africans, Hinduism that of 1.2%, African traditional belief 0.3%, Judaism 0.2% and other beliefs 0.6%.

The provinces Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, at 168 966 km², is South Africa's second-largest province after the Northern Cape, taking up 13.9% of

Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho

Principal languages:

IsiXhosa 82.7%

Afrikaans 10.3%

English 3.9%

Population: 6 712 276

Percentage share of the total population: 11.4%

Area: 168 966 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and Mid-year population estimates, 2019



the total land area.

The province has a population of more than 6,7 million people, the majority of whom speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

It is a region of great natural beauty, particularly the rugged cliffs, rough seas and dense green bush of the Wild Coast.

The region has remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof Valley, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

Various floral habitats meet in the province, ranging from tropical forests in the north to the more temperate woods of the south.

The province is home to a number of higher education institutions, including Rhodes University, the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology.

It has airports in Bhisho, East London, Mthatha and Port Elizabeth. It also has two major harbours in East London and Port Elizabeth respectively.

Agriculture, fisheries and forestry

The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while sheep farming predominates in the Karoo.

The Alexandria-Grahamstown area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa.

An olive nursery developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare forms a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape.

The coastal areas receive good summer rainfall and have a moderate climate, becoming more subtropical to the north-west, which makes it particularly suitable for forestry.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources, and access to line-catches of hake.

Industry

There are two industrial development zones: the West Bank in East London and Coega, near Port Elizabeth, which includes the deepwater Port of Ngqura.

The metropolitan economies of Port Elizabeth and East London are based primarily on manufacturing, the most important being automotive manufacturing. The province is the hub of South Africa's motor industry. With its ability to link throughout the economy, the government has identified the automotive industry as a key growth sector. It already exhibited significant growth under the Motor Industry Development Programme.

Other important sectors include renewables and green industries, forestry and timber processing, pharmaceuticals, plastics and chemicals, capital goods and tourism.

Free State

According to the Mid-year population estimates, 2019, there were over 2.8 million people in the Free State on about 129 825 km² of land. The main languages spoken are Sesotho, Afrikaans and isiXhosa.

The Free State has wide horizons and blue skies, farmland, mountains, goldfields and widely dispersed towns.

It lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

Mangaung, comprising Bloemfontein, Botshabelo and Thaba Nchu, has an established institutional, educational and administrative infrastructure. With Bloemfontein being South Africa's judicial capital, the province houses the Supreme Court of Appeal. Important towns include Welkom, Sasolburg, Odendaalsrus, Kroonstad, Parys, Phuthaditjhaba, Bethlehem and the charming village of Clarens situated in the rolling foothills of the Maluti Mountains.

Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art can be found in the Free State. Other tourist attractions include the Golden Gate National Park, the annual air show in Bethlehem, the Cherry Festival in Ficksburg and the Fauresmith International

Endurance Ride equestrian event.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, known as Macufe, is hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State.

The Vredefort Dome, 10 km in diameter, is South Africa's seventh World Heritage Site.

Agriculture

Agriculture dominates the Free State landscape, with cultivated land covering 32 000 km² and natural veld and grazing 87 000 km² of the province. Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture.

Mining

The National Development Plan has intensified the mining potential that still exists in the goldfields region of Matjhabeng in the Lejweleputswa District as a job intervention zone. The De Bron-Merriespruit Gold Project and the Bloemhoek Gold Project are included as potential development projects in the scope of work of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission.

The province has 12 gold mines, producing 30% of South Africa's output and making it the fifth-largest producer of gold in the world. Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country. Uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields is extracted as a by-product.

The Free State's gold reef of more than 400 km stretches across the province from Gauteng. South Africa's largest gold-mining complex is Free State Consolidated Goldfields, with an area of 330 km².

Bituminous coal is mined and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg.

The province also produces high quality diamonds from its kimberlite pipes and fissures, and the country's largest deposit of bentonite is found in the Koppies district.

Manufacturing and industry

The Maluti-a-Phofung Special Economic Zone is the Free State's share of the logistics and industrial corridor. The Vehicle Distribution Centre was established in partnership with the German Bremen Logistics Group, which committed R60 million towards this project. The Harrismith Food Processing Park forms part of the broader development initiative.

The green economic solar zone in the Xhariep district was expected to result in the establishment of the Xhariep Solar Park, harnessing the solar radiation in the southern part of the Free State.

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme forms part of Eskom's capital expansion programme. This energy infrastructure project is located on the border of the Phumelela and Maluti-a-Phofung Local Municipalities in the Free State and eMnambithi Local Municipality and the uThukela District Municipality in KwaZulu-Natal.

Sasol South Africa, the largest producer of synthetic fuels on the sub-continent, remains a key role-player in the Free State economy. Its investment in its Sasolburg operations is evident from the Wax Expansion project, the Ethylene Purification Unit 5, the Gas Engine Power Plant and Clean Fuels 2.

The Omnia Nitric Acid complex, located within the Sasol Industrial Complex, includes a nitric acid plant, an ammonium nitrate plant, a porous ammonium nitrate plant, a fleet of 145 specialised ammonia rail tankers and other ancillary facilities.

Gauteng

The 2019 Mid-year population estimates show that Gauteng remains the most populous province – more than 15.1 million people (25.8%). Gauteng contributes 33.9% to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) and is also one of the biggest contributors to the economy of the continent.

Gauteng accounts for the bulk of all employees' remuneration in the country, at a whopping 47.7%, and is responsible for 50.4% of all company turnover in South Africa. Financial and business services, logistics, manufacturing, property, telecommunications and trade are some of the province's most important economic sectors.

It is the business heart of South Africa, but it is also the shopping mecca of Africa, with 60% of tourists from the rest of the continent citing shopping as their reason for visiting the province.

The population of more than 13 million people has the highest per-capita income level in the country. The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix, flavoured by a number of foreign influences.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport in Johannesburg.

Free State

Capital: Bloemfontein

Principal languages:

Sesotho 71.9%

Afrikaans 10.9%

isiXhosa 5.7%

Population: 2 887 465

Percentage share of the total population: 4.9%

Area: 129 825 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and Mid-year population estimates, 2019



Gauteng

Capital: Johannesburg

Principal languages:

isiZulu 23.0%

Afrikaans 10.1%

English 11.3%

Population: 15 176 116

Percentage share of the total population: 25.8%

Area: 18 178 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and Mid-year population estimates, 2019



South of Johannesburg lies Soweto, the most populous urban residential area in the country, with a population of more than a million.

The Gauteng Enterprise Propeller (GEP), an entity that falls under the province's Economic Development Department, signed a partnership with the United Nations Development Programme that is expected to boost small businesses and create jobs.

The GEP's new partnership would, through supplier links between small enterprises and bigger firms, assist in transforming the province's and South Africa's economy.

Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies South Africa's administrative capital, Pretoria. The magnificent Union Buildings, which overlook the city from Meintjieskop, represent the official seat of the South African Government and house the offices of the country's President.

The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and Ga-Rankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Cullinan, which is well known for its diamonds, and Mamelodi lie to the east. To the west lies Atteridgeville.

Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand; and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand. Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspuit, to the east, are of agricultural importance.

The University of Pretoria is the largest residential university in South Africa, while the University of South Africa is believed to be the largest correspondence university in the world. Other universities include the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg.

The province also has several other tertiary education institutions such as universities of technology and further education and training colleges. Gauteng is also home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), the Agricultural Research Council, the Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and the Human Sciences Research Council.

Mining and manufacturing

Manufacturing includes basic iron and steel, fabricated and metal products, food, machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies, vehicle parts and accessories, and chemical products.

All major gold and diamond mining houses have their headquarters in Johannesburg, the biggest being Anglo American and De Beers.

Although gold-mining and ancillary industries provide thousands of jobs, the importance of mining is declining

compared to the manufacturing and financial sectors. Gauteng dominates the South African economy in every major sector except agriculture, mining and quarrying. Mining produces only 6% of Gauteng's total income and 31% of export earnings.

Technology

More than 60% of South Africa's research and development takes place in Gauteng.

The CSIR is one of South Africa's leading science and technology research, development and implementation centres. Located in Pretoria, the CSIR's research and development areas include biosciences; the built environment; information and communication; materials science and manufacturing; natural resources and the environment; mineral resources; space technology; nanotechnology and synthetic biology.

The Innovation Hub in Pretoria is Africa's first internationally accredited science park and a full member of the International Association of Science Parks. Its community has become a regional centre of innovation and knowledge creation, linked to the fast-moving world of global interconnectivity, and made up of small, medium and micro-enterprises and multinational companies, employing over 1 000 people.

Industry and agriculture

A large area of Gauteng falls within the so-called "Maize Triangle." The province is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three subregional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria. Johannesburg houses the Johannesburg Stock Exchange Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. It includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast, stretching from Port Edward in the south to Mozambique in the north.

The Drakensberg mountain range stretches the entire length of KwaZulu-Natal's western boundary.

The Drakensberg forms the boundary between South Africa and the mountain kingdom of Lesotho, and offers some of the country's most awe-inspiring landscapes.

It provided the backdrop for the films *Zulu* (1964) and *Yesterday* (2004) and the setting for Alan Paton's novel *Cry, the Beloved Country*, and is the inspiration for a million picture postcards.

Within the area is a vast 243 000-hectare sweep of basalt summits and buttresses; this section was formally granted World Heritage status in November 2000, and was renamed uKhahlamba-Drakensberg Park.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions are hot and humid, with a subtropical climate. The Midlands area is drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground. In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Swaziland to the edge of the escarpment.

Visitors can enter the province through the King Shaka International Airport at La Mercy, north of Durban, or use the extensive national road network. There are also two major harbours – the port of Durban, which is one the busiest in Africa, and Richards Bay, which is an important coal-export harbour.

There are several nature reserves, including the Royal Natal National Park, Giant's Castle and the Kambberg Nature Reserve.

Tertiary institutions of learning in the province include the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

Industry and agriculture

KwaZulu-Natal has a diverse industrial sector, with major industries having developed around the port of Durban.

Major industries in the province are agriculture, forestry, aluminium, petro-chemicals, automotive manufacturing, steel production, plastics and packaging, paper and board manufacturing, and a range of industries associated with imports and exports though the major ports of Durban and Richards Bay.

The coastal belt is also a large producer of subtropical fruit and sugar, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetables, dairy and stock farming.

Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

Limpopo

South Africa's northernmost province shares borders with Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Botswana, making it the ideal gateway to Africa. Named after the Limpopo River that flows

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg

Principal languages:

IsiZulu 82.5%

Afrikaans 1.0%

English 12.5%

Population: 11 289 086

Percentage share of the total population: 19.2%

Area: 94 361 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and Mid-year population estimates, 2019



along its northern border, the province is rich in wildlife, natural beauty and historical and cultural treasures.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa Spatial Development Initiative, which is a network of rail and road corridors connected to the major seaports, opening up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane, the capital city, which lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road, running through the centre of the province, strings together a series of towns such as Bela-Bela, with its popular mineral spa; Modimolle, with its beautiful Waterberg mountain range; Mokopane; Polokwane; Makhado, at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, which is well-known for its majestic baobab trees. The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge.

Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi are Limpopo's major mining centres, while the town of Tzaneen in the picturesque Magoebaskloof is known for its tea plantations, forestry products and tropical fruit.

The province is in the Savanna Biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld. Natural resources include more than 50 provincial nature reserves and several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is along Limpopo's eastern boundary, which borders on Mozambique.

Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to the ancient people and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown.

Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane and the Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen. Mapungubwe ("Place of the Jackal") Hill, some 75 km from Musina, is a world heritage site. It served as a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about 950 AD to 1200 AD.

Agriculture

Limpopo produces a wide range of agricultural products. The area is a potato belt and known for its superior quality potatoes

for high-end markets. It also produces 75% of the country's mangoes; 65% of its papayas; 36% of its tea; 25% of its citrus, bananas and litchis; 60% of its avocados and two thirds of its tomatoes.

Other products include coffee, nuts, guavas, sisal, cotton, tobacco, sunflower, maize, wheat and grapes. In addition, more than 170 plantations produce timber.

Most of the higher-lying areas are devoted to cattle and game ranching, earning a reputation for quality biltong (salted, dried meat), which is a popular South African delicacy.

Industry and mining

Limpopo also has abundant mineral resources, making mining the critical sector of the province's economy by contributing 22% of the gross geographic product. Metals include platinum, chromium, nickel, cobalt, vanadium, tin, limestone and uranium clay.

Other reserves include antimony, phosphates, fluorspar, gold, diamonds, copper, emeralds, scheelites, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon, mica, black granite, corundum, feldspar and salt.

The Medupi Power Station, a new dry-cooled, coal-fired power station, is under construction near Lephalale. It is expected to create around 40 000 job opportunities.

Mpumalanga

Spectacular scenic beauty and an abundance of wildlife make the province one of South Africa's major tourist destinations.

Mpumalanga, which means "Place Where the Sun Rises", is home to just more than four million people. The principle languages are Siswati and isiZulu.

With a surface area of only 76 495 km², it is the second-smallest province after Gauteng, yet has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Swaziland in the east, and Gauteng in the west, the province is situated mainly on the high plateau grasslands of the Middleveld. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks terminating in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

The province has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Owing to its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, including the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Mbombela is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Other important towns are eMalahleni, Standerton, Piet Retief, Malalane, Ermelo, Barberton and Sabie, which lies in the centre of one of the

Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit

Principal languages:

SiSwati 29.1%

IsiZulu 28.8%

IsiNdebele 10.1%

Population: 4 592 187

Percentage share of the total population: 7.8

Area: 76 495 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and Mid-year population estimates, 2019



largest man-made forests in the world. Mpumalanga lies mainly within the Grassland Biome.

The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the Savanna Biome.

The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng, and Maputo in Mozambique, facilitates economic development and growth for the region.

Agriculture and forestry

Mpumalanga is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate. The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on the high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers.

Agriculture, as the backbone of the province's economy, employs 8.1% of its total workforce. An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruit – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, papayas, granadillas, guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced in the province.

Mbombela is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country's orange exports. The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated in the city.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area, which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus, cotton, tobacco, wheat and vegetables. Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also grown there.

Industry and manufacturing

Most of the manufacturing production in Mpumalanga occurs in the southern Highveld region; especially in Highveld Ridge, where large petrochemical plants such as Sasol 2 and Sasol 3 are located.

Large-scale manufacturing occurs especially in the northern Highveld area, particularly chrome-alloy and steel manufacturing. In the Lowveld subregion, industries concentrate on manufacturing products from agricultural and raw forestry material. The growth in demand for goods and services for

Limpopo

Capital: Polokwane

Principal languages:

Sepedi 56.0%

Tshivenda 17.1%

Xitsonga 16.6%

Population: 5 982 584

Percentage share of the total population: 10.2%

Area: 125 754 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and Mid-year population estimates, 2019



export via Maputo is expected to stimulate manufacturing in the province.

Mpumalanga is rich in coal reserves with eMalahleni being the biggest coal producer in Africa. South Africa's major power stations are situated in this province.

Kendal power station's cooling towers are the largest structures of their type in the world. The Kusile Power Station near Delmas, which was completed in 2016, is the country's biggest, contributing a massive 4 800 MW of electricity to the national grid.

One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg, which produces steel and vanadium, is home to Columbus Stainless, South Africa's only producer of stainless steel flat products.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape is South Africa's largest province, taking up almost a third of the country's total land area. However, the province is sparsely populated with only about 1.2 million people on 372 889 km² of land.

About 68% of the people speak Afrikaans while Setswana, isiXhosa and English are also widely spoken.

The last remaining true San people live in the Kalahari area, mainly along the Orange and Vaal rivers. Many fossils and San rock engravings have been found here, some of which are displayed at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley.

The province lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry.

The Northern Cape borders the Atlantic Ocean in the west with Namibia and Botswana to the north and north-west, respectively. It is fringed by the Swartberg mountain range on its southern border.

With two major airports at Kimberley and Upington, and an excellent road network, the province's interior is easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports.

Sutherland hosts the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

The Northern Cape is one of two sites to host the Square Kilometre Array (SKA) radio-telescope. Developed by scientists from 17 countries, the SKA will be the largest and most advanced radio telescope in the world.

Among many other benefits, the province's tourism and hospitality industry is profiting from the project, as scientists and other interested parties are flooding into the town of Carnarvon.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas, including the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Ai-Ais/

Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley

Principal languages:

Afrikaans 56.8%

Setswana 33.4%

IsiXhosa 5.2%

Population: 1 263 875

Percentage share of the total population: 2.2%

Area: 372 889 km²



Source: Community Survey 2016 and Mid-year population estimates, 2019

Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park and Augrabies Falls National Park.

The largest part of the province lies in the dry Nama-Karoo Biome, which contains a number of fascinating plants, including the elephant's trunk ("halfmens" or half-man) tree, aloe ("kokerboom" or quiver tree) and a variety of succulents. The area is well known for its spectacular annual spring flowers, which attract thousands of tourists.

Agriculture and industry

The economy of the province's Karoo region depends on sheep farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district.

The province has fertile agricultural land, especially in the Orange River Valley. A variety of fruit is cultivated at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes. The Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton facilitates the production of wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton.

Wine is also produced in the Northern Cape's Orange River wine region, which accounts for 25.6% of South Africa's Colomard vines and 10% of its Chenin Blanc. The Niewoudtville Rooibos Tea processing initiative centres on the development and economic empowerment of smallholder farmers. It is aimed at unlocking economic potential, creating sustainable jobs and increasing the skills base. The installation of pasteurisation equipment has been completed and tea has been exported to countries such as Germany, Spain and Japan.

Mining

Mining contributes 27.6% to the gross regional domestic product. Iron-ore mining in the north-eastern corner of the province has been expanding despite the global recession, driven largely by China's demand for steel.

Sishen is the biggest iron-ore mine in the country and its owner, Kumba Iron Ore, is engaging in a new project at Kolomela. New manganese projects are also underway.

Diamond mining, in contrast, has seen declining volumes and job losses. Diamond mining is increasingly moving away from

the older mines to alluvial mining along the Orange River and its tributaries and in the Atlantic Ocean.

The province also has copper, asbestos, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

North West

North West is bordered by Botswana in the north and fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west, Gauteng to the east, and the Free State to the south. It is known as the "Platinum Province", owing to its wealth of this precious metal.

The province has a population of more than 4 million people who mainly speak Setswana.

Mahikeng is the capital city and well known for the Mafikeng Siege, which took place in October 1899 during the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

Most of the province's economic activity is concentrated between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp, as well as in Rustenburg and the eastern region, where more than 83.3% of the province's economic activity takes place.

The province has various tourist attractions including Sun City, the Pilanesberg National Park, Madikwe Game Reserve, and the De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Trust.

A portion of one of South Africa's seven Unesco world heritage sites also falls within the borders of North West namely the Taung hominid fossil site, which has been incorporated into South Africa's Cradle of Humankind.

Mining and manufacturing

Mining contributes 23.3% to North West's economy, and makes up 22.5% of the South African mining industry. The Rustenburg and Brits districts produce 94% of the country's platinum, which is more than any other single area in the world. In addition to granite, marble, fluorspar and diamonds, the province also produces a quarter of South Africa's gold. Employment along the Platinum Corridor, from Pretoria to eastern Botswana, accounts for over a third of the province's total employment.

North West's manufacturing sector centres on the municipalities of Brits, Rustenburg, Potchefstroom, Klerksdorp

North West

Capital: Mahikeng

Principal languages:

Setswana 71.5%

Afrikaans 7.2%

IsiXhosa 5.1%

Population: 4 027 160

Percentage share of the total population: 6.9%

Area: 140 882 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and Mid-year population estimates, 2019



and Mahikeng, which together account for more than 50% of the province's total manufacturing production.

The industries in Brits concentrate on manufacturing and construction, while those in Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry. In the manufacturing arena, automotive parts, machinery, electronic, audio, and medical equipment are manufactured using local materials and resources.

Agriculture

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the Texas of South Africa. Marico is also cattle country.

North West is South Africa's major producer of white maize. The areas around Rustenburg are fertile, mixed-crop farming land, with maize and sunflowers being the most important crops.

Western Cape

Situated on the south-western tip of the African continent, the Western Cape with its wide beaches and breathtaking scenery, complemented by a rich variety of cultures, historical landmarks, world-class restaurants and entertainment, is a world-famous tourist destination.

Cape Town, often referred to as the "Mother City", is South Africa's legislative capital and houses Parliament. The province has a strong network of higher education institutions, including the universities of Cape Town, Stellenbosch and the Western Cape, and has the highest adult education level in the country.

Visitors to the province can disembark at one of the province's two main airports, Cape Town International or George Airport or at the seaports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay and Saldanha.

Table Mountain, the Cape winelands, Robben Island and the Kirstenbosch Botanical Gardens are among the province's most popular tourist attractions.

The Western Cape is also known for its floral diversity. The Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site, comprising eight separate protected areas, covers an area of more than

553 000 ha stretching from the Cape Peninsula to the Eastern Cape.

The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the West Coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province's southern beaches.

Agriculture and fisheries

The Western Cape's sheltered valleys between mountains are ideal for the cultivation of export-grade fruit such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges.

A variety of vegetables is cultivated in the eastern part of the Western Cape, while the Swartland and Overberg districts are well-known as the country's prime wheat-growing areas.

The agricultural sector is critical to the Western Cape economy, accounting for 60% of regional exports.

The Western Cape is also well known for its wine production. Some 75% of all South African fishing takes place along the Western Cape coastline. The rich fishing grounds on the west coast are protected from exploitation by a 200 km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system. Snoek, Cape lobster, abalone, calamari, octopus, oysters and mussels are among the delicacies found in these waters.

Other exports are fruit, wine, wool and ostrich. The high quality of exports, combined with the relative weakness of the local currency, makes the products some of the most affordable high-quality exports in the world.

Industry

The Saldanha Bay Industrial Development Zone (SBIDZ) is drawing strong international interest.

A feasibility study conducted by the Department of Trade and Industry found that Saldanha Bay is strategically located to serve as a service, maintenance, fabrication and supply hub for the booming African oil and gas sector, due to the increasing number of oil rigs requiring maintenance, and their traffic flow passing from the west to the east coast of Africa.

The Western Cape government has invested R25 million over five years in setting up the SBIDZ.

Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town

Principal languages:

Afrikaans	46.6%
IsiXhosa	31.1%
English	19.6%

Population: 6 844 272

Percentage share of the total population: 11.6%

Area: 129 462 km²

Source: Community Survey 2016 and Mid-year population estimates, 2019





South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

History

The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the ground-breaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoikhoi and San of historical times. The Khoikhoi and San, although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples. The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which generally are near the coast. At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an Iron Age culture and domesticated crops. After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or “Highveld,” where they adopted a more extensive cattle-farming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and hence hierarchies of authority within communities. Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation.

At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trading economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good Hope. Aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's history, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past.

The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African

coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century onwards.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (VOC) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoikhoi for slaughter stock soon degenerated into raiding and warfare. Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions in the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities. As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.

Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed. By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were “free burghers” (European colonists). The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the isiXhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east. It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they

were to greatly outnumber the white people in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of south-east Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion. As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoeshoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms, were established, partly for reasons of defence. The Mfecane or Difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate.

The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, thus controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims.

The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of “free” labour and in the “civilising mission” of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns. One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed equal civil rights for “people of colour” within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of “apprenticeship” with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation. The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony in the late 1830s.

Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot. Increasingly, they were lumped together as the “coloured” people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the “Cape Malays” (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms. The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land. Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms. They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities. The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They, too, called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape's

borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards.

They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the Mfecane.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. These Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security.

Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu State, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape. Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the Mfecane were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with their own customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was en-trenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to white people. This system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism that would prevail in the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indentured Indian labourers were imported from 1860 to work the plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed.

These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in

South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Indian activist and leader Mohandas Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result was that black and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the “liberal tradition” in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of black people within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent. The hardening of racial attitudes that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa.

In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated blacks indentured for equality met with increasingly fierce resistance. At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil John Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become Prime Minister of the

Cape Colony (from 1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as modern-day Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before. Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The Transvaal was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi (northern Sotho) State, which fell within the Republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted.

The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that both the current Lesotho and Swaziland escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895.

The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer Government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans responded with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, blacks exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase production for sale. A substantial black peasantry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to blacks were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of blacks into the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying blacks rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Blacks could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa," but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs." Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations." This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and, later (from 1948), apartheid.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 to May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war. In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mahikeng) and Kimberley in the northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

Some colonial Boers rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid.

Kruger fled the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900. The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorched-earth policy, which included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They, too, suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves of employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used blacks as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war.

Most blacks supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed. In the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for blacks to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for blacks.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the black people back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally. Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, black resources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of blacks came forward from areas such as the Transkeian

territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants.

This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The blacks' post-war ability to withhold their labour was undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years.

The Boer leaders – most notably Louis Botha, Jan Smuts and JBM Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide.

The National Convention drew up a Constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910.

The 19th century's formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone. It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response to blacks' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights.

Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than elsewhere on the continent. An educated élite of clerics, teachers, businesspeople, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics. Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on black political life, and separatist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion.

The experiences of studying abroad, and in particular interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere

in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part.

A vigorous black press arose, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as John Tengo Jabavu, Pixley ka Isaka Seme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube serving the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed.

Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloured people began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became the most important black organisation, drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest. Worker militancy emerged in the wake of the First World War and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign, given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting the extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation representing black people in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racialism and worker organisations, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by him in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act in 1913.

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves. The centenary of this Act was commemorated in 2013.

The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division

between white citizens and black non-citizens, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also reserved skilled work for white people and denying black workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act of 1923, entrenched urban segregation and controlled black mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws were designed to force blacks into labour and to keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power. In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect the union of English- and Afrikaans-speaking white people. However, divisions within the white community remained significant. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after union.

It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the First World War against Germany.

In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming.

An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to black people.

Soon, labour issues came to the fore. In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed. Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines.

As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force.

In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against black people. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service, was

intensified, and the job colour bar was reinforced, with a key objective being to address what was known as the “poor-white problem”.

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression.

This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr DF Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the qualifying Africans of the Cape Province from the common voters’ roll. Meanwhile, Malan’s breakaway NP was greatly augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

Apartheid

After the Second World War, in 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves. The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the leadership of figures such as Anton Lembede, AP Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers’ Strike was a turning point in the emergence of politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with the First World War, the experience of the Second World War and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent.

For those who supported the NP, its primary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking white people in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The State became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond coordinated the party’s programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum on the issue. A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced.

South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth. In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the governor-general) as head of state.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments. A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual activities and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters’ roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured “group areas.”

Until the 1940s, South Africa’s racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gathering pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed “separate development,” divided the African population into artificial ethnic “nations,” each with its own “homeland” and the prospect of “independence,” supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent.

This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering, as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the “homeland” structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared “independent”, a status which the vast majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community, declined to recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from “white” areas affected some 3,5 million people and vast rural slums were created in the homelands,

which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed.

Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s. Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of “white” South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education and healthcare, central government took control over black people’s lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as “temporary sojourners”, welcome in “white” South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour.

However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Mohandas Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress; the Coloured People’s Congress; a small white congress organisation (the Congress of Democrats); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women’s resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of “Africanism” and

anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The State's initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

It was the 60th anniversary of the 1952 women's march in 2012. You strike a woman – you strike a rock! *Wathint' abafazi, wathint' imbokodo!* In 1956, with these words thousands of women advanced the cause to liberate South Africa from apartheid rule. The phrase has come to symbolise women's courage and strength in South Africa. During the early 1950s, Lilian Ngoyi, Helen Joseph, Albertina Sisulu, Sophia Williams-De Bruyn, and many others formed the Federation of South African Women (FSAW). With the Blacks (Abolition of Passes and Coordination of Documents) Act, 1952 (Act 67 of 1952), the South African Government amended the pass laws, requiring all black people over the age of 16 to carry a "reference book" at all times.

On 9 August 1956, more than 20 000 women of all races marched through the streets of Pretoria to the Union Buildings to hand over a petition to JG Strijdom, South Africa's Prime Minister, protesting the introduction of the new pass laws and the Group Areas Act, 1950 (Act 41 of 1950). The latter enforced different residential areas for different races and led to forced removals of people living in "wrong" areas. On the day of the march, Strijdom had arranged to be elsewhere, and the petition was eventually accepted by his secretary.

However, the first attempt to make black women carry passes was in 1913 when the then Orange Free State introduced a new requirement that women, in addition to existing regulations for black men, had to carry reference documents. The resulting protests, by a multiracial group of women, many of whom were professionals, took the form of passive resistance through refusing to carry the new passes. Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested. In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as the mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) ("Spear of the Nation"), were arrested in 1963.

In the "Rivonia Trial", eight ANC leaders, including Nelson

Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned. The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming repression and relative political disarray among black people in the country. Armed action was contained by the state.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership embarked on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia (now Zimbabwe).

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (Zipra) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces. Although the joint MK-Zipra force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics in the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people.

News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage.

White capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973 and black trade unions were revived. A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, being drawn into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy.

The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students (Congress of South African Students) and college and university students (Azanian Students Organisation).

By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement

of workers in resistance took on a new dimension with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of Zimbabwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy.

Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance. An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of blacks outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. Sanctions and boycotts were instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a coordinated strategy by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

FW de Klerk, who replaced PW Botha as State President in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990

the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them Nelson Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting. Above all, even if South Africa was nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting.

International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of white people. No longer could they demonise the ANC and PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its *raison d'être*. Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability.

In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner elite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government

ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with black people forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

The First Decade of Freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the State, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity (GNU) to be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The NP and the Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) formed part of the GNU until 1996, when the NP withdrew. The ANC-led government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socio-economic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the first decade of freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So, too, have been the national and local government elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive

governance have been strengthened through the practice of public participation, roving executive council and mayoral meetings, in which members of the Executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly communicate directly with the public about the implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two-thirds and the election of Thabo Mbeki as President and successor to Mandela. It saw a sharp decline in the popularity of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance (DA), which the NNP left in 2001.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

As final reparations, government provided a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before and were designated by the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are continuing programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms and changing geographical and place names.

The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council. It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit in 2003 brought these sectors together to take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development.

At the summit, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and to speed up job-creating growth and development.

Partnership between government and civil society was further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised labour,

higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

In the first decade of freedom, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and healthcare, as well as social grants for those in need.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it remains of critical importance to build political and economic links with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment that is more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.

The South African Government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a cooperative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces. South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa. The then President, Thabo Mbeki, chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to the former President of Mozambique Joaquim Chissano in July 2003. In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September that year. By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in countries such as the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and Sudan – South Africa has contributed to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

During the first decade of freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community, NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It hosted several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, the World Conference Against Racism in 2001, the World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002 and the World Parks Congress in 2003. The country has also been represented in international forums such as the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee and Interpol.

The Second Decade of Freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004,

there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped to bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development. As government took stock of the first decade of freedom in the *Towards a Ten Year Review*, it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to the Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014. Following these elections, Thabo Mbeki was appointed to a second term of office – a position he relinquished in September 2008, following the decision of the National Executive Committee of the ANC to recall him. Parliament elected Kgalema Motlanthe as President of South Africa on 25 September 2008.

Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

South Africa held national and provincial elections to elect a new National Assembly as well as the provincial legislature in each province on 22 April 2009. Some 23 million people were registered for the 2009 general election, which was about 2.5 million more than in 2004. About 77% of registered voters took part in the election. The results for the top five parties were as follows: the ANC achieved 65.9%; the DA 16.6%; the newly-formed Congress of the People (Cope) 7.4%; the IFP 4.5%; and the Independent Democrats 0.9% of the votes cast.

Jacob Zuma was inaugurated as President of South Africa on 9 May 2009.

Government adopted 14 outcomes as its focus areas. These include among other things: improving the quality of basic education and health services, strengthening the fight against crime, creating decent employment through inclusive growth, and boosting skills development. It also included ensuring food security for all, building sustainable human settlements and an improved quality of household life, improving local government structures and an efficient and development-oriented public service.

A significant milestone for South Africa in the second decade of freedom was the successful hosting of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The tournament, which was the first on African soil, demonstrated that South Africa has the infrastructure and capability to warrant serious investment consideration. It also showcased South Africa and its people to the world.

The local government elections held on 18 May 2011 were characterised by lively and respectful campaigning with all political parties free to engage with voters in all areas. The Independent Electoral Commission highlighted decreased voter apathy and achieved an impressive 57.6% registered voter turn-out – an improvement from the previous local government elections, which scored below the 50% mark. The ANC won the highest number of seats and councils – 198 councils and 5 633 seats, constituting 62% of the vote. The DA came second with 18 councils, 1 555 seats and 23.9% support. The ANC and DA were followed by the IFP and Cope.

To secure a better quality of life for all, government finalised the National Development Plan (NDP): Vision for 2030 in 2011. The plan was a step in the process of charting a new path for South Africa.

By 2030, government seeks to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality. The plan was the product of not just the NPC but also tens of thousands of ordinary South Africans who shared their dreams, hopes and ideas for the future.

The revised NDP 2030 document titled, *Our future – make it work*, is a policy blueprint for eliminating poverty and reducing inequality in South Africa by 2030.

Implementation of the plan will be broken up into five-year chunks, in line with the electoral cycle, with the 2014 to 2019 medium-term strategic framework forming the first five-year building block of the plan.

The Presidency is leading the formulation of the 2014 to 2019 medium-term strategic framework, which includes key targets from the NDP and other plans such as the New Growth Path, National Infrastructure Plan and Industry Policy Action Plan.

The Presidency and National Treasury will work with government departments to clarify roles and responsibilities, ensure that plans and budgets are aligned, and develop clear performance indicators for each programme.

Government will focus on areas where implementation of existing policies needs to improve and will hold focused discussions to overcome obstacles to implementation. It will also engage with other sectors to understand how they are contributing to the NDP's implementation and to identify any obstacles they face.

The 2019 to 2024 and 2024 to 2029 planning cycles will be used to initiate the remaining activities and will be informed by a performance review of the previous cycle.

On 8 January 2012, Africa's oldest liberation movement, the ANC, celebrated 100 years of existence. This was a historic achievement, not only for the movement, but also for South Africa, the continent and the world. Thousands of ordinary South Africans, political and religious leaders attended the centenary celebrations which were held in Mangaung, Free State, the birthplace of the ANC.

On 30 October 2012, Statistics South Africa released the Census 2011 results. In 2011, the country held its third national population and housing count in post-apartheid South Africa.

The census analysed the country's demographics, population distribution and access to services, average household size, income, migration, and mortality. Results showed that the country's population grew to 51.8 million people from 44.8 million in 2001, representing a 15.5% increase.

In December 2012, Jacob Zuma was re-elected as the President of the ANC during the ruling party's congress in Mangaung. Cyril Ramaphosa was elected as the party's Deputy President.

While receiving intensive medical care at home for a lung infection after spending three months in hospital, South Africa's first democratically elected President and anti-apartheid icon, Nelson Mandela, died at the age of 95, on 5 December 2013.

Mr Mandela led South Africa's transition from white-minority rule in the 1990s, after serving 27 years in prison for his political activities.

He was buried in his home town of Qunu in the Eastern Cape on 15 December 2013.

South Africa celebrated 20 Years of Freedom in 2014, which was a historic milestone for the country. The Twenty Year Review, and the National Planning Commission's 2011 Diagnostic Report, highlighted that poverty, inequality and unemployment continued to negatively affect the lives of many people.

As stated in the NDP, by 2030, South Africa's rural communities must have better opportunities to participate fully in the economic, social and political life of the country.

Government's programme of radical economic transformation is about placing the economy on a qualitatively different path that ensures more rapid, sustainable growth, higher investment, increased employment, reduced inequality and deracialisation of the economy. The NDP sets a growth target of at least 5% a year, and emphasises measures to ensure that the benefits of growth are equitably shared.

On 7 May 2014, the country elected a new National Assembly and new provincial legislatures during its .It was the fifth election held in South Africa under conditions of universal adult suffrage since the end of the apartheid era in 1994, and the first held since the death of Nelson Mandela. It was also the first time

that South African expatriates were allowed to vote in a South African national election.

The National Assembly election was won by the ANC (62.1%). The official opposition, Democratic Alliance (DA) won 22.2% of the votes, while the newly formed Economic Freedom Fighters (EFF) obtained 6.4% of the vote.

Eight of the nine provincial legislatures were won by the ANC. The EFF obtained over 10% of the votes in Gauteng, Limpopo and North West, and beat the DA to second place in Limpopo and North West. In the other six provinces won by the ANC, the DA obtained second place. In the Western Cape, the only province not won by the ANC, the DA increased its majority from 51.5% to 59.4%.

The discovery of *Homo naledi*, an extinct species of hominin, in September 2015 became worldwide news. In 2015, South Africa celebrated the 60th Anniversary of the Freedom Charter, which advocated for a non-racial South Africa.

The 40th Anniversary of the 16 June 1976 Soweto Student Uprising was celebrated in 2016, along with the 20th Anniversary of the signing of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

The 2016 Local Government Elections were held on 3 August 2016. The ANC won 53.9% of the total votes, followed by the official opposition DA with 26.9% and the EFF with 8.2%.

In 2017, South Africa commemorated the centenary of the birth of Oliver Reginald Tambo, the late former President of the African National Congress and one of the key founding fathers of South Africa's liberation and constitutional democracy. The centenary celebrations were held under the theme: Life and Legacy of OR Tambo.

2018 marked the centenary of the birth of South Africa's first democratically elected President Nelson Mandela and Struggle stalwart Albertina Sisulu respectively. Centenary celebrations for the two icons were marked with year long series of awareness, educational, celebratory and legacy commemoration events. Mandela's centenary celebrations were held under the theme: "Be the legacy" while the Albertina Sisulu commemorations were held under the theme: "A woman of fortitude".

On 8 May 2019, the country held its sixth national and provincial elections.

On 25 May 2019, Cyril Ramaphosa was inaugurated as the sixth democratically elected President of South Africa. In a departure from the tradition of holding the inauguration at the Union Buildings, the event took place at Loftus Versfeld Stadium in Pretoria.





South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries

The agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors are crucial to South Africa's socio-economic development. However, the future of these sectors depends on critical issues such as climate change, population growth, skills shortages, changes in consumer needs and shifts in the global economy and related markets.

As one of the most employment-intensive sectors of the economy, agriculture's potential impact on empowerment and poverty relief is much larger than its actual weight in the economy suggests.

While the primary agricultural sector contributes about 3% to the country's gross domestic product (GDP), it represents about 7% of formal employment. If the entire value chain of agriculture is taken into account, its contribution to GDP reaches about 12%.

The mandate of the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) is to address production and consumption in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors.

The department's strategic goals over the medium term, which are organised around the key priority areas of food security, job creation, and rural and economic development, are to:

- provide effective and efficient strategic leadership, governance and administration;
- increase production and productivity in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors, to enhance employment and economic growth;
- provide an enabling environment for food security and sector transformation; and
- ensure the sustainable use of natural resources in the forestry and fisheries sectors through the conservation, protection, rehabilitation and recovery of natural resources within ecosystems.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming to cattle-ranching in the bushveld and sheep-farming in the more arid regions. About 12% of South Africa's surface area can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million ha are under irrigation.

The forestry industry is one of the strategic economic sectors in South Africa, with a significant contribution towards economic

growth and job creation. Therefore, the expansion of South Africa's forest resources remains one of the department's main objectives to ensure growth, transformation and sustainability of the sector.

As a natural resource, the fisheries sector is also recognised as a potential area for economic growth. The mandate for fisheries management includes fresh water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture.

Broadening the scope of aquaculture will provide an opportunity to increase the production of fish and other aquatic food species, thereby decreasing the pressure on natural fish resources. Through the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the department strives to ensure effective stakeholder engagement and management, as well as advancing the transformation agenda in the sector.

Legislation and frameworks

Some of the legislation of the DAFF include:

- The Veterinary and Para-Veterinary Professions Act, 1982 (Act 19 of 1982), provides for the establishment, powers and functions of the South African Veterinary Council and also regulates the institutions and registration of professionals in the practising veterinary and para-veterinary fields.
- The Fertilizer, Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act, 1947 (Act 36 of 1947) regulates the registration, acquisition, disposal, sale and use of fertilisers, stock feeds, agricultural remedies, stock remedies, sterilising plants and pest control operators.
- The Plant Breeders' Rights Act, 2018 (Act 12 of 2018) will replace the Plant Breeders' Rights Act, 1976 (Act 15 of 1976). The Act provides for the granting of plant breeders' rights relating to varieties of certain kinds of plants.
- The Genetically Modified Organisms Act, 1997 (Act 15 of 1997) provides for the regulation of activities involving genetically modified organisms (GMO) in South Africa. The Act provides a framework to ensure that all activities involving the use of GMOs are carried out in such a way as to limit possible harmful consequences.
- The Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002) and the National Disaster Risk-Management Framework of 2005

address agricultural risk management and climate change, and are supplemented by climate change-related policies and programmes.

- The Meat Safety Act, 2000 (Act 40 of 2000) provides for measures to promote meat safety and the safety of animal products; establishes and maintains essential national standards in respect of abattoirs; regulates the import and export of meat; and establishes meat safety schemes.
- The Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983) provides for control over the use of natural agricultural resources to promote the conservation of soil, water sources and vegetation, and the combating of weeds and invader plants.
- The Animal Identification Act, 2002 (Act 6 of 2002) regulates the registration of a brand in the name of an owner of livestock for the purpose of identifying the livestock.
- The Plant Improvement Act, 2018 (Act 11 of 2018) provides for the registration of certain types of business relating to plants and propagating material intended for cultivation and sale and the registration of premises on or from which that business is conducted; quality standards for plants and propagating material intended for cultivation and sale and conditions of sale of plants and propagating material; and a system for national listing of plant varieties.
- The Animal Improvement Act, 1998 (Act 62 of 1998) provides for the breeding, identification and utilisation of genetically superior animals in order to improve the production and performance of animals.
- The Liquor Products Act, 1989 (Act 60 of 1989) provides for control over the sale and production for sale of certain alcoholic products, the composition and properties of such products and the use of certain particulars in connection with the sale of such products; for the establishment of schemes; for control over the import and export of certain alcoholic products; and for matters connected therewith.
- The Co-operatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005) regulates the formation, registration, management and functioning of co-operatives.
- The Perishable Products Export Control Act, 1983 (Act 9 of 1983) provides for the control of perishable products intended

for export from South Africa and for the continued existence of a statutory board to bring about the orderly and efficient export of perishable products from the country.

- The Agricultural Pests Act, 1983 (Act 36 of 1983) introduces measures for the prevention and combating of agricultural pests.
- The Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990) establishes a juristic person, the Agricultural Research Council (ARC), to undertake agricultural research and regulate matters regarding the ARC's proceedings, powers, duties, management, control, employees, financing and related matters.
- The Agricultural Product Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990) provides for control over the sale and export of certain agricultural products and other related products, with a view to the maintenance of certain standards regarding the quality of products and packing, marking and labelling.
- The Agricultural Produce Agents Act, 1992 (Act 12 of 1992) provides for the establishment of an Agricultural Produce Agents Council and fidelity funds.
- The Onderstepoort Biological Products Incorporation Act, 1999 (Act 19 of 1999) provides for the establishment of a company to manage the institution, the appointment of directors and the holding and disposal of shares in the company.
- The Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998) provides for the conservation of the marine ecosystem, the long-term sustainable use of marine living resources and the orderly access to exploitation, use and protection of certain marine living resources; and for the exercising of control over marine living resources in a fair and equitable manner for the benefit of all the citizens of South Africa. The Marine Living Resources Act of 1998 was amended by the Marine Living Resources Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 5 of 2014).
- The National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998) allows for an exemption for the use and handling of protected trees and their products; and authorises the Minister to establish a trust, in respect of state forests under certain circumstances.
- The National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998) reforms the law on veld and forest fires and repeals certain provisions of the Forest Act, 1984 (Act 122 of 1984).

- The Sea Fishery Act, 1988 (Act 12 of 1988) provides for the conservation of the marine ecosystem and the orderly exploitation, use and protection of certain marine resources; and provides for the exercise of control over sea fisheries.

The African Growth and Opportunity Act (AGOA) is a trade act of the United States of America (USA), enacted on 18 May 2000 as Public Law 106 of the 200th Congress. AGOA has since been renewed to 2025. It provides duty-free access to the USA market for almost all products exported from more than 40 eligible sub-Saharan African countries, including South Africa.

Agricultural Policy Action Plan (APAP)

The challenges facing the agricultural, forestry and fisheries sectors are numerous: rising input costs, an uneven international trade environment, lack of developmental infrastructure (rail, harbour, electricity), and a rapidly evolving policy and production environment while transformation of the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors has been slow and tentative.

Based on this analysis of the challenges within the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors, the Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries Strategic Framework was developed to outline appropriate responses to these challenges.

The APAP aims to translate these high-level responses into tangible, concrete steps. The framework identifies four broad sector goals:

- equitable growth and competitiveness,
- equity and transformation,
- environmental sustainability and
- governance.

These goals translate into a comprehensive, abiding intervention framework, which will be supported through iterations of APAP via short and medium-term interventions, targeting specific value chains (sectoral interventions) or transversal challenges and interventions).

The APAP is the programmatic response to Priority One of the Nine-Point Plan to ignite growth and create jobs. It outlines a value chain approach in priority commodities, informed by the commodities with high-growth potential and high-labour absorption capacity identified in the National Development Plan (NDP).

The APAP has been reviewed to ensure that it becomes a jobs driver and promotes growth, employment, rural incomes, investment, output, exports and African regional development.

Agriculture sector

About three quarters of smallholder farms are within the former homelands, and the rest are split between urban areas and commercial farming areas. There is scope to increase the size of the smallholder sector in each of these areas. The DAFF works with provincial departments of agriculture to support these smallholders to become sustainable and meet the targets set out in the NDP.

In the former homelands, there are thousands of hectares of under-utilised arable land that can be put back under production. Currently, the total area that have been planted since the Fetsa Tlala food production initiative was launched in October 2013 is 381 396 ha and the balance is planned for the remaining years of the current Medium Term Strategic Framework.

The department continues to provide targeted support programmes such as the Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme (CASP), Ilima/Letsema and LandCare in order to realise enhanced food production, contributing towards the eradication of hunger by 2030. With the approval of the National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security by cabinet, the department will reduce the percentage of households with inadequate to severely inadequate access to food.

The department will increase its inspection capacity and infrastructure for abattoirs and ports of entry for US imports to manage AGOA trade agreements.

The management of pests and diseases remains important in contributing to sustainable agricultural production and ensuring access of commodities to export markets. As such, the DAFF continues to provide intensified control measures to deal with outbreaks and maintain a foot-and-mouth disease (foot and mouth disease) free status.

Budget and funding

Over the medium term, the DAFF will focus on improving food security and safety; creating jobs; increasing the contribution

of the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors to GDP; and upgrading infrastructure.

Through pursuing these objectives, the department contributes to the realisation of the goal of the NDP to eliminate poverty and reduce inequality by 2030, and outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth), outcome 7 (comprehensive rural development and land reform) and outcome 10 (protect and enhance our environmental assets and natural resources) of government's 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework.

The department plans to support around 435 000 subsistence farmers and smallholder farmers through:

- providing farm equipment, fencing, fertilisers, seedlings and other essentials
- disbursing a grant through the comprehensive agricultural support programme
- repairing flood-damaged infrastructure.

The DAFF will support the agri-park initiative, in collaboration with the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform. The initiative aims to:

- establish and maintain producer support infrastructure such as markets and agro-processing facilities
- create networks and provide logistical services for producers and input suppliers
- coordinate activities for producer support and development to create jobs and develop rural economies.

Through the comprehensive agriculture support programme grant, the department will play a crucial role in supporting smallholder farmers who will supply produce to agri-park initiatives across South Africa.

The DAFF will also provide support to farmers by putting one million hectares of land into production, and provide them with advisory services and training on the basic components of food security.

The department plans to increase financial support to emerging producers by R370 million over the medium term, which will be accessed through the Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank).

This amount has been reprioritised from funding for provincial conditional grants, and will provide loans to qualifying producers. The loans will improve producers' access to production inputs

(such as fertilisers, seeds, seedlings and chemicals) and farm infrastructure, to increase the participation of emerging producers in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors.

The DAFF plans to spend R241 million on an agricultural census in collaboration with Statistics South Africa. The census will create a registry of subsistence, smallholder and commercial farmers, and gather baseline information. The gathered information will be used to properly target support to farmers, avoid duplicating support to emerging farmers, and allow for a proper ratio of extension officers to ensure the productivity of emerging farmers.

The DAFF aims to deploy at least 150 veterinarians each year over the medium term, to strengthen primary animal healthcare, support smallholder animal production, and contribute to productivity and food security.

This initiative will be supported by an allocation of R403 million over the medium term, in the Agricultural Production, Health and Food Safety programme. The department was allocated R7.7 billion for the 2018/19 financial year.

Improving food security

South Africa has been self-sufficient in most agriculture products with the exception of wheat, poultry and red meat. Between 50% and 60% of the country's wheat requirement is imported, due to the fact that it is cheaper to import than to produce locally.

Grains remain an important part of our food and nutrition security initiatives. Accordingly, the ARC has developed and disseminated at least seven new grain cultivars for improved yields and productivity in South Africa.

The country's investments in research and development continue to yield good results for market access. The ARC launched a new table grape, "Joybells", at the world's largest fruit exhibition in Berlin in 2018.

This table grape variety was well received by producers and fruit traders in the global market. After initially selling in Europe and the UK, producers and exporters from South Africa are expanding sales into other world markets. At least 200 hectares, and expanding, have been planted in South Africa to produce this table grape variety.

The DAFF promotes food and nutrition security by supporting food producers through the:

- Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa, which provides agricultural production loans to smallholder operators in the agriculture, forestry and fishery sectors;
- CASP grant, which provides post-settlement support to targeted beneficiaries of land reform and redistribution, as well as to other producers who have acquired land privately and are engaged in domestic value-adding enterprises or exporting agricultural produce; and
- Ilima/Letsema projects grant, which provides production inputs to subsistence and smallholder farmers.

Over the medium term, the allocation for the Ilima/Letsema projects grant will be used to promote the Fetsa Tlala food production initiative, which forms part of national policy on food and nutrition. Accordingly, the department plans to make R1.9 billion available through the grant to support 145 000 subsistence and smallholder producers each year of the Medium term; and, by 2030, as per the NDP, ensure that 1 million hectares are used to produce crops, and provide superior breeding animals to targeted smallholder and subsistence farmers.

In 2019/20, the department plans to finalise a register of farmers and agriculture statistics at a projected cost of R51 million. The project, which is conducted in collaboration with Statistics South Africa, is aimed at improving the accuracy of agricultural statistics, including information on smallholder farmers across South Africa.

One of the outcomes of Operation Phakisa is to provide support to 435 000 subsistence farmers over the medium term. This entails facilitating access to markets for targeted smallholder farmers, repairing infrastructure damaged by floods, providing drought relief, and revitalising provincial agricultural colleges. A projected R5 billion over the medium term is earmarked for these initiatives through the comprehensive agriculture support programme grant.

This funding will also provide for the recruitment and training of extension officers to enhance their technical expertise to support farmers, and the placement of 1 000 unemployed agricultural graduates on commercial farms across South Africa over the period ahead.

Aquaculture is expected to contribute significantly to food production, with production in the sector expected to increase from 4 000 tons of fish in 2018/19 to 20 000 tons per year over the medium term. To derive the most value from South Africa's coastal and inland aquaculture, a projected R137.9 million has been budgeted in the Aquaculture subprogramme in the Fisheries programme.

To increase animal healthcare services, a targeted 150 veterinary graduates are expected to be deployed each year to rural areas as part of their compulsory community service. To this effect, R456 million is allocated over the same period in the Agricultural Production, Health and Food Safety programme.

Informed by the agricultural policy action plan, animal improvement schemes are aimed at increasing the quality and yield of livestock. Over the medium term, the department plans to monitor two animal improvement schemes that produce commodities in prioritised value chains: the Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo national animal recording and improvement scheme, which focuses on beef production; and the poultry production improvement scheme.

These monitoring activities are carried out in the Animal Production and Health subprogramme of the Agricultural Production, Health and Food Safety programme at an expected cost of R842.3 million over the Medium term.

Creating jobs

The agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors have undergone major structural changes, driven by drought, underinvestment, and depleted stocks.

In response to challenges in the agriculture sector, the department plans to promote sustainable land and soil management practices, and prevent land degradation and desertification in rural areas. Accordingly, R260.5 million will be made available through the LandCare programme grant to rehabilitate 48 900 hectares of land and create a projected 2 400 full-time equivalent jobs over the period.

The Working for Forests Programme, which is part of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), will focus on the revitalisation of state nurseries in QwaQwa (Free State), Rustplaas (Limpopo), Upington (Northern Cape), Bloemhof and

Mahikeng (North West), and Wolseley (Western Cape). The programme is allocated R7.6 million over the medium term and is expected to create 315 full-time equivalent jobs.

In an attempt to revive the forestry sector, the department plans to plant 5 175 hectares of state-owned forests over the medium term, creating an estimated 1 725 full-time equivalent jobs. These activities, including those carried out in the Working for Forests Programme, are carried out in the Forestry Operations subprogramme in the Forestry and Natural Resources Management programme. The subprogramme is allocated R1.7 billion over the Medium term.

To address the challenge faced by fisheries, R264.4 million is expected to be transferred to the Marine Living Resource Fund as part of the Working for Fisheries programme. The aim of the programme, which is also part of the broader EPWP, is to alleviate poverty while empowering beneficiaries to participate in the mainstream fishing economy.

Projects include conserving fish stocks, constructing and maintaining aquaculture production systems, and cleaning coastal areas. This investment is expected to result in the creation of 1 683 full-time equivalent jobs over the medium term.

Increasing the contribution to GDP

To capitalise on the increased production of field crops, the department plans to spend R330.5 million over the medium term in the Trade Promotion and Market Access Programme to facilitate greater exports to Africa, China and other parts of the world, mainly of apples, grapes, pears, wine, sugar, maize and fish.

To streamline the provision of agricultural finance, the department will transfer R1.2 billion over the medium term to the LandBank. This transfer will enable the bank to offer blended finance in the form of a combination of government grants and loans at cheaper rates to emerging black farmers in the black producer commercialisation programme. The aim is to create a projected 450 black commercial farmers over the period ahead.

The South African good agricultural practice certification and accreditation programme is aimed at enabling market access and trade for black smallholder and commercial producers. To implement the certification and accreditation programme,

R21.5 million is allocated in the Agro-processing and Marketing subprogramme of the Trade Promotion and Market Access programme.

Upgrading infrastructure

The department's planned infrastructure projects amount to an estimated R768 million over the medium term, mainly in the Agricultural Production, Health and Food Safety programme and the Food Security and Agrarian Reform programme.

Spending on these projects includes:

- transfer payments to the ARC amounting to R400 million over the medium term for the construction and establishment of an foot and mouth disease vaccine production facility;
- R73.4 million for the erection of boundary fences to prevent the spread of foot and mouth disease in Kruger National Park;
- R65.6 million in 2019/20 through the comprehensive agriculture support programme grant to repair infrastructure damaged by floods in Western Cape, Limpopo and Mpumalanga;
- R33.6 million for the drilling and fitting of boreholes in various provinces;
- R15 million for the upgrading of infrastructure at the Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute in Eastern Cape; and
- R10 million for the construction of water reservoirs in all provinces.

Sector transformation

In addressing the developmental challenges in the sector to achieve policy imperatives of the NDP, National Growth Path, APAP, Revitalisation of Agriculture and Value Chains (RAAVC) and Land Reform, farmer training is crucial.

Colleges of agriculture are best suited to offer practical accredited training for farmers, agricultural technicians, producers, processors, and farm managers. The colleges are playing a pivotal role in agricultural vocational education and training (ATVET) through a three-year diploma qualification and vocational skills training to farming communities, youth and women. Correctly elevating these colleges to become a national competency will ensure that they are strategically

positioned to respond to the agri-skills shortage challenge in a more comprehensive and uniform manner.

On average, each college admits 400 full time students and trains 1 000 farmers per annum. This relates to close to 1 000 potential entrant farmers and over 10 000 skills trainings per year.

In 2018, the DAFF was expected to place 1 000 unemployed agricultural graduates within the sector across the nine provinces on a two-year internship program, training them to be future agri-preneurs. The initiative will contribute to addressing the unemployment challenge in the sector.

Government is also working with the private sector to achieve transformation in the fishing industry. Old Mutual's Sea Harvest, Brimstone and Masisizane Fund have committed to the establishment of a R100 million fisheries development fund. The fund will ensure the empowerment of small businesses entering the fishing industry in order to truly revitalise the Oceans Economy. Focus will not only be on supporting smallholder production, but also on increasing the number of black commercial producers.

The DAFF, with the assistance of the department of Trade and Industry (dti) the Land Bank, the National Empowerment Fund and the Industrial Development corporation (IDC), have developed a programme to commercialise black producers in the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors. This is an incentive-based programme to provide access to small, medium and large scale black producers in these sectors.

The Land Bank has been identified as the grant fund administrator, but together with commercial banks will provide the loan portion of the funds required to commercialise these producers.

For small scale producers that have a turnover of less than R500 000 per year, the development support will remain the responsibility of the provincial departments of agriculture in partnership with the commodity associations.

The department continues to support livestock farmers to develop and improve their livestock through dedicated programmes. One such programme is Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo – an animal improvement scheme dedicated to the development and improvement of livestock breeding and production among black farmers.

To date, more than 8 800 farmers are participating in the Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo programme, which is designed to improve the health of livestock in rural areas. The majority of these farmers own an average of 20 cattle. Participation in the programme has led to improved herd performance.

Through participating in the Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo programme, smallholder farmers were able to generate higher incomes.

Agriculture's role in the national and international economy

The value of primary agricultural production in South Africa showed an increase of 3.2% and was estimated at R288.6 billion in 2018, according to the Economic Review of the South African Agriculture 2018.

The primary agricultural sector has shown a growth of 7.5% annually since 1994, while the total economy grew by 10.7% per annum over the same period.

Despite its relatively small share of the total GDP, primary agriculture is an important sector in the South African economy. Agriculture remains a significant provider of employment, especially in the rural areas and a major earner of foreign exchange.

Farming income

The gross income of producers for the year ended 31 December 2018 amounted to R281 835 million, compared to R278 531 million the previous year—an increase of 1.2%. This can be attributed to the increase in prices and production levels of horticultural and animal products, particularly of subtropical fruit, citrus fruit, pigs slaughtered, poultry meat, milk and eggs.

The gross income from field crops decreased by 9.8% to R57 329 million. Income from maize at R23 517 million was 25.3% less than in the previous 12 months. The average seasonal price for white and yellow maize has decreased by 55.3% and 37.7%, respectively, compared to the previous season. Income from sunflower seed has declined by 4.4% to R3 826 million and income from wheat at R6 823 million was 16.4% more than the income earned in the previous year. Income from sugar cane at R7 993 million was 4.4% lower

than in the previous 12 months. Income from groundnuts has decreased by 38.0% to R505 million.

Income from dry beans decreased by 3.1% to R1 002 million. Income from soya beans increased by 7.3% to R6 900 million in 2018.

The gross income from horticultural products increased by 6.7% to R84 478 million in 2018. Income from citrus fruit increased by 7.0%, amounting to R20 686 million. Income from deciduous fruit was at R21 865 million, which was 10.8% higher than in the previous year. Income from vegetables increased by 4.7% to R23 099 million. Income from subtropical fruit increased by 20.2% to R4 791 million.

The gross income from animal products was 3.1% higher in 2018 and amounted to R140 028 million, compared to R135 789 million of the previous year. Producers earned R35 967 million from slaughtered cattle, a slight increase of 0.3%. Income from poultry meat showed an increase of 8.9% to R47 964 million. Income from egg production, at R12 268 million, was 14.0% higher than in the previous year. Producers earned R16 302 million from milk production, which is 6.7% less than in the previous year. Income from wool increased by 16.2% to R4 234 million.

The net farm income (after the deduction of all production expenditure, excluding expenditure on fixed assets and capital goods) amounted to R98 758 million for the 12 months that ended on 31 December 2018, which is 5.6% less than during the previous 12 months.

Payments for salaries and wages, which represented 10.2% of the total farming costs, amounted to R19 322 million. Interest paid by farmers to banks and other financiers during the 12 months up to 31 December 2018 is estimated at R10 068 million, or 5.3% of total farming costs.

Consumer prices

The consumer prices of all agricultural items increased by 4.4% for the year ended 31 December 2018, compared to an increase of 5.3% in the previous year.

The consumer price index of food increased by 3.3% and that of non-food items by 4.6%. The prices of meat increased by 6.8%, and dairy products and eggs by 3.8%, while that of

grain products decreased by 2.6%. The consumer price index of vegetables and fish increased by 5.5% each, coffee and tea by 4.0% and other food by 3.0%. The consumer price index of fruit, fats and oil and sugar decreased by 4.0%, 0.7% and 0.6%, respectively.

Volume of agricultural production

The estimated volume of agricultural production during 2018 was 0.02% higher than in the previous year.

The volume of field crop production decreased by 5.63% during 2018, mainly as a result of a decrease in the production of summer grains (maize and sorghum) and oilseeds (especially sunflower seed and groundnuts).

Horticultural production increased by 2.15% for the mentioned period, which can mainly be attributed to increases in the production of subtropical and citrus fruit.

The production of animal products increased by 1.92%, mainly because of an increase in the production of poultry meat and fresh milk, as well as the number of pigs slaughtered during 2018.

Imports and exports of agricultural products

The estimated value of imports during 2018 came to approximately R75 225 million, from R76 596 million the previous year—a decrease of 1.8%.

The estimated value of exports showed an increase of 6.4%, to about R110 035 million in 2018.

According to the 2018 agricultural export figures, citrus fruit (R20 173 million), wine (R9 614 million), grapes (R9 062 million), apples, pears and quinces (R7 364 million) and wool (R5 265 million) were the five most important export products in terms of value.

With regard to agricultural imports during 2018, rice (R6 860 million), wheat (R6 467 million), undenatured ethyl alcohol (R5 303 million), palm oil (R4 050 million) and food preparations (R3 931 million) were the five major products in terms of value.

The five largest trading partners in terms of exports in 2018 were the Netherlands, with exports to the value of R12 496 million, the United Kingdom (R10 986 million), China (R8 752

million), Mozambique (R6 801 million) and the US (R4 777 million).

The five largest trading partners from whom South Africa imported agricultural products during 2018 were Thailand, with imports valued at R5 448 million, Brazil (R5 430 million), Argentina (R4 388 million), the US (R3 856 million) and Germany (R3 729 million).

Role players Credit and assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (56%), agricultural cooperatives and agribusinesses (9%), the Land Bank (30%), private creditors (3%) and other creditors and financial institutions (2%).

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa

Established in 1912, the Land Bank is a government-owned development finance institution with the mandate of financing agricultural development to achieve food security, and to drive economic growth and development in South African agricultural sector.

The bank is a specialist agricultural bank guided by a government mandate to provide financial services, including crop insurance, to established commercial farmers, developing farmers and agri-enterprises.

Through its direct lending, Land Bank currently supports approximately 1 500 black farmers and relinquished approximately R74 million of its profits to subsidise interest rates to these farmers.

The bank provided support to farmers impacted by the drought, disbursing more than R240 million in loans under its drought relief programme, administered in conjunction with the IDC.

As part of its transformation objective, the Land Bank Insurance Company (LBIC) subsidiary launched and implemented the Agricultural Insurance Assessors Development Programme to train agricultural economist graduates (or equivalent) in crop insurance assessment protocols to service the agricultural sector. It is charged with promoting agricultural and rural development, as well as providing a range of financial products and services, including crop insurance to farmers and agribusinesses.

Micro Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa (MAFISA)

MAFISA provides production loans to smallholder operators within the agriculture, forestry and fisheries sectors. The scheme's operations are guided by the MAFISA Credit Policy.

MAFISA loans were initially restricted to agricultural enterprises, but following the incorporation of the forestry and fisheries subsectors into the department of agriculture, the credit policy was revised and adjusted so that it can also accommodate these two subsectors.

Loans are provided at a low interest rate and accessed through a network of institutions accredited by the DAFF as retail intermediaries.

Intermediaries submit monthly and quarterly reports to the DAFF as part of its monitoring process. Regular workshops and inspection visits to intermediaries are also conducted as part of monitoring.

The scheme offers production loans of up to R500 000 per person, with the repayment terms structured according to the income cycle of the enterprise. The loans are limited to South African citizens who meet the eligibility criteria set in the MAFISA Credit Policy.

MAFISA loans are available for the entire value chains of agriculture, forestry and fisheries, though most of the loans are still in respect of primary production and largely in agriculture. To date, most of the loans are in respect of livestock, sugar cane, vegetables and grain crops.

Currently, MAFISA is accessed through the following intermediaries:

- National Emergent Red Meat Producer Organisation – livestock in all provinces
- South African Sugar Association – sugar cane in KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga
- Peulwana Agricultural Financial Services – grains, vegetables, sugar cane and fruits in KwaZulu-Natal
- Mpumalanga Economic Growth Agency – various agricultural commodities in Mpumalanga
- Eastern Cape Rural Development Agency – various agricultural commodities in the Eastern Cape.

Farmers' organisations

Agri SA

Agri SA was established in 1904 as the South African Agricultural Union.

Its mission is to promote the development, profitability, stability and sustainability of agriculture in South Africa by means of its involvement and input on national and international policy and the implementation thereof.

Essentially Agri SA, through its affiliated membership, represents a diverse group of individual farmers regardless of gender, colour or creed.

Agri SA's policy advocacy includes work on trade negotiations, industrial policy, taxation, financing, land reform, labour laws, training, farmer development, environmental affairs, water rights and water pricing, other input-related issues, farm safety, law and order, infrastructure, technology development and transfer, statistical information and local government.

Furthermore, the organisation maintains an extensive communication network with its members and other affected communities, organisations and individuals. Agri SA is a member of high-level business, trade and agricultural entities that includes Business Unity South Africa, the International Chamber of Commerce, the World Farmers' Organisation, the Southern African Confederation of Agricultural Unions and the Cairns Group Farm Leaders.

Agri SA communicates with its members via its two-monthly magazine, namely Agri (incorporating Die Boer/The Farmer) and an electronic newsletter. The magazine provides background information on policy, legislation and programmes of interest to farmers. It also offers advice, extension and news on topical events to about 28 000 farmers who are members of Agri SA via the respective affiliates. The magazine is sent directly to each member. It is also distributed more widely to include opinion-formers and decision-makers.

AgriSA is preoccupied with ensuring a safe environment for all people involved in the agricultural sector. A sound working relationship has been established with the South African Police Service at both policy and operational level, with a view of addressing the relevant rural safety problems.

Agricultural Business Chamber (Agbiz)

Agbiz is a voluntary, dynamic and influential association of agribusinesses operating in South and southern Africa.

Agbiz's function is to ensure that agribusiness plays a constructive role in the country's economic growth, development and transformation, and to create an environment in which agribusinesses of all sizes and in all sectors can thrive, expand and be competitive.

- Agbiz is the only organisation that serves the broader and common over-arching business interests of agribusinesses in South Africa.
- Agbiz addresses the legislative and policy environment on the many fronts that it impacts on the agribusiness environment.
- Agbiz facilitates considerable networking opportunities so that South African agribusinesses can play an active and creative role within the local and international organised business environment.

The strategic intent of Agbiz is to advocate for and facilitate a favourable agribusiness environment in order for its members to perform competitively and sustainably.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA)

TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of property rights, economic issues, and safety and security. TAU SA conducts various projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture.

National African Farmers' Union of South Africa (NAFU SA)

NAFU SA is an independent, autonomous farmers organisation governed by and representing farmers in South Africa, united for the purpose of analysing their problems and formulating action to achieve economic emancipation and development through production efficiencies, access to market opportunities, and education.

It was formed over 28 years ago as part of the broader process of economic liberation and empowerment of mainly black farmers who were excluded from mainstream economic

landscape of South Africa. Its predecessor, the National African Chamber of Commerce and Industries, for many years had fought against economic oppression and marginalisation of African people in this country. Over many years the Union has acted an advocacy and pressure group calling for policy reforms and the support and development of farmers. Through its interventions and contribution to policy formulation, the Union has contributed to the following:

- Access to productive land being made available to farmers
- Access to finance and other support for farmers
- Access to markets and information for farmers
- Skills development and technical support.

NAFU SA pursues these items by implementing the following broad programmes.

- Advocacy, Lobbying and Policy Research
- Cooperatives and Commodity Group Development
- Farm Enterprise Development.

African Farmers' Association of South Africa (AFASA)

AFASA's objectives are to create a sustainable united body of African farmers with capacity to influence policies through lobbying and advocacy, to facilitate development of competencies of African farmers in order for them to participate meaningfully in formal and informal markets, and to mobilise resources for the benefit of African farmers.

Grain SA

Grain SA was established in June 1999. Its mission of is to provide commodity strategic support and services to South African grain producers to support sustainability.

Grain SA is a voluntary association of grain farmers established to represent the interests of its members. It wants to be recognised as an autonomous and independent grain producers' organisation.

The organisation wants to be involved in all matters bearing on the wellbeing of the industry and to be consulted about policy issues relating to the industry. It is strongly apolitical and issues are dealt with only on merit and sound business principles without any party political consideration.

Grain SA is controlled by farmers for farmers and structured to ensure members' democratic control over their elected office bearers.

State entities Agricultural Research Council

The ARC was established by the Agricultural Research Act of 1990 and is the main agricultural research institution in South Africa. In terms of the Act, the council's primary mandate is to conduct research and development, and effect the transfer of technology to promote agriculture and industry, contribute to a better quality of life, and facilitate and ensure conservation of natural resources.

The ARC continues to disseminate a wide range of scientific solutions, information and technology to the agricultural sector to respond to different challenges.

It provides diagnostic and analytical services for identification and elimination of prevailing pests and diseases such as tomato leaf miner (*Tuta absoluta*), fall armyworm (*Spodoptera frugiperda*), Miraflore lettuce big vein disease, nematode root knot (*Meloidogyne*) and false codling moth.

Effective diagnostic and analytical services of the ARC have enabled South Africa's livestock and wildlife sectors to continue to provide the necessary animal products for food and nutrition security.

Income generation among small enterprises is an important mechanism towards economic growth, poverty alleviation and sustainable agriculture development. The ARC has embarked on information and technology dissemination programmes that integrate scientific research into production systems of smallholder livestock producers, popularly known as Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo. Following training by the ARC, Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo has registered more than 8 400 small holder livestock farmers on the Integrated Registration Genetic Information System, a national animal improvement database. Evidence suggests that participants market off-take for participants increased by 16%.

Climate change is a serious threat to South Africa's primary objective of food security, sustainable agricultural production, rural development and economic growth. To enable the

agricultural sector to respond with practical solutions towards climate change, the ARC has been engaged in a range of scientific and development initiatives, including learning about experiences and solutions from other countries.

Programmes include rainwater harvesting, biogas production from manure, and sustainable use and conservation of indigenous genetic resources.

The ARC has also been mandated by government to maintain National Public Goods Assets. These comprise national collections or gene banks of animals, bacteria, animal databases, range and forage gene banks, fungi, genetic material, insects, crops, yeast and viruses, among others.

Onderstepoort Biological Products State-Owned Company (SOC) Ltd

OBP SOC was corporatised in 2000 under the OBP Incorporation Act of 1999.

The OBP's mandate is the prevention and control of animal diseases that impact on food security, human health and livelihood. This mandate is delivered through the continued development of innovative products and efficient manufacturing processes that ensure the affordability and accessibility of vaccines through diverse distribution channels.

The OBP possesses the capability, skills and scientific expertise to combat animal disease through the large-scale production of specialised animal vaccines. The company produces millions of doses a year to control as many as 50 different diseases and is an acknowledged world leader in the battle against animal disease.

Experiments at the OBP have seen encouraging progress in the development of new and improved vaccines against African horse sickness, which, despite the development of immunisation programmes, remains a constant threat to farmers, breeders and owners.

A new manufacturing plant is currently being constructed at a cost of R347 million and is expected to be completed by 2020. This will lead to large scale production of competitively priced vaccines manufactured under global quality standards; consistent availability of OBP vaccines and improved response to animal disease outbreaks; penetration of previously

inaccessible markets; and sustainable job creation in the fields of veterinary and biotechnological sciences.

It is the objective and target of OBP to improve performance and production efficiencies of current products. The government is expected to increase the number of new distribution points of OBP products in rural areas to nine.

OBP takes priority in advocating for farming skills to alleviate poverty. OBP has implemented two learnership programmes. The objective of the learnerships are to bridge the gap between the current education and training provided and the needs of the labour market. It offers youth an opportunity to gain a qualification through a structured learning programme.

National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC)

Currently, there are 18 industries that are subjected to statutory measures, collecting R517 million through statutory levies. The funds collected are used to finance industry-oriented activities including transformation. One of the approval conditions is that at least 20% of levy income be spent on transformation. NAMC works directly with eleven industry trusts that were formed during the process of deregulation. The total asset value of the trusts is R2.4 billion from the initial value of R678 million.

Monthly, NAMC provides analysis of food price trends and tracks the cost of a basket of 28 selected basic food items. This information is made available to, amongst others, community radio stations. This enables citizens to make informed choices in household spending on food.

The Competition Commission has raised competition issues in the industry, including barriers to entry for emerging farmers throughout the value chain.

As such, a Transformation Review Committee was established to, among others, ensure the statutory levies collected are used by industries to contribute meaningfully to the development of black farmers. Milk SA's commercialisation project in the Free State developed nine projects that support black farmers with cattle, feed, milking parlours and electrification of the farms. The result is that black farmers are able to supply formal markets such as Nestlé.

Positive signs are emanating with other industries like mohair, potatoes, and grains ensuring that transformation occurs.

NAMC together with the DAFF and Buhle Farmers' Academy deliver an annual accredited training programme for female agri-entrepreneurs.

The Youth Agriculture programme aims to promote corporate careers in agriculture and entrepreneurship opportunities. Through this programme the NAMC adopts agricultural high schools, conducts career guidance, offers bursaries to best performing Grade 12 learners and provide internships to graduates at NAMC and industry organisations where they are assigned mentors.

Perishable Products Export Control Board (PPECB)

The PPECB is an independent service provider of quality certification and cold chain management services for producers and exporters of perishable food products.

Established in 1926, the PPECB has delivered valuable services to the perishable products industry for over 90 years by enhancing the credibility of the South African export certificate and supporting the export competitiveness of South Africa's perishable product industries.

The PPECB also delivers inspection and food safety services assigned by the DAFF. The presence of the PPECB in the export industry is enhanced by its recognition as an approved third country under the European Commission Regulation 543 of 2011. This agreement recognises the South African inspection systems as equivalent to that of the European Union (EU) inspection bodies and therefore ensures less frequent checks at the port of import into the EU.

The PPECB's Agricultural Export Technologist Programme remains one of the entity's flagship development programmes. It is aimed at attracting and developing young qualified black professionals and up skilling them in matters relating to export of perishable products.

Products

Crop estimates

According to the second production forecast for summer crops by the Crop Estimates Committee (CEC) for the 2019 production season, the expected commercial maize crop was

10.560 million tons.

The estimated area planted to maize by South African commercial maize producers during the 2019 season was 2.3 million ha.

The estimated maize crop was 16% smaller than the 2018 crop. The three main maize producing areas, namely the Free State, Mpumalanga and North West provinces were expected to produce 79% of the 2019 crop.

The production forecast for sunflower seed was 563 590 tons. The area estimate for sunflower seed was 515 350 ha, while the expected yield was 1.09 t/ha.

The production forecast for soya beans was 1.276 million tons, which is 8.7% more than the 1.316 million tons of the previous season. The estimated area planted to soya beans was 730 500 ha and the expected yield is 1.75 t/ha.

The expected groundnut crop was 20 100 tons. The area planted to groundnuts was estimated at 56 300 ha, which is 0.5% or 300 ha more than the 56 000 ha planted the previous season. The expected yield was 1.43 t/ha.

The production forecast for sorghum was 163 400 tons. The area planted to sorghum was estimated to be 20 050 ha, with an expected yield of 1.00 t/ha.

The production of dry beans was expected to be 70 950 tons. The estimated area planted was 59 300 ha, with an expected yield of 1.20 t/ha.

Grains

Maize

Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region for animal and human consumption.

South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC. It is estimated that about 6 500 commercial maize producers are responsible for most of the South African crop, while thousands of small-scale producers are contributing the rest. Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga.

About 43% of maize produced in South Africa is white and the remaining 57% is yellow maize. White maize is primarily

used for human consumption, while yellow maize is mostly used for animal feed production.

White maize is generally produced in the western parts of the maize belt, while yellow maize is planted in the eastern parts.

An opening maize stock of over 4 million tons in 2018/19 was forecast for South Africa.

Sorghum

Sorghum is an indigenous crop in Africa, and is regarded as the fifth most important cereal in the world. There are two types of sorghum, namely bitter and sweet sorghum cultivars.

Preference is given to the sweet cultivars. Bitter sorghum is planted in areas where birds are a problem because it contains tannin, which gives a bitter taste and consequently birds tend to avoid feeding on it.

Sorghum for commercial purposes is mainly produced in the Western Free State, Mpumalanga, the drier parts of the North West and Limpopo provinces.

South Africa has moved from being a net exporter of sorghum to a net importer.

Wheat

Wheat is the second most important grain crop produced in South Africa and plays an important role in national food security. Most of the wheat produced in the country is bread wheat. Small quantities of durum wheat, used to produce pasta, is produced in certain areas. In South Africa, wheat is mainly used for human consumption (bread, biscuits, breakfast cereals, rusks, etc.) and the remaining as seed and animal feed.

Other non-food uses include production of alcohol for ethanol, absorbing agents for disposable diapers, adhesives and industrial uses as starch on coatings. Producers of wheat are estimated to be approximately between 3 800 to 4 000.

South Africa is a net importer of wheat. The price farmers get for their crop is, therefore, tied to import parity. There is also an import tariff.

A quota of 300 000 tons can be imported duty free from the EU under the new Economic Partnership Agreement (EPA). South Africa is expected to import almost two million tons by 2026.

South Africa remains the largest wheat producer in Sub-Saharan Africa after Ethiopia.

Barley

Barley is one of the most important grain crops in South Africa, surpassed only by wheat and maize and is, following wheat, the most important small grain type.

The cultivation area for malting barley under dryland conditions is at present restricted to a very specific region, namely the Southern Cape, which stretches from Bot River in the west to Heidelberg in the east. It would not be economically viable to cultivate malting barley on dryland in an area that does not receive 350 mm of well-distributed rainfall during the growing season (April to October).

The concentration of the production of a relatively minor commodity, for instance malting barley, in a specific area, has various advantages, for example, it facilitates transport, storage, control, extension and research, which also implies cost advantages.

However, because of the risk of unpredictable weather conditions in the southern Cape, barley production has also been introduced to the cooler central irrigation areas in the Northern Cape. There are also farmers in other areas of South Africa, such as the North West, Limpopo and Free State, who plant small quantities of malting barley under irrigation.

Malting barley under irrigation has a higher yield and is more stable than in the southern Cape, where the crop is dependent on rainfall.

Barley is mainly used for the production of malt (for brewing beer), animal feed and pearl barley.

Dry beans

Dry beans are warm-season annual legumes. Gross returns from dry beans can easily be higher than for soya beans. While yields are typically lower, dry beans fetch a relatively higher price.

South Africa has a dry bean deficit and relies on imports. This provides an opportunity for the whole of southern Africa to increase production.

The crop is mainly produced in the Free State, KwaZulu-

Natal, Limpopo, North West and the Northern Cape. Producers sell directly to the trade or to wholesalers and co-operatives.

Oilseeds Groundnuts

Groundnuts are grown mainly in the Free State, North West and Northern Cape. They are also produced in Limpopo, Mpumalanga and KwaZulu-Natal but production is lower in these provinces.

Oil made from groundnuts can be used for cooking and to make peanut butter. It can also be used to manufacture soap, massage oil, body, shaving and hair creams.

Sunflower seed

The Free State and North West are the major producers of sunflower seed, followed by Limpopo, Mpumalanga and Gauteng. South Africa is the world's 10th largest producer of sunflower seed.

Compared to other crops, sunflower performs well under dry conditions. This is probably the main reason for the crop's popularity in the marginal production areas of South Africa. A close link exists between the area planted to maize and the area planted to sunflower seed because farmers can easily switch to sunflower if the normal period for maize planting has passed.

Major exporters of sunflower seed to South Africa are Romania, Botswana, Bulgaria and Argentina. Importing from SADC countries utilises the SADC Free Trade Agreement which facilitates flow of commodities among countries in the region at no tariff charges.

Sales of sunflower seed are mostly to the domestic market with very small quantities destined for the export market. Mostly, South Africa remains a net importer of sunflower seed.

Soya beans

Soya beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are also produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West. Various soya bean cultivars have adapted quite well to South African conditions.

Domestic soya bean oilcake production has exceeded imported oilcake since 2014 and is projected to increase to over

1.8 million tons by 2026, continually replacing imports so that only 250 thousand tons or 13% of domestic soya bean oilcake use is projected to be imported by 2026. Soya oil imports are projected to decrease from 160 thousand tons in 2017 to merely 50 thousand tons by 2026.

Canola

Canola is an oilseed crop grown mainly in the Western Cape. Canola competes on the local market with other oilseeds such as sunflower seeds and soya beans.

Local and international investors in the oilseed crushing sector are boosting South Africa's capacity to process local oilseed crops such as soya beans, canola and sunflower seed.

About 99% of the canola crop in South Africa is produced in the Western Cape province, particularly in the southern Cape.

Cotton

In South Africa, cotton is grown in the warm regions of the Limpopo, Mpumalanga, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal where minimum night temperatures are at least 15°C during the growing season.

The cotton industry is labour-intensive and provides work for roughly one worker per hectare of cotton planted. Oil extracted from cotton seed can be used for cooking and salad dressings. Extracted seed can also be used as a fertiliser or as feed for livestock, poultry and fish.

Tobacco

Virginia tobacco is produced mainly in Mpumalanga, Limpopo, Eastern Cape, Western Cape and North West.

Flue-cured leaf tobacco contributes more than 79% to total production, with the number of ha cultivated for flue-cured tobacco being about six times the land cultivated for air-cured leaf tobacco. The industry produces 15 000 t of tobacco a year.

There are 176 commercial tobacco growers in South Africa operating on some 5 000 ha of land and 155 small-scale tobacco farmers. Tobacco farmers employ about 8 000 to 10 000 farmworkers; in addition, more than 35 000 dependants are also able make a living in deep rural areas thanks to the tobacco industry.

The total annual tobacco crop about 15 million kg. More than 90% of tobacco used in South Africa goes toward the manufacturing high-quality tobacco products.

Sugar

South Africa produces cost-competitive high-quality sugar. The sugar sector is a diverse industry, combining the agricultural activities of sugar-cane cultivation with the industrial factory production of raw and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, as well as a range of byproducts.

The South African sugar industry is cost-competitive, consistently ranking in the top 15 out of approximately 120 sugar producing countries worldwide. The industry makes a positive difference to the lives of more than a one million people and is a catalyst to economic growth and development. Sugarcane is a strategic crop for Kwazulu-Natal and Mpumalanga, where sugarcane production is located, comprising nearly 50% of field crop gross farming income across the two provinces.

Sugarcane is grown by approximately 24 000 registered growers, farming predominantly in KwaZulu-Natal with substantial operations in Mpumalanga, and some sugarcane production in the Eastern Cape. Employment within the industry is estimated at 429 000 people (direct and indirect) and the industry produces an average of approximately 2.2 million tons of sugar per season.

About 75% of the sugar on average is marketed in the SACU region. The remainder is exported to markets in Africa, Asia and the USA.

Horticulture

Deciduous fruit

The deciduous fruit industry in South Africa, including fresh, dried and canned fruit for local consumption and export, is a multimillion rand industry. The exporting of deciduous fruit is a major earner of foreign exchange for South Africa.

Deciduous fruits grown in South Africa include apples, pears, apricots, nectarines, peaches, plums, grapes, olives, figs and cherries.

Although some producers grow fruit both for processing (canning, juice and drying) as well as fresh consumption, it is

estimated that in South Africa there are about 2 231 producers of fruit for fresh consumption, 1 066 producers of dry and table grapes, 924 producers of stone fruit and 618 producers of pome fruit.

The main deciduous fruit producing areas of South Africa are situated in the Western and Eastern Cape provinces, mostly in areas where warm, dry summers and cold winters prevail.

Dried fruit

Dried fruit is produced mainly in the western and southern parts of the Western Cape and the Lower and Upper Orange River areas in the Northern Cape. Tree fruit, as opposed to vine fruit, is dried mainly in the Western Cape.

The most important dried fruit products in terms of volume are Thompson seedless raisins, golden sultanas, unbleached sultanas, currants, peaches, pears, apricots and prunes.

Apricots are grown mainly in the Little Karoo and prunes are produced almost exclusively in the Tulbagh District in the Western Cape.

Most raisins are produced in the area along the Lower Orange River and currants are mainly from the Vredendal District in the Western Cape.

The total production of dried vine fruit and dried tree fruit decreased by 10.6% to 66 646 tons in 2018.

Honeybush and rooibos tea

Honeybush production is a young, growing industry that is unique to South Africa. Honeybush is part of the fynbos that grows wild in the Western Cape and is not produced anywhere else in the world. The plant grows naturally on the wetter and cooler southern slopes of mountains. Some species are mostly harvested in the wild, while others are cultivated commercially.

About 394 tons of dry tea are harvested per annum. Most of the crop is exported to countries such as the Netherlands, Germany, the UK and the USA.

Currently, 82% of honeybush tea is wild-harvested and only 18% cultivated. The cultivated tea comes from a few farmers who have established successful honey bush plantations, as well as a handful of community-based projects.

Rooibos tea is exclusively farmed in the Cederberg and Sandveld areas of the Western Cape.

On average, South Africa produces about 15 000 t of rooibos tea a year. According to the Rooibos Tea Council, South Africans consumed 8 000 t in 2016. The balance is exported.

In 2014, South Africa won the right to secure geographical indicator status for Rooibos tea. This enables Rooibos tea growers to look for new markets in Asia and increase those that already exist.

With its high levels of antioxidants, rooibos has long been known for its ability to help prevent cancer from developing, but recent research shows that it could potentially also be used to treat – but not cure – the disease.

Wine

South Africa is the eight-largest wine producer in the world, with a contribution of 4.1% to the world's wine production.

The area under wine grape vineyards is estimated at 94 545 ha.

The wine industry is labour intensive and provides employment to approximately 290 000 people directly and indirectly. The number of primary wine grape producers in South Africa is estimated at 3 029.

Wine is produced mainly in the Western Cape and along parts of the Orange River in the Northern Cape.

The traditional winegrowing areas along the coastal zone benefit from its cooling breezes that moderate the summer temperatures. The Cape mountain ranges form a backdrop to what is internationally recognised as one of the most beautiful wine producing areas of the world. The vineyards lie in valleys and mountain foothills in some areas, and in flatter plains in others. One of the potential competitive advantages of the Cape wine lands is great variety of soils.

Nietvoorbij, the internationally acclaimed research farm of the ARC, is synonymous with quality research in oenology and viticulture. Annually, 1 000 different wines (10 – 20 l) are made for research purposes in the modern experimental cellar. Next door, in the old, thatched roof cellar, traditional and modern winemaking methods are combined to create unique wines for enjoyment.

Citrus and subtropical fruit

South Africa ranks 13th in world citrus production and despite increased competition, its citrus exports are growing. The country is also the world's third largest exporter of fresh citrus fruit by volume, after Spain and Turkey.

In terms of gross value, the citrus industry is the third largest horticultural industry after deciduous fruits and vegetables.

Citrus fruit is grown in Limpopo, Eastern Cape, Mpumalanga, Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal in areas where subtropical conditions (warm to hot summers and mild winters) prevail.

The Western Cape and Eastern Cape are considered 'cooler' citrus growing areas and production is focused on Navel oranges and lemons. The cooler climate allows farmers to respond to consumer demand for easy peelers like clementines and satsumas. Farm sizes are also smaller and most citrus in the Western and Eastern Cape is packed by privatised cooperatives in facilities that are amongst the largest in the world.

i ARC Infruitec-Nietvoorbij is responsible for managing nine genebanks. The genebanks include field collections of various deciduous tree fruit crops, grapevines, olives, indigenous flowers of the Proteaceae and honeybush, in vitro collections of yeasts, fungi and bacteria as well as some tree fruit and berry crops in medium-term cold storage.

The main purpose of the field genebanks is to conserve genetic diversity of fruits, grapes and indigenous crops, particularly in support of breeding programmes; the yeast collection contributes to oenological research; and the fungal and bacterial collections provide for research and diagnostics.

In Mpumalanga, Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal, the climate is warmer and better suited to the cultivation of grapefruit and Valencia oranges. Farms in these regions are larger and many farmers pack in smaller privately owned facilities.

Pineapples are grown mainly in the Eastern Cape and northern KwaZulu-Natal.

Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, as well as in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-

Natal and the Eastern Cape.

The largest contributors to the sales of subtropical fruit on the major fresh produce markets are bananas, pineapples and avocados, followed by mangoes and papayas.

Vegetables (excluding potatoes)

Vegetables are produced in most parts of the country. However, in certain areas farmers tend to concentrate on specific crops, such as green beans that are grown mainly in Kaapmuiden, Marble Hall and Tzaneen, green peas in George and Vaalharts, and asparagus mainly in Krugersdorp and Ficksburg.

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but on the largest scale in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga Lowveld and Middleveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape. In Limpopo, South Africa's main tomato-growing area, most of the crops are found in Letaba, Mooketsi and Musina.

Onions are grown mainly in Mpumalanga, certain areas of the Western Cape and the southern Free State and in all areas of Limpopo, with the main production areas being Polokwane and Mokopane. Onions have an estimated planting area of 6 500 ha to 9 000 ha.

Cabbages are grown countrywide, but the largest crops are in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal.

Potatoes

There are 16 distinct potato-production regions in South Africa, which are spread throughout the country. The main regions are situated in the Free State, Western Cape, Limpopo and Mpumalanga.

Potatoes are planted at different times because of climate differences in the production areas, resulting in fresh potatoes being available throughout the year.

In the early 1990s, there was a major shift in production from dryland to irrigation and currently almost 80% of plantings are under irrigation.

Livestock

Animal production contributes approximately 48% to the

country's agricultural output in terms of value. The total number of cattle in South Africa at the end of August 2018 was estimated at 12.83 million (Trends in the Agricultural Sector 2018). The national herd comprises various indigenous dairy and beef cattle breeds as well as indigenous breeds such as the Afrikaner and the Nguni.

Approximately 80% of the agricultural land in South Africa is suitable mainly for extensive livestock farming. However, livestock is also found in areas where the animals are kept in combination with other farming enterprises.

Dairy farming

Although milk is produced in all the areas of South Africa, the coastal areas are the most suitable because of their mild temperatures and good rainfall conditions, which lead to improvements in animals and pasture conditions.

The number of milk producers in South Africa decreased drastically by 61.6%, from 3 551 in January 2009 to 1 364 in January 2018.

Milk production in South Africa contributes only about 0.4% to the world's milk production. However, in terms of the value of agricultural production, the milk industry was the seventh largest agricultural industry in the country in 2017.

South Africa has four major dairy breeds, namely Holstein, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire. The industry comprises various economic activities with significant differences in farming methods and the processing of dairy products, including the production and marketing of raw milk, pasteurised milk and cream, fermented milk, long-life milk and cream, yoghurt, and cheese and its byproducts.

Beef cattle farming

Beef is produced throughout South Africa. The production of weaners for the feedlot industry is the main form of cattle farming – feedlots account for approximately 75% of all beef produced in the country.

Beef cattle contribute approximately 80% to the total number of cattle in the country, while dairy cattle make up the remaining 20%.

Small stock (sheep and goat) farming

Although sheep farms are found in all provinces, these are concentrated in the more arid parts of the country.

The total number of sheep in South Africa at the end of August 2018 were estimated at 22.55 million. The largest numbers of sheep were estimated to be in the Eastern Cape (30%), Northern Cape (24%), Free State (20%) and Western Cape (12%) provinces.

Flock sizes vary between less than 50 and 1 800 animals. Sheep flocks in the Eastern, Western and Northern Cape provinces tend to be much larger than those in the other provinces.

The animals are kept mainly for wool and mutton production and the industry is therefore represented by organisations from the mutton as well as the wool industry.

The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, such as the Dohne Merino, South African Mutton Merino, Afrino and Letelle breeds. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton produce.

Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed and Karakul sheep are still found in the more arid areas.

The Eastern Cape has the largest number of goats, followed by Limpopo. Estimates indicate that there was a decrease of 1.00% in the number of goats, from 5.475 million in the previous year to 5.420 million in August 2018.

The indigenous meat-producing Boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa.

Almost all of South Africa's Angora goat (mohair) farmers are located in the Eastern Cape, where they farm with about one million goats.

South Africa produces approximately 53% of the world mohair clip. Through selective breeding and farming techniques, the Angora goat farmer plays a crucial role in promoting the constant availability of quality natural fibres.

Most of the world mohair production is imported to South Africa for further processing, after which it is exported together with locally (including Lesotho) produced mohair. China remains the leader in mohair imports from South Africa, followed by Italy and Taiwan.

Pig farming

The South African pork industry is small in terms of the overall South African agricultural sector. It contributes 2.2% to the primary agricultural sector.

The gross value of pork production is dependent on the quantity produced and the price farmers received. The trend in gross value follows a pattern of prices, because the industry is characterised by volatile prices.

Pork is produced throughout South Africa, with Gauteng and Western Cape being the largest producers, contributing to 40% and 21%, respectively, to total production.

There are about 132 commercial, four stud and about 400 smallholder pig farmers. They own about 120 000 sows (100 000 commercial and 10 000 smallholder sows) and employ about 3 005 workers, comprising about 2 200 farm workers and 805 workers in the abattoir sectors. The 145 registered pig abattoirs use modern technology to ensure a streamlined slaughtering process.

Poultry farming

The poultry industry (including meat and eggs) continues to dominate the agricultural sector in South Africa as the main supplier of protein in kilogramme terms to the South African consumer, as more poultry products are consumed per year than all other animal protein sources combined.

The consumption of poultry meat accounts to about 60% of total meat consumption (beef, mutton, goat, pork and poultry).

The distribution of broiler birds per province is as follows: North West (22.0%), Mpumalanga (20.7%), Northern and Western Cape (19.5%), Free State (12.1%), Gauteng (9.9%), Eastern Cape (6.7%), KwaZulu-Natal (6.6%) and Limpopo (2.5%).

During the first six months of 2018, an average of 17.8 million broilers were slaughtered per week, totalling to 427.2 million birds.

The average weighted basic gross price (before rebates, advertising and distribution costs are deducted) received by producers of broilers decreased by 11.9% to R21.44/kg in the first nine months of 2018, as against R24.33/kg in the previous year.

The poultry industry faces several significant challenges that have hindered its competitiveness and growth potential. The principal challenge were the Avian Influenza outbreaks, which led to millions of birds being culled to prevent the spread of the disease. During the first semester of 2018, hatcheries projected 19,11 million chicks per week and a potential broiler production of 17.86 million per week.

The Avian Influenza, outbreak also lead to a severe shortage of eggs. The industry imported fertile eggs to close the supply gap. Egg production started to pick up during the second half of 2018.

Hunting and wildlife sector

Hunting can be divided into trophy hunting and meat hunting. South Africa is a popular hunting destination for international hunters that may want to take a trophy of their hunting experience home as memorabilia.

Local hunters, often referred to as biltong hunters, hunt for their own use as an alternative protein source, which also contributes to food security.

The five most popular hunting provinces are Limpopo, Northern Cape, Eastern Cape, North West and Free State. The five most popular species among biltong hunters are springbok, impala, blesbuck, blue wildebeest and kudu.

Hunting primarily occurs in rural and remote rural areas. The Limpopo, North West and Eastern Cape provinces are prime hunting destinations that generate employment for the unskilled workforce where other viable land-use options are often limited.

The hunting sector in South Africa is represented by various voluntary associations and organisations that serve in the interest of both consumptive and professional hunters. The Confederation of Hunting Associations of South Africa is a federation of over 25 hunting, hunting related and shooting affiliates across South Africa. The SA Hunters and Game Conservation Association is the biggest representative body for hunters in South Africa.

SA Hunters and other hunting associations in South Africa have taken the lead in the wildlife economy by advocating and practising responsible, sustainable hunting as the most effective wildlife management mechanism that supports the game ranching sector in the country.

Programmes and projects

Regulatory services

As a result of an increase in trade in regulated agricultural products, illegal import or export of products poses the risk of introducing a range of diseases and pests.

The DAFF's regulatory activities include the inspection of plants, animals and their products to prevent the introduction and distribution of quarantine pests and diseases and ensuring that exported animals, plants and their products are free from quarantine pests and diseases.

The DAFF also ensures compliance with agricultural legislation by conducting inspections at designated ports of entry.

Plants and plant products are inspected for compliance with plant health, genetic resources and food and quality-assurance legislation. The department conducts surveillance for regulated pests and/or national pests of concern throughout the country.

The Pest Risk Analysis Division conducts scientific analysis of risks posed based on scientific data. Risks associated with the importation of plant propagation material are managed by prescribing a compulsory predetermined quarantine detention period for specific high-risk categories.

To prevent the introduction of harmful exotic plant pests, all imported plant material is tested and audited. The DAFF renders diagnostic services to ensure that all imported and exported products comply with international standards.

Closely linked to early detection is the implementation of proper pest-awareness programmes to keep the agricultural sector and the general public informed.

Through its Import/Export Protocols Division, the DAFF ensures and maintains market access for South African plants and plant products. This includes exchanging plant health information and expertise in terms of bilateral engagements, and maintaining bilateral export/import programmes.

Despite having maintained the country's lucrative fruit export markets, production and exports are still under threat. Accordingly, imports of host fruit from countries where pests have been established must be appropriately managed. This emphasises the importance of border control and risk management responsibilities.

Over the medium term, the department expects to receive an additional allocation to address biosecurity issues at South Africa's 16 land border posts, acquire two additional plant quarantine stations and two additional animal quarantine stations, strengthen pest surveillance and control and inspection and laboratory services.

The National Surveillance Programme for Quarantine Fruit Flies continues. The invasive oriental fruit fly (*Bactrocera dorsalis*, previously known as *Bacrocera invadens*) occurs in Limpopo, Mpumalanga, North West, Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal where it is under official control.

Through the ongoing surveillance programme, it was also detected in the Western Cape. In line with the applicable regulations, the necessary regulatory measures were instituted to quarantine the area. This detection in the Western Cape is of particular concern in light of the important contribution of the deciduous fruit industry to the agricultural sector. This surveillance programme is continuing.

South Africa is an active member of the World Organisation for Animal Health. Disease reports are received from the Organisation for Animal Health and through direct contact with veterinary administrations in exporting countries.

The Directorate: Animal Health works to curb outbreaks of diseases such as highly pathogenic avian influenza, foot-and-mouth disease, and African horse sickness. The DAFF is working with the equine industry on protective measures for horses in the AHS infected zone in order to reduce the severity of outbreaks.

Trade in animals and animal products are regulated to prevent the entry of diseases.

Information for international travellers

Pests and invasive species are not only introduced through formal trade, but are also brought into South Africa by tourists. .

Once a pest has entered South Africa, climate change may influence its establishment and spread, as well as the damage it causes.

When travelling to South Africa, tourists should make sure that they do not bring in prohibited agricultural products. These products may harbour pests that occur in other countries and

their introduction may endanger South Africa's competitiveness in trade and agricultural productivity.

Animals and animal products such as meat and dairy products, plants and plant products, honey and honey products as well as other regulated goods, are all potentially high-risk materials. These materials may only be imported into South Africa by means of an import permit, unless exempted, and must be declared with the DAFF inspectors for inspection at ports of entry before entering South Africa..

Inspectors from DAFF conduct luggage and consignment inspections at the ports of entry with the help of sniffer dogs to ensure compliance with the import permit requirements.

Prohibited products will either be confiscated, destroyed or returned to the country of export and those found carrying them may face a fine of up to R20 000 or imprisonment.

Food import and export standards

Internationally, standards for food imports and exports are harmonised through various international standard-setting bodies subscribed to under the World Trade Organisation (WTO) and to which South Africa is a signatory, including the Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measurements Agreement, World Organisation for Animal Health, Codex Alimentarius Commission and the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change. These requirements aim to protect consumer rights, the environment, animal life and public health.

Through its Directorate: Food Import and Export Standards, the department collates information regarding the standards for sanitary and phytosanitary measures applicable to trade in animal and plant products. The DAFF also coordinates promotion and awareness programmes addressing cross-cutting standards and legislative requirements for food safety, quality, and plant and animal health.

The department and the PPECB work closely to assist South Africans to export their products successfully in a highly competitive global arena.

Food safety and quality assurance

The Directorate: Food Safety and Quality Assurance (D: FSQA) is responsible for the development of regulations, standards

and requirements regarding control of the export of agricultural products of plant and animal origin under the Agricultural Product Standards Act of 1990 and to control the production, sale, import and export of certain alcoholic products in terms of the Liquor Products Act of 1989.

These standards and regulations are harmonised with various international standard-setting bodies such as the Codex Alimentarius Commission, the Organization for Economic Co-operation and Development, United Nations (UN) Economic Commission for Europe, and the International Dairy Federation.

South African products can compete on an equal footing with overseas products and can also be marketed more competitively.

The Agricultural Product Standards Act of 1990 makes provision for the appointment of assignees to undertake inspections at the point of sale, manufacture, packing or export to ensure that the set standards and requirements are complied with.

The following assignees are currently appointed:

- The PPECB conducts quality inspection and food safety services under the Agricultural Products Standards Act of 1990 for regulated agricultural products intended for export;
- Nejahmogul Technologies and Agric Services (Pty) Ltd conducts quality inspection for dairy and related products on the local market;
- The Agency for Food Safety conducts inspection for regulated animal products (poultry meat and eggs) on the local market;
- Impumelelo Agribusiness (Pty) Ltd conducts quality inspections on processed products on the local market;
- Leaf Services conducts quality inspections on grain and grain products on the local market;
- Product Control of South Africa conducts quality inspections of fresh fruit and vegetables; and
- The South African Meat Industry Company conducts inspections of meat carcasses on the local market.

National analytical services

The National Analytical Services (NAS) laboratories reside under the D: FSQA. There are two in-house laboratories within NAS: one situated in Stellenbosch and one in Pretoria.

The laboratories provide and coordinate the analysis of certain agricultural products (fresh fruit and vegetables, grains, wines and spirits, dairy products and processed food) in support of the enforcement of the food safety and quality standards and requirements as laid down in the Agricultural Product Standards Act of 1990 and the Liquor Products Act of 1989.

Disaster and risk management

The National Agricultural Disaster Risk Management Committee provides strategic guidance on policy and advises the Ministry of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries on issues relating to agricultural disaster risk management. The committee comprises members from provincial departments of agriculture, organised agriculture such as NAFU, Agri SA, TAU SA and the ARC and relevant directorates within the DAFF.

The established National Drought Task Team, chaired by the DAFF, advises the National Disaster Management Advisory Forum on drought management. The task team comprises provincial disaster management centres, organised agriculture, and relevant directorates within the department.

The department frequently responds to hazards such as droughts, veld fires, floods and outbreaks of pests and disease, which includes the control of migratory pests such as locusts and quelea. It is also responsible for the control of blackfly.

International cooperation

The DAFF maintains a number of trade agreements, including with the EU and the United States (AGOA).

Under AGOA, the agricultural sector has advantages for the exports of citrus, macadamia nuts, wine and other food products to the USA.

The DAFF has continued to open new markets. A notable recent achievement is the Indonesian government's recognition of the competence of South Africa's food safety control measures. This comes after a protracted negotiation process between the technical teams of the two countries, which eventually led to the opening of the Indonesian market to South African exporters.

The recognition was granted in respect of 15 commodities, including deciduous fruit, citrus, grapes and nuts. South African

exporters will be allowed to use the port of Jakarta, Tanjung Priok, which is closer to the main Jakarta market, therefore reducing transport costs and preventing quality loss.

The department has identified that for South Africa to trade on a common footing with the global economy, it needs to migrate from the current paper-based certification and permit system. In this regard, the South African Revenue Service has pledged technical support to the department towards the development of an internationally recognised and interphase ready import and export system, at a projected cost of R80 million over the medium term.

Weather and climate

Climate change

The agricultural sector in South Africa faces considerable impact from climate change, which affects the livelihoods of most people, especially those who are vulnerable to food insecurity.

South Africa responds to international obligations regarding climate mainly through the Department of Environmental Affairs, but the DAFF, as well as other departments such as those of mineral resources, energy, science and technology, and water affairs are also involved. The Climate Change Programme implemented by the DAFF includes programmes on raising awareness, policy development, the development of sector mitigation and adaptation plans, conducting vulnerability assessments countrywide, and identifying and coordinating climate-related research projects.

The Climate Change Adaptation and Mitigation Plan for Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries has been approved. The plan outlines useful mitigation and adaptation options promoting soil, water and nutrient conservation for agricultural production.

DAFF's crop suitability programme is aimed at promoting best adaptation management practices and enhancing adaptive capacity and resilience of the agricultural systems to minimise the risk of the negative impacts of climate change as drastic increases in temperature have a negative impact on crop growth and crop yields.

South Africa is a full member of the Global Research Alliance which, among other objectives, aims to enhance collaborative

research into reducing agricultural emissions and increasing support and resourcing for agricultural emissions research.

Early warning unit

The increasing risk of disaster is reduced by strengthening early warning systems and disseminating early warnings, as well as raising awareness through campaigns. This helps to build resilient farming communities.

The DAFF has therefore developed and implemented an Early Warning System (EWS) that disseminates extreme weather warnings to farming communities. The EWS communicates monthly advisories and daily extreme weather warnings, in support of reducing disaster risk.

The implementation of the EWS is continuously monitored and evaluated to identify and address gaps in the system. National Agro-Meteorological Committee meetings are held quarterly.

Other risk reduction activities include continuous research to identify areas and measures in addressing and improving disaster risk management, including awareness campaigns and education and training so as to strengthen disaster risk management. In addition, DAFF continues to encourage integration of disaster risk management into all departmental programmes and projects.

DAFF also encourages the strengthening of early-warning systems by all relevant role players to be prioritised and creation of disaster units in provinces.

Sustainable resource management and use

The DAFF and the ARC's Institute for Soil, Climate and Water have developed an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The National Land Type Survey, available for use at a 1:250 000 scale, aims to assist and guide land-use planning and decision-making at national level.

All available natural-resource spatial information and other required data sets, including the latest Spot 5 satellite imagery and agricultural information, are found on the internet-based Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (Agris). Using interactive web-based applications, Agris provides access to spatial information, industry-specific information and decision-support tools.

The Advanced Fire Information System (Afis) tracks all fire outbreaks in the SADC region through the use of Moderate-Resolution Imaging Spectroradiometer satellite imagery. The information may be viewed at afis.meraka.org.za.

Soil degradation

Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in organic soil matter. Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-term fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. In addition, it is estimated that about 60% of the cropland area is moderately to severely acidic, and probably at least 15% is affected by subsoil acidity.

It is calculated that 1.5 million ha (around 1% of the land surface) have a high to extremely high erosion risk. More than 11 million ha (9%) are classified as having a moderate erosion risk, and 17% as low to very low risk.

It is estimated that 25% of South Africa is covered by soils that are also potentially highly susceptible to wind erosion. These include the sandy soils in the western half of the "maize quadrangle" in the North West and the north-western Free State – the areas that produce 75% of the country's maize.

South African soils are also extremely prone to serious soil compaction, particularly under intensive mechanised cultivated agriculture, in both dryland and irrigated land. It is a problem throughout the country and much more widespread and serious than the global norm.

Human-induced soil acidification is a major problem. Its effect is severe since it impacts on the country's scarce, arable land, especially the limited high-potential agricultural land. Soil-fertility degradation is a concern.

In commercial agriculture, there has been capital-building of some nutrients, especially phosphorus and zinc. In some cases, phosphorus has built up to excessive levels, where it starts to reduce crop yields.

Genetically modified organisms

Genetic modification (GM) provides a way to meet the growing

demand for food without placing greater pressure on scarce resources.

South Africa has commercialised three different GM crops, namely maize, cotton and soya beans.

South Africa is the ninth largest producer of genetically modified crops in the world and remains the pioneer for the adoption of genetically modified crops. This is aligned to Section 24 of the Constitution, which advocates for sustainable use of biodiversity

LandCare Programme

The National LandCare Programme is a government-supported community-based initiative, which is active throughout the country. Driven by both the public and private sectors through partnerships and cooperation, it seeks to:

- conserve natural resources
- use them in a sustainable way
- create a conservation ethic through education and awareness
- create jobs and address poverty by launching various natural resource rehabilitation, improvement and conservation projects.

Serious concerns about land and water degradation are identified in each province and specific projects address these issues. Projects have been implemented in all nine provinces through the LandCare Conditional Grant, whereby ring-fenced funding is transferred to provinces.

Four subprogrammes, namely WaterCare, VeldCare, SoilCare and JuniorCare, are all part of the LandCare Programme.

The LandCare Programme is aligned with Government's broader objective of job creation. The temporary jobs created under the programme are funded through the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). The LandCare Programme adheres to the target of 55% women, 40% youth and 2% people with disabilities as specified by the EPWP.

Funding for these projects is transferred quarterly to the respective provincial departments as implementing agents, as conditional grants under the Division of Revenue Act, 2913(Act 2 of 2013). Assessment and reporting requirements are specified in the Act, as well as by the EPWP. The provincial departments use the reporting tools provided by the EPWP to report on the number of jobs created.

Additional monthly, quarterly and annual reports are forwarded by the provincial departments to DAFF to monitor performance and the impact of the programme on the state of the natural agricultural resources.

Extension and advisory services

The National Policy on Extension and Advisory Services for the agricultural, forestry and fisheries sectors recognises and calls for the involvement of a wide array of stakeholders involved in the delivery of extension and advisory services through a pluralistic and integrated approach.

The implementation process of the National Policy on Extension and Advisory Services implementation commenced with the establishment of the Provincial Extension Coordinating Forum (PECF). The PECF is operational in all provinces and meetings are held on a quarterly basis. DAFF provides support to the PECF to ensure provincial integrated service delivery.

Since the implementation of the Extension Recovery Programme in 2008/09, the number of extension officers has increased from 2 210 to the current 3 200.

The DAFF targets deploying 20 extension practitioners to commodity organisations per financial year.

The intention is to deploy 100 extension practitioners by 2019/20, to ensure that extension practitioners acquire skills and gain experience of a specific commodity value chain.

Training

The agricultural sector boasts state-of-the-art training and research facilities.

South Africa has a number of regular schools offering a range of agricultural subjects as well as specialised agricultural high schools such as Bekker High School in North West, Harry Oppenheimer Agricultural High School in Limpopo and Boland Agricultural High School in the Western Cape.

Prospective farmers and technicians are trained at the country's colleges of agriculture such as Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute in the Eastern Cape, Cedara College of Agriculture in KwaZulu-Natal and Madzivhandila College of Agriculture in Limpopo.

On average, each college admits 400 full-time students and trains 1 000 farmers annually. This relates to close to 1 000

potential entrant farmers and over 10 000 skills trainings per year.

A Joint Technical Task Team (JTTF) was formed as recommended by Cabinet after the Mangaung Resolution of 2012 to advise on the implications of transferring the colleges of agriculture to the Department of Higher Education and Training. The JTTF has since completed the due diligence report and the report was consulted with all the relevant stakeholders.

Universities, some with designated faculties of agriculture, offer degree courses. Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

This training potential is coupled with productive and robust research capacity in terms of scientists and researchers based at various organisations who are world leaders in their respective fields of agricultural research.

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations, as well as some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms, conduct agricultural research.

Research and innovation

It is only through proper research that the country can be able to increase productivity, come up with disease resistant plants and animals, and alleviate the impact of climate change.

The ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations, as well as some provincial departments of agriculture, which are responsible for technological development and transfer aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms, conduct agricultural research.

Through the Agricultural Science, Technology and Innovation Activities Coordination Committee, the department engages the Department of Science and Technology on joint issues of national importance within the National System of Innovation.

The research unit is also involved in the development and implementation of national research policies and strategies, such as the National Agricultural Research and Development Strategy. This encompasses the national priority-setting process, developing guidelines, administering a national

research and technology fund and overall monitoring and evaluation.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on research and development while the Government Agricultural Research and Development Action Group provide a platform for government and state-owned entities to plan research and technology development within the national agricultural research system.

The NARF facilitates consensus and makes recommendations to government on the coordination of research, development and transfer of technology to enhance national economic growth, social welfare and environmental sustainability.

Policy research support

The Directorate: Policy Research Support in the DAFF coordinates all agricultural research and development activities. The mandate of the Policy Research Support on policies extends beyond policies and strategies in research but covers the entire sector related policies.

The Policy Research Support Unit is responsible for ensuring that available sector policies are aligned to government protocols, which is conducted by subjecting available policies to the objectives of the main government policies, such as the NDP, to ensure that sector policies address Government's priorities.

The unit is also responsible for conducting the review of sector policies for alignment with the NDP.

Animal identification

Any owner of cattle, sheep, goats or pigs, is compelled by law to mark their livestock. The registered mark is put on the National Register of Animal Identification System. This register is available to the SAPS to help it trace individual animals in cases of stock theft.

However, this can only be implemented successfully if all cattle, goats, pigs and sheep are marked in accordance with the Animal Identification Act, 2002 (Act 6 of 2002).

Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (SAPCA) is the

official representative of the pest, termite and woodborer-control industries. All SAPCA-qualified inspectors have to register with the DAFF.

South Africa regularly liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

To respond comprehensively to the management of regulated plant pests and diseases, the department, in close collaboration with the South African fruit industries, has developed an early warning surveillance programme for the quarantine of fruit flies. The technical forum continues to identify, prioritise and manage quarantine pest risks such as the African invader fruit fly.

In the global trade of food and food products, veterinary public health and food safety aspects in relation to animal products received increasing attention.

Food security

To address the challenges of households vulnerable to poverty, inequality, unemployment and persons with inadequate or severely inadequate access to food, the department has prioritised food and nutrition security, including agrarian transformation.

In 2013, the South African Cabinet approved the National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security, the Household Food and Nutrition Security Strategy and the Fetsa Tlala Integrated Food Production Initiative. These policy frameworks are intended to streamline, harmonise and integrate the diverse food and nutrition security interventions in South Africa.

The strategic objective of the National Policy on Food and Nutrition Security is to ensure the availability, accessibility and affordability of safe and nutritious food at national and household levels.

The National Food and Nutrition Security Plan (NFNSP) 2017 – 2022) embodies a collective response of government to the challenges of food insecurity and malnutrition in the country. It reflects a common vision across government departments and entails a unified set of national goals and objectives, indicators and targets for monitoring progress, as well as a common budget for implementation of activities.

It enables the country to address problems such as hunger,

malnutrition and micronutrient deficiencies that affect physical growth and cognitive development, especially among children, as directed by the NDP 2030.

The goal of the NFNSP is to implement a priority set of actions and establish the necessary institutional architecture to lead, coordinate, budget and monitor the implementation of these actions to deliver significant improvements in food and nutrition status by 2030.

The NFNSP actions are guided by six strategic objectives which were derived from a consultative process aimed at establishing a governance and leadership system; to review current policies and strategies; reform the current duplicated and uncoordinated delivery of food and nutrition security (FNS) interventions and to ensure the implementation of strategic and comprehensive FNS initiatives in a coordinated manner.

It also took into account the recommendations from Cabinet; the Policy on Food and Nutrition Security, and the Diagnostic/Implementation Evaluation of Nutrition Interventions for Children from Conception to Age 5 (2014), which compared South Africa to Brazil, Colombia, Malaysia, Malawi and Mozambique.

The department also worked with the private sector to develop the APAP, which will bring one million ha of underused land into full production over the next three years.

Through APAP and B , the department aims to bring more smallholders into the mainstream as envisaged in the NDP. However, the effective participation of the previously excluded black majority in agriculture and food production will only occur meaningfully, when they have access to land and the means to work it.

An inclusive and scientific process will be used to assess the situation in terms of land capability for different commodities and in different localities, so as to inform land acquisition and allocation for different categories of producers across the country.

Smallholder development

In support of food security, the DAFF has persistently strengthened its support for smallholder producers and continues to do so with the involvement of both internal and external partners.

These producers are supported in various ways, among others, by providing production inputs, training and advisory services, as well as access to finance and credit through MAFISA, CASP and Ilima/Letsema. These interventions have increased their competitive edge towards becoming sustainable producers to provide products to markets. Through the Fetsa Tlala initiative, the department's strategic objective is to use one million ha of land in rural areas for the production of crops.

A web-based platform of the supported small-holder producers is being developed to ensure proper data and updates on all smallholder activities. The implementation of the approved Strategic Plan for Smallholder Support is on track with support funding received from the Department of Trade and Industry's Employment Creation Fund.

With all conditions favourable, the agriculture and agro-processing value chain has the potential to increase the number of smallholders from 171 670 in 2013 to 471 670 in 2019; increase the value added of the sectors from R42.5 billion in 2012 to R48.9 billion in 2019 (or 2% real growth per year); real increase in the value of net exports from an annual average of R5.1 billion in 2012 to R5.8 billion in 2019 (or 2% real growth per year); decrease in the value of diesel, fertiliser and machinery imports from an annual average of R9.6 billion in 2012 to R7.4 billion in 2019 (or 3% real decline per year) and increase the number of jobs in the sector from 660 000 in 2012 to a potential one million jobs by 2030.

The intensification of the Revitalisation of the Agriculture and Agro-Processing Value Chain (RAAVC) will focus on the following crucial areas, namely:

- implementing the Agri-parks — expanding infrastructure support to 44 Agri-hubs and 88 farmer production support units; implementing APAP with special focus on the production of high-value crops. R3.2 billion will be spent on projects and 11 082 jobs created;
- collaborating with private sector partners to advance the Fetsa Tlala and the One Family One Hectare initiatives;
- increasing market access for smallholders through the implementation of programmes such as South African Good Agricultural Practice (SA-GAP) and increasing intra-African trade and other global trade opportunities;

- continuing implementation of the Aquaculture Lab where 40 projects will be registered under Operation Phakisa. The Aquaculture Bill will also provide a legislative framework for the sector development. It is envisaged that aquaculture production will increase to 20 000 tons, with 2 500 direct new jobs and 15 000 jobs in the value chain by 2019, and an additional investment of R500 million.

To ensure mechanisation support to smallholder producers, the National Mechanisation Policy creates a favourable regulatory environment in which Government will continue to make agricultural machinery such as tractors available to smallholder producers to ensure the optimal production of food.

An innovation of which the department is particularly proud is the drought tolerant maize cultivar which was launched by the ARC in 2014. Results indicate that farmers who planted the new maize cultivar experienced on average 50% increased yields when compared to conventional varieties available on the market. The department now has to ensure that sufficient seed is available for farmers.

Public entities, the ARC and the NAMC in particular, have been actively involved in the development of APAP/RAAVC. The research and databases from the ARC's Soil Testing Laboratories was used in its spatial analysis and maps to determine which commodities can be produced in which places.

These maps have been overlaid with the mapping by the Department of Rural Development and Land Reform following their land audit.

The NAMC also supported APAP/RAAVC with economic analysis and their expertise in value chain mapping. The NAMC is also the coordinator for Strategic Infrastructure Project 11, which pertains to agrologistics and rural infrastructure.

The PPECB has committed to expand the number of smallholder farmers with SA-GAP certification. The organisation is also working with the OBP to secure adequate funding to ramp up vaccine production.

The DAFF together with the Eastern Cape Department of Rural Development and Agrarian Reform has invested R40 million of CASP funds since 2006 to establish 300 ha of macadamia nuts in Ncera area.

This is a private, public partnership with landowners, the community and private companies. A total of 180 ha of macadamia nuts have been planted with 80 ha harvested for the export market, creating 110 permanent jobs. This project has turned the tide of unemployment, unskilled communities and poverty. It created a vibrant society with better prospects for the future.

This macadamia development programme will be further expanded in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo, focusing on growing the participation of black producers in this industry.

Fetsa Tlala Food Production Initiative

The Fetsa Tlala Food Production Initiative mobilised smallholder producers to increase production and to access export market opportunities through, for example, the World Food Programme.

Initially, the initiative sought to put one million ha of underutilised agricultural land in communal areas and land reform farms back in production.

The department will accelerate support programmes and continue to forge partnerships with the private sector and other relevant stakeholders to claw back on the upward trajectory for Fetsa Tlala for the coming production seasons.

Work on a Government-led food procurement model, linked to the smallholder producers, is currently under way. This is one of the interventions by Government to sustain the economic viability of this vulnerable agricultural sector.

Through this initiative, Government will reprioritise its procurement on food to create markets for subsistence and smallholder producers in rural, urban and peri-urban areas.

Sector interventions to assist smallholder producers with technical, infrastructure and financial support will continue to be rolled out. These include the CASP and the Ilima/Letsema and LandCare programmes.

Agricultural census

To ensure focused support to smallholder producers, DAFF is working with Stats SA to conduct an agricultural census. The technical team comprising DAFF and Statistics South Africa (Stats SA) officials has been established.

A Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) has been compiled to undertake this intervention. The focus is to approach it in two phases. The first phase to be done in 2018/19 will be focusing on the census to cover commercial agriculture at enterprise level. This area of work will be managed by Stats SA.

The second phase will be done over two financial years of 2019/20 and 2020/21. Stats SA will provide technical support and advice to support DAFF with the development and implementation of the Farmer Register to cover smallholder and subsistence producers.

Female Entrepreneur Awards

The Female Entrepreneur Awards programme is a joint venture between the DAFF, the provinces and key partners in the sector aimed at honouring female farmers, recognising their role in the sector and their entrepreneurial skills in the mainstream agriculture, forestry and fisheries. The major thrust of the programme is to underline the fact that women play a significant role in food security, job creation, economic growth and poverty alleviation.

Hundreds of female farmers compete in various categories, including that of Best Female Worker; Best Subsistence Producer; Top Entrepreneur: Smallholder; Top Entrepreneur: Processing; Top Entrepreneur: Commercial; Top Entrepreneur: Export Markets and two Ministerial Awards for Young and Female Entrepreneurs with disability in the sector.

The overall winner for 2018 was Portia Mngomezulu from Gauteng who also received an award in the Top Entrepreneur: Processing category for her international brand, PortiaM. She produces marula skin care products.

World Food Day

South Africa joins the world in marking World Food Day on 16 October every year to highlight the plight of millions of undernourished people in the world. World Food Day is commemorated annually around the world in remembrance of the founding of the Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO) of the UN in 1945.

In South Africa, October has been declared Food Security Month. The objective of Food Security Month is to create a

platform for heightening public awareness on issues pertaining to food (in) security in the country.

The theme for 2018 was “Our actions are our future. # A Zero Hunger World by 2030 is possible”.

Regional and international cooperation and trade

Regional cooperation

South Africa has strong and mutually dependent economic links with countries in the southern African region through the SADC and the Southern African Customs Union (SACU).

As contribution to the African regional development, the DAFF continues to implement South Africa’s foreign policy objectives, through the facilitation of SADC and African Union engagements and implementation of the South-South Cooperation.

The International Relations Strategy is an instrument put into place to interact with various sector stakeholders at regional and international level in support of producers to access international markets.

Regional trade

South Africa, as a member of the SACU and a signatory of the SADC Treaty, is committed to sharing its objectives with other nations in the region. SACU opened its markets to the countries of the SADC region by implementing its tariff reduction commitments under the SADC Trade Protocol.

The signatories to the SADC Trade Protocol are: Botswana, Lesotho, Madagascar, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, the Seychelles, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. Angola and the Democratic Republic of the Congo are still in the process of acceding to the protocol.

The first objective of the trade protocol is to remove both tariff and non-tariff barriers to trade between SADC countries.

The SADC has set up an electronic reporting system for non-tariff barriers, in which the DAFF is involved as a contact point to receive traders’ complaints.

The South African agriculture products continue to benefit from the Tripartite Free Trade Area agreement of the Southern African Development Community, Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa and the East African Community.

Forestry

The DAFF is the custodian of South Africa’s forest resources, which cover over 38 million ha (about 31.1%) of the country’s land surface area.

The forestry sector employs around 157 500 workers with the forest sub-sector providing about 59 800 direct jobs and 27 500 indirect jobs. Forestry provides livelihood support to 688 000 people of the country’s rural population. The pulp and paper industry provides about 13 200 direct and 10 800 indirect employment opportunities.

Some 20 000 direct workers are employed and 8 000 indirect in sawmilling, and 6 000 in the timber-board and 2 200 in the mining timber industries, while a further 10 000 workers are employed in miscellaneous jobs in forestry.

In terms of land use, the afforested area is about 1.21 million ha or about 1.0% of the total South African land area of 122.3 million ha. The forest sector (forestry and forest products) contributes about 0.90% to the GDP, a considerable decline from the usual average of 1.2% to the GDP in the previous few years. In terms of regional GDP, forestry in KwaZulu-Natal contributes 3.3%; Mpumalanga 3.2%; the Eastern Cape 0.8%; Limpopo 0.7% and Western Cape about 0.2%.

The DAFF contributes to eradicating poverty through the Forestry Livelihoods Programme. Firewood, construction poles, medicinal plants and edible fruit are all critical to the livelihoods of the rural poor.

The department develops human resources through forestry-sector skills development initiatives and promotes employment through commercial forestry activities such as forestation and downstream activities. The integration of forestry programmes into provincial and municipal development plans assist with the UN’ Plant a Million Trees Campaign.

The DAFF is pursuing a target of 10 000 ha of new afforestation a year. However, the target has not been met due to various reasons that include challenges with acquisition of water use licences for afforestation and the need to conduct environmental impact assessments since forestry is classified as a stream flow reduction activity in terms of environmental law. There are new efforts to review the target. However, it has emerged that afforestation on areas issued with planting

licences has been slow due to various reasons.

The focus will remain on encouraging cooperatives, simplifying and streamlining the regulatory environment, training and extension, supporting the implementation of rural credit and offering incentives for new entrants.

In terms of the economic growth and development that forestry offers, the DAFF is working closely with other government structures in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal to fast-track the afforestation licensing process.

In the Eastern Cape, the DAFF and the dti have recently funded the processes of conducting environmental impact assessments – a prerequisite preceding any afforestation activity.

Afforestation is taking place in rural areas where there are few other viable opportunities for job creation and economic activity.

The development of these additional raw material resources will attract greater processing capacity in the form of sawmills, board mills, chipping plants and treatment plants, which will lead to broad economic growth. An additional R500 million a year could be generated from such plantations.

The forestry programme also includes greening and tree-planting projects. The programme prioritises work on integrated fire management and the Working on Fire Programme and fire protection associations registered in terms of the fire law are playing a crucial role in this regard. The department encourages the establishment and registration of fire-protection associations (FPAs), which are community-based organisations established in terms of the National Veld and Forest Fire Act of 1998.

Although forestry contributes a modest 0.6% to the GDP, it supports manufacturing subsectors such as pulp, paper and cellulose manufacture, sawmilling, pole treating, panel and fibre board manufacturing, as well as mining timber, tannin extract (used in leather tanning) and charcoal manufacture.

Of the total land area of 122.3 million ha in South Africa, only 1% or 1.221 million ha is used for commercial forestry.

Mpumalanga has the highest investment in plantations at R19.6 billion (41.9%) followed by KwaZulu-Natal with R16.6 billion (35.6%), the Eastern Cape at R6.4 billion (13.7%), Limpopo R2.1 billion (4.75%) and the Western Cape at R2.0 billion (4.4%).

An analysis of the trends of commercial forestry area planted by tree species and primary use indicates that, firstly, there has been a marked decline in new afforestation since the mid-1990s, secondly there has been a shift away from softwood to hardwood, and thirdly, an increase in plantations for pulpwood purposes as compared to the area for sawlogs and mining timber.

Underlying these trends are various factors, but in particular the tighter regulatory framework governing water usage – forestry is regarded as a “stream flow reduction activity”, therefore, new water use licences are required to expand the area under plantations. Other factors include the removal of large areas within riparian zones to comply with certification and water legislation requirements, the removal of over 50 000 ha in terms of the State’s “exit strategy” and the conversion of plantations to more profitable crops such as macadamia nuts and avocados.

The forest products industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country. Paper and paper board, wood pulp, wood and articles of wood and charcoal were the leading export products and constituted 94% of total forestry products. The forest sector continues to generate substantial net trade surpluses. Production from plantations has been declining in recent years.

While it is clear that the private sector does have good management capacity and has also ushered in efficiencies across the value chain, the State must still play a role to ensure adequate levels of investment in long-rotation sawlog plantations as the State produces sawlogs for the private sector to process. The State’s role to forestry has, however, declined substantially since the partial privatisation of South African Forestry Company Limited (SAFCOL) through the leasing out of most of its plantation assets to the private sector. SAFCOL, through Komatiand Forests (KLF), is nevertheless an important player in the industry and continues to play a role in providing the private sector sawmilling sector with sawlogs.

The DAFF manages approximately 64 000 ha of plantations categorised into Category B and C. These plantations have vast areas suitable for planting but are currently unplanted. The department intends to revitalise the plantations, which will

create jobs for people in the surrounding communities.

South Africa is currently experiencing a shortage of timber and is constrained to meet the national demand for saw log timber. Approximately 30 000 ha of currently fallow areas could be a strategic contribution to timber supply in order to meet needs along the value chain.

Furthermore, 8 351 ha have been replanted within the Jobs Fund/DAFF Rehabilitation Programme.

The forestry sector offers long-term investment opportunities for rural economic development. Increased production and productivity in prioritised areas will be ensured by sustainable forest management through the replanting of 1 725 hectares in temporary unplanted areas; certification of one plantation for the Forestry Stewardship Council; and the implementation of the Agro-forestry Strategy.

Regarding integrated fire management, the DAFF has facilitated the registration of Fire Protection Associations (FPAs) in high-risk areas, and has also embarked on the process of the consolidation of non-viable FPAs and alignment of FPAs with municipal boundaries to ensure the effective utilisation of limited resources.

Sustainable management of natural resources, such as land, soil, water and climate systems is critical for the sustainable use of resources and food security. To address the loss of prime agricultural land to other sectors, the department has developed and formulated the Preservation and Development of Agricultural Land Framework.

Legislation

The Forestry and Natural Resources Management Branch of the DAFF is responsible for the administration of the National Forests Act of 2008, as amended. The Act has been amended twice in 2001 and 2005, and work is currently being done on the third amendment.

The main objective of the National Forests Act of 2008 is to promote the sustainable management and development of forests and to provide protection for certain forests and trees. This protection is provided through the protection of all natural forests (Section 7 (1), the protection of all trees declared to be protected in terms of section 12(1) of the Act, and the regulation

of certain activities in a proclaimed State forest (Section 23(1)(a) – (k)). The Act sets out rules for protecting indigenous forests, and ensures that the public has reasonable access to state-forest land for recreational, cultural, spiritual and educational purposes

There are at the moment 47 protected tree species in terms of the National Forests Act of 1998. Information on these trees can be found on the website www.daff.gov.za/ under Forestry. In terms of the Act these trees may not be cut, destroyed, damaged or removed. Neither may the tree or their products be collected, removed, exported or donated, unless a licence has been granted by the DAFF. The National Forests Act of 2008 also protects live trees occurring in natural forests.

The National Veld and Forest Fire Act of 1998 is the primary legislation regulating veldfire management in the country.

The purpose of the Act is to prevent and combat veld, forest and mountain fires. The legislation provides a variety of institutions, methods and practices for achieving the purpose. The Act places an individual duty on every landowner where there is a risk of fire to take certain minimum precautions to prevent and combat fires. It also introduces the concept of voluntary FPAs, which may be formed by landowners for veldfire management in a specific area. The Act provides for FPAs for two reasons:

- Veldfires often become emergencies because they threaten life and assets on the property where they have started, or when they spread, or threaten to spread, beyond the boundaries of any one property,
- Veldfires require cooperation to manage the conditions that determine their occurrence, to prevent and control veldfires, and to use controlled burning for environmental and other purposes.

Veldfires are a problem because they pose a risk to social, economic and environmental assets. Over time South Africa has become more and more vulnerable to this risk. This is because urban and peri-urban human settlements steadily expand, exposing lives and homes to fires in the neighbouring veld, and simultaneously increasing the chance of veldfires being started. As the country’s rural areas develop, especially through plantation forests and other plantations such as sugarcane,

more economic assets have been created that are vulnerable to losses in fires. And as the people become more urbanised, only a few understand veldfires, thereby increasing chances of them starting fires or becoming victims.

Without preventive measures, veldfires will continue to burn for as long as the weather is favourable and there is vegetation to burn. To address the challenge, the country needs to develop clear policies and plans on individual responsibility as well as cooperative and co-ordinated roles and responsibilities.

Role players

National Forest Advisory Council (NFAC)

The function of the NFAC is to advise the Minister on any matter related to forestry in South Africa. The functions of the Committee on Sustainable Forest Management (CSFM) are to advise:

- the council, the department, and the Minister on all aspects of sustainable forest management in the country
- the department and the Minister on the administration of criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management
- the department on convening forum for interested persons to participate in the formulation of criteria, indicators and standards.

The functions of the NFAC are to advise the Minister on promoting the granting and exercise of access to forests; promoting education on the sustainable management and use of forests, and the use of the National Forest Recreation and Access Trust funds.

South African Forestry Company Limited

SAFCOL is government's forestry company, conducting timber harvesting, timber processing and related activities, both domestically and internationally.

Through its operations, it employs about 5 000 people through direct and indirect employment and by extension, are responsible for about 20 000 lives in communities adjacent to its operations.

It subscribes to the Forest Sector Charter and plays a leading role in transformation within the industry. With the focus on

communities adjacent to its plantations and specifically the youth in those communities, it makes a difference in the physical circumstances and networking in the communities.

The structured approach of community partnerships was strengthened, with the focus on implementing needs-driven development and making a positive impact in community members' lives.

SAFCOL sponsors a Forestry Chair at the University of Pretoria, which is an opportunity for students who wish to further their studies in forestry-related fields.

Forestry South Africa (FSA)

FSA was formed in 2002 through the amalgamation of the erstwhile Forestry Owners Association and the South African Timber Growers Association.

FSA represents the interests of its members in particular and the promotion and wellbeing of the South African commercial forestry industry in general. Although voluntary in its nature, FSA's membership includes all 11 corporate timber companies operating in South Africa, including their subsidiaries, 1 100 commercial timber farmers and over 20 000 small-scale black timber growers. This membership represents over 90% of the industry as a whole and virtually all the private sector involved in the industry. Due to this representivity, FSA is viewed by both government and the private sector as the body which represents the South African Forestry Industry.

FSA is involved in a host of areas such as research, education and training, water and environmental affairs, forest protection, bio-energy, business development and transport.

Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)

The FTFA is the sub-Saharan African partner of Global ReLeaf, an international greening organisation.

The FTFA's mission is to contribute to healthier living, especially in disadvantaged communities, through environmental awareness and greening programmes. The FTFA was started in 1990 to address sustainable development through greening, climate change action, sustainable natural resource management and food-security programmes.

The FTFA works in partnership with government, the private

and public sectors and civil society. Its goal is to provide trees to as many underserved communities as possible, with the help of sponsors and certificate programmes.

The FTFA; the departments of water affairs and of agriculture, forestry and fisheries; and the Institute of Environment and Recreation Management, manage the Urban Greening Fund. It is a collective fund that supports partnerships aimed at sustainable development through tree planting, parks, food-gardening projects and environmental education.

Organisations, companies and individuals can contribute to the fund to help disadvantaged South Africans create a greener, healthier and more secure life.

Research and training

South Africa has world-class forestry research infrastructure and personnel, with almost 2% of the forestry industry's turnover (private and public sectors) devoted to research. The forest research function within the department has been coordinating a number of research projects focusing on sustainable management of forest resources. These include:

- the monitoring and evaluation of bark-harvesting techniques used for two indigenous tree species in the Letaba State Forest
- sustainable harvesting of plants used for medicinal purposes
- the sustainable use of monkey rope (*Secamone alpini*) by local subsistence farmers
- ex situ and in situ conservation of the critically endangered *Protea roupelliae* sbsp. *hamiltonii*
- conservation of the co-occurring endangered *Leucospermum gerrardii* within the Dr Hamilton Nature Reserve.

The major institutes servicing the research needs of the industry are the Institute of Commercial Forestry Research in Pietermaritzburg, the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnology Institute, and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research in Pretoria. The South African National Biodiversity Institute also plays an important role, in terms of species protection.

The faculties of agricultural and forestry sciences at the universities of Stellenbosch, KwaZulu-Natal and Venda offer forestry degrees. The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (George Saasveld Campus) offers diplomas and limited degree courses in forestry disciplines.

The Natal University of Technology offers a diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology, and the Fort Cox College of Agriculture and Forestry offers a diploma in Social Forestry.

Skills training is provided by a number of industry-sponsored and in-house training centres. Industry-sponsored bursaries are available, as are company-sponsored bursaries for study at these institutions.

The Fibre Processing and Manufacturing (FPM) Sector Education and Training Authority (SETA) is responsible for ensuring that the training undertaken by the industry meets certain quality standards.

The department, together with the FPM SETA, offers study bursaries in forestry-related fields.

Programmes and initiatives

Participative forestry

The department supports the establishment of community projects through regional forestry staff. An estimated R2 million has already been spent from the Community Facilitation Fund to support the establishment of projects on the ground. Projects include the establishment of medicinal plant nurseries, in partnership with various stakeholders, and beekeeping, in partnership with the ARC.

In addition to producing honey, beekeepers play a critical role in agriculture, contributing to crop pollination and the development of products worth billions of rand.

The honey industry in South Africa has an average annual turnover of R3.2 billion and produces some 2 000 t a year. Government's investment in KwaZulu-Natal aims to increase national production to 100 000 t and employ over 100 000 people.

National Arbor Month

South Africa celebrates Arbor Month in September every year. Arbor Week is commemorated in the first week of September annually. The DAFF, as the custodian of forestry in South Africa, is responsible for the campaign.

Arbor Month 2018 was celebrated under the theme "Forests and Sustainable Cities". This was the first time that the country celebrated the campaign as Arbor Month.

For Arbor Week 2018, once again, trees were planted using trained community-based educators to ensure that departmental programmes have economic spin-offs for the communities.

Arbor Month is an opportune time to urge South Africans to plant indigenous trees as a practical and symbolic gesture of sustainable environmental management.

The primary purpose of the campaign is to spread and herald the importance of protection, conservation and preservation of the country's green heritage, namely forests, indigenous trees and related green resources. The secondary aim is to educate, change attitudes and modify the general behaviour of the South African public in a way and a manner they perceive and relate to the green heritage.

Greening refers to an integrated approach to the planting, care and management of all vegetation in urban and rural areas, to secure multiple benefits for communities.

Greening in the South African context takes place in towns, townships and informal settlements, specifically because in the past the latter mentioned areas were disadvantaged in terms of planning for parks as well as tree planting in streets and open spaces.

To promote greening, especially the planting of indigenous trees that are becoming scarce, the concept of the trees of the year was born some years ago. Two trees are selected – a rare and a common species. The common tree of the year for 2019 is *Sclerocarya birrea* (marula) and the rare tree of the year is *Philenoptera violacea* (Apple-leaf).

Arbor City Awards

The National Arbor City Awards are greening competitions that take place in line with the national greening strategy. It is a partnership programme between the DAFF, Total South Africa and the Institute for Environment and Recreation Management (IERM). The competition is sponsored by Total South Africa.

The purpose of the competition is to encourage municipalities to green their areas of jurisdiction and promote environmental conservation and development, thereby securing a healthy living environment for residents in all settlement areas. It provides incentives and rewards to municipalities that are doing

their best in terms of greening and landscape management, especially in townships and new settlement areas.

The competition further encourages the municipalities to create awareness around the importance of green landscapes and provide a platform for the diagnosis of challenges facing municipalities in the area of greening.

There are three categories – metropolitan municipalities, local municipalities and rural-based municipalities. For each category the winner receives prize money to promote greening in their area.

Champion Tree Project

The purpose of the Champion Tree Project is to identify and protect trees that are of national importance and worthy of special protection, due to their remarkable size, age, aesthetic, cultural, historic or tourism value. Similar projects have been established in several other countries, but this is the first of its kind in Africa.

Nomination forms with guidelines for the nomination process are available from the DAFF.

Since the start of the project in 2003, 86 trees or groups of trees have been declared by the department as champion trees, based on criteria such as size, age and historical value. These trees are all protected under the National Forests Act of 1998. They include the Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route, the post office milkwood tree of Mossel Bay, the Sagole baobab in Limpopo and camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate in the Western Cape three centuries ago. The Sagole baobab has the second biggest trunk in the world, while a stand of saligna gum trees planted in 1906 near Tzaneen in Limpopo are the tallest trees in Africa.

A few champion trees have died since the launch of the project, including the Platland Baobab in Limpopo, which collapsed in 2017. In Cape Town, the Tokai Arboretum was damaged by fire, and extensive work had to be undertaken by arborists to fell dead trees and prune or treat others.

The Adopt a Champion Tree project initiated by Aurecon assisted with the development of a visitor's site to a champion tree in the Eastern Cape, and the treatment of a diseased champion oak tree in Gauteng. Through the DAFF-Aurecon

partnership, a number of information boards have been erected, and launch events have been held at some newly proclaimed trees, such as the Whisper Tree in Albertinia, Western Cape.

Some exciting new discoveries of remarkable trees have been made. The latest list of proposed champion trees, published for comment before final declaration, includes a baobab near Tshipise in Limpopo which appears to have the third thickest trunk in the world.

The oldest planted tree in South Africa is a saffron pear, brought from the Netherlands and planted in the Dutch East India Company's gardens in Cape Town more than three centuries ago, supposedly by Jan van Riebeeck. Historic trees include a poplar tree, which served as a landmark for refugees during the apartheid regime who found a safe haven in the Johannesburg house of Ruth Fischer, the daughter of Bram Fischer, who was a founding member of the South African Communist Party.

In 2015 a new record-breaking tree was discovered in an old tree lane in the Boschendal wine estate. This karri gum tree of 50.4 m tall has a massive crown and a trunk circumference of over 8 m, and is now officially the largest tree in South Africa.

A group of international and local tree climbers has visited and climbed the champion trees around the country, contributing to more accurate height measurements, and installing nesting boxes for the rare Cape parrot in some of the large champion trees that occur in natural forests.

All the trees were also visited by a professional photographer, to create a proper photographic record of the trees.

Million Trees Programme

The Million Trees Programme was launched in 2007 as part of a UN greening initiative to encourage countries worldwide to plant more trees. Its purpose is to ensure that at least one million trees, including fruit trees and indigenous ornamental shade trees, are planted every year in various member states of the United Nations.

In South Africa, the Million Trees Programme is a partnership between the three spheres of government, non-governmental and community-based organisations, schools and the corporate sector.

It is part of the South African contribution to the UN Environment Programme "Plant for the Planet: Billion Tree Campaign", where communities, industry, civil society organisations and governments are encouraged to plant at least one billion trees worldwide.

Resources

Sustainable forest management

Forest products contribute about R34.5 billion to the economy – about 0.6% of the GDP. Export value increased by 13%, from R26 to R29 billion. This is underpinned by 1.2 million hectares of well-developed plantation forestry.

The forestry industry is at continuous risks from fire, pests, diseases and drought. Forestry has also been impacted negatively by drought. This calls for more efficient usage of water. A report by the Western Cape Department of Agriculture with the Bureau for Food and Agricultural Policy estimates that the impact of the drought equates to an average production decline of about 20%.

In an effort to address the issue of competing land use between agriculture and forestry, the department developed a strategy on agro-forestry. Agro-forestry is a practice that integrates forestry and agriculture on the same piece of land with social, economic and environmental benefits. This strategy will ensure household food security and increase the country's fibre.

Forestry is one of the sectors that have a huge potential for job creation while ensuring the sustainable use of natural resources. Through the EPWP in the environment and culture sectors, the department has managed to create 720 temporary and 211 permanent jobs. The interventions are intended to enhance the resilience of agricultural and food production systems; contribute to the reduction of the greenhouse gas emissions; intensify agricultural and forestry production while safeguarding food security and creating job opportunities.

There are three categories of forests in South Africa, namely indigenous forests, woodlands and plantation forests. Natural indigenous forests cover approximately half a million ha of land in total, plantation forestry covers less than 1.3 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover approximately 38 million ha.

Forestry activities in indigenous forests and woodlands are not limited to the protection of the resource as a natural heritage, but include its development, use and management, as well as the management and processing of non-timber forest products.

Plantation forestry practices include, among other things, the establishment of vast areas of land with exotic tree species that are harvested and processed into pulp for the paper and packaging industries; sawn timber for the production of structural and industrial timber used in the construction industry; poles for telephone and electricity supply; and mining timber for use as underground support structures in primarily the gold and platinum mining sectors. The balance of other timber produced is used for a variety of products such as charcoal and match manufacture.

Although large forestry companies do not own all the certified forests, having their own specialist environmental departments has helped the rapid expansion of certification, as they ensure that land is managed according to their own stringent environmental codes of practice. Being FSC certified means that a forest, or supply chain, is managed responsibly and complies with environmental, social, and economic standards.

There has been an increase in the number of non-corporate growers who have become certified. This may be attributed to factors such as the FSC's acceptance of group-certification schemes and the availability of local FSC auditors, both of which have reduced the cost of certification considerably.

The introduction of small, low-intensity managed forest audits enables small and community forestry schemes to be FSC-certified.

Indigenous forests

Only about 0.5% of South Africa's total land area is covered by natural forests. About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species, representing some 530 000 ha of dense growth, grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateaux in isolated valleys and ravines.

A number of these natural forest regions, such as the Tsitsikamma National Park, are important tourist attractions.

The large Afro-temperate forests of the southern Cape, although distributed close to the coast, are aligned with the inland forest types of the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. This is because the southerly temperate latitudes compensate for the altitude of inland forests.

Almost half of all natural forests in South Africa are found on private property or land under communal tenure. A detailed inventory of natural forests helps government to monitor changes in forest areas.

Although the country's low natural forest coverage has led to the development of the commercial forestry sector over the last 100 years, natural forests have continued playing a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities. The use of natural forests as sources of building material, fuel wood, food and medicine is increasing, with an estimated 80% of South Africa's population still using medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests.

The forest-type classification for natural forests represents 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System guides the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Systematic timber harvesting occurs in certain areas of southern Cape forests and on a smaller scale, in the Amathole forests in the Eastern Cape. This sustainable harvesting system concentrates on the removal of small quantities of senile trees dying off within the forest. On average, 3 750 m³ of round logs are harvested annually (150 m³ of stinkwood, 750 m³ of yellowwood, 2 500 m³ of Australian blackwood and 350 m³ of other species).

The seven-week fern (*Rumohra adiantiformis*), harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests, is another valuable product of indigenous forests. The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September, when sales have been known to exceed 420 000 bunches.

Woodlands

The woodlands, also known as savannahs, constitute a forest resource of major importance in South Africa. It is the most accessible forest resource for poor communities and contributes in the region of R2 000 to R5 000 to poor households

annually. Natural forests cover less than one million ha of land in total, plantation forestry covers less than 1.3 million ha and the woodlands collectively cover between 29 million and 46 million ha.

The cover includes extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Rich biodiversity is found in savannah woodland comprising 5 900 plants, 540 bird species and 175 mammals.

These include iconic species such as the Big Five group of mammals that are important to the tourism industry. Several protected tree species of the savannah, such as camel thorn and leadwood, contribute substantially to the lucrative braai wood market, and guidelines have been set for licensing processes to assist with the control of their use.

Kathu Forest in the Northern Cape is the first woodland area to be declared protected woodland under the National Forests Act of 1998.

In the past, this resource was not really recognised as a forestry responsibility, except where woodland occurred on state-forest land in conservation areas. However, the National Forestry Action Programme of 1997 identified woodland management as a key area of operation for forestry.

The New Forests Act of 1998 also includes woodland in its definition of forests and mandates monitoring and reporting on the state of the woodlands. This legislation protects woodlands on private and communal land, as well as in state forests, while promoting sustainable use.

Savannah woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms. They form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual marula fruit (*Sclerocarya birrea*) harvest, for example, is worth some R1.1 billion a year to rural communities.

There are 87 savannah woodland types, and although the biome as a whole is fairly well protected in formal and private

reserves, many underprotected savannah types have been identified.

Another woodland type is the Albany thicket biome, characterised by dense growth of woody and succulent plant species. There are 13 thicket types, which together cover about three million ha. Extensive spekboom plantings are underway in the Eastern Cape to restore the carrying capacity of degraded thicket areas, and to capitalise on the high carbon sequestration rates of this species as a climate change offset.

Commercial forests

Commercial forest plantations predominantly meet South Africa's demand for wood. During the 1930s, government started extensive commercial plantations to make South Africa self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities.

Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle. South Africa's plantation forests cover about 1% of the combined cultivated (arable) and grazing land.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising sustainable forest management and is a world leader in forest certification. Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all plantation and processing activities.

The Institute for Commercial Forestry Research (ICFR) completed its role in developing the National Forest Protection Strategy for the DAFF, a project funded by the FAO of the UN.

Another development which will assist in enhancing forest protection is the memorandum of understanding, formalising FSA's support and funding for these activities at the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnical Institute, which has been entered into with the University of Pretoria.

The FAO and DAFF approved the National Forest Protection Strategy, which includes forest-fire related matters. Once fully implemented, the strategy is expected to provide the industry with additional resources and enhance the coordination of responses to combat forest fires.

Plantation yields

South Africa's intensively managed commercial forestry plantations are recognised as some of the most productive in the world. Consequently, from a limited geographic footprint of 1.2 million ha, the industry can produce, on a sustainable and annual basis, between 15 and 18 million tons of timber a year.

Sappi Forests supplies over 70% of the wood requirements of Sappi Southern Africa from both its own and committed commercial timber plantations covering 492 000 ha. This equates to approximately 30 Mt of standing timber.

The Lomati Sawmill produces 102 000 m³ per year of sawn timber for the construction and furniture manufacturing industry.

All wood grown on Sappi-owned land and a large proportion grown on plantations managed by the company, is FSC certified.

Approximately 150 000 ha of land is set aside and maintained by Sappi Forests to conserve the natural habitat and biodiversity found there, including indigenous forests and wetlands.

The timber is used in wood products such as roof trusses. It is also pulped, with the wood fibre used for newspapers, boxes, paper bags and paper.

According to the latest production figures, pulpwood production at 11,8 Mt was the highest, representing 66,1% of total production. Sawlog production was 4,8 Mt (26,1% of total). Mining-timber production of 557 000 tons and other products such as poles and charcoal at 711 600 tons made up the balance.

Socio-economic reform and growth

The forestry vision states that forests are managed for people and that there is a need to create an enabling environment for economic and social development through sustainable forestry, especially at local level.

Strategies to achieve this vision include forestry enterprise development, aimed at creating opportunities for people to use forests, including indigenous forests, woodlands and plantations, and forest-based resources for economic growth, income-generation and job creation.

The forestry enterprise development concept is central to government's pro-poor agenda and also a key component of Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) in the forestry sector.

BBBEE Charter

The BBBEE Charter process is one of many government strategies aimed at transforming the economy. The formulation and implementation of BEE programmes at different levels and in different sectors of the economy include partnerships between government and the private sector, including trade unions and community-based organisations.

The BBBEE Charter for the forestry sector will be instrumental in achieving objectives such as increasing the number of black people, particularly women, who own, manage and control enterprises and productive assets; and facilitating ownership and management of enterprise and productive assets by communities, workers, cooperatives and other collective enterprises.

Under the charter, Government aims to process about 15 000 ha of water-use licence applications a year over 10 years to obtain a net increase in afforested land of about 10 000 ha a year or 100 000 ha over the entire period.

Community forestry

Community forestry is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to benefit local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities, and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots, and woodland being managed by communities and individuals.

Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest enterprise development.

Participatory forest management of the DAFF is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the sustainable management of South African forests.

Elements of participatory forest management were initially developed for indigenous state forests.

However, the aim is to use participatory forest management as an approach to managing all forest types, where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands) and where different types of ownership and management (State, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

Fisheries

The DAFF is tasked with managing the development and sustainable use of marine and coastal resources; maximising the economic potential of the fisheries sector; and protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems.

The South African coastline covers more than 3 000 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. These shores are particularly rich in biodiversity, with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals recorded.

The productive waters of the West Coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities.

Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The main challenge in fisheries is to create a balance between maximising the social and economic potential of the fisheries industry, protecting the integrity and quality of the country's marine and coastal ecosystems, and addressing transformation in the sector.

In line with international trends, the department recognises fisheries as an economic activity rather than a purely environmental or biodiversity matter.

Government has expanded the mandate for fisheries management by adding fresh-water and inland fisheries, as well as aquaculture, to the department's existing responsibilities.

The department will gradually establish offices of the fisheries branch in coastal, as well as inland provinces. These are economic decisions, which contribute to employment creation and poverty alleviation.

The fisheries sector contributes roughly 0.1% to the GDP, which is small even by the standards of agriculture. However, it is more important for economic development in the Western Cape where 11 of the 13 proclaimed fishing harbours are situated. These contribute more the 5% to Gross Provincial Domestic Product.

The total output is estimated at 600 000 t worth about R6 billion, depending on the pelagic catch of pilchards and anchovy, which could be as much as 600 000 t.

It is estimated that the direct employment in the industry constitutes approximately 27 000 jobs (16 000 in the primary sector and 11 000 in the secondary and tertiary sectors), while an additional 81 000 people are indirectly (net building, bait preparing, among others.) employed in industries that are at least partially dependent on the fishing sector (figures based on industry estimates and the Total Allowable Catch and Total Allowable Effort, calculated as a function of tonnage).

Fisheries output is determined by catch volumes, which in turn depends on the health and management of fish stocks, varying according to ecological changes and subjected to overexploitation through illegal, unreported and unregulated fishing activities.

Inshore species are especially vulnerable to stock depletion, as they are easily accessed, especially illegally. According to one study, 68% of commercial line fish stocks have collapsed and another 11% are overexploited.

The DAFF seeks to prevent overexploitation by means of assigning Total Allowable Catch and Total Allowable Effort per species, which are adjusted regularly depending on the estimated state of the resource. The DAFF has also sought to promote transformation in the sector through inclusion of small-scale fishing communities. The Marine Living Resources Amendment Act of 2014 grant small-scale fishing communities better access to fishing rights and resources.

The small-scale fishing sector was expected to directly benefit approximately 30 000 people from coastal communities and is expected to transform the entire fishing industry. This sector is designed to address food security needs within the local community, and allow fishers to derive maximum benefit through value-adding of products and accessing markets.

The effective management of the existing harbours and proclamation of additional new harbours support resource management.

Although wild catch fisheries appear unlikely to expand beyond their present levels, aquaculture is becoming more important as a substitute for wild capture fisheries.

South Africa, under the leadership of DAFF, has acceded to the Indian Ocean Tuna Commission and the Commission for the Conservation of Southern Bluefin Tuna, thereby allowing the country greater influence in negotiating for increased tuna quota allocations and access.

The associated benefits has resulted in the immediate increase in the allocation of Southern Bluefin Tuna from 150 t to 450 t until 2020.

Working for Fisheries Programme

The Working for Fisheries Programme serves to render a programme management support function to the DAFF Branch Fisheries. The main objective of the programme is to contribute towards poverty alleviation through interventions that are public-driven, while advancing the mandates of the DAFF and the EPWP's environment and culture sector to provide work opportunities and income support to poor and unemployed people.

The programme, through the implementation of projects, aims to contribute towards the alleviation of poverty, while empowering beneficiaries to participate in the mainstream fishing economy in a manner that aligns the programme and projects to government outcomes.

The programme focuses on supporting three key directorates within the department in terms of both mandate and the projects funded. These directorates are:

- Aquaculture and Economic Development
- Monitoring, Control and Surveillance
- Marine Resource Management.

Small-scale fisheries sector

To establish the small scale fisheries sector, the DAFF conducts a series of training programmes with small scale fisheries cooperatives.

Following the completion of the cooperative training programme, the official registration of the cooperatives will be finalised and rights allocated.

The training programme includes understanding what a cooperative model is, how to run and manage cooperatives successfully and how to register cooperatives among others.

The sector is aimed at redressing the inequality suffered by coastal fishing communities which, as a result of unintended consequences, have remained marginalised through previous rights allocation systems. Furthermore, the establishment of the small-scale sector seeks to empower small-scale fishers to contribute meaningfully to the national GDP and to play a meaningful role in food security and job creation.

This process is informed by the Marine Living Resources Act of 1998 and the regulations thereof which was amended to legally recognise small-scale fishers who have been living in coastal communities and depending on fishing and its related activities as a source of livelihood.

The small-scale fisheries regulations, along with the Marine Living Resources Amendment Act of 2014 provide the legal mechanism for the implementation of the small-scale fisheries policy. These reforms give legal recognition to small-scale fishers and will promote the transformation of the subsector to assist fishing communities living along the coastal areas in creating sustainable livelihoods, generating income and creating jobs.

The ABALOB app is an empowerment tool for small-scale fishers which they can use to engage in a range of activities that enable them to participate fully, equitably and effectively in the fishing value chain. This initiative consists of a series of mobile applications, allowing fishers to log their catch, communicate within the community.

ABALOB has pilot sites in five fishing communities in the Western Cape, with over 200 fishers participating. Currently, there are over 120 top restaurants sourcing fish directly from small-scale fishers through the ABALOB MARKETPLACE app. This cut out middlemen and significantly increased a fairer price for fish sold by small-scale fishers.

The ABALOB app initiative is directly in line with the current establishment of the small-scale fisheries sector with about 11 000 small-scale fishers from the four coastal provinces of our country.

Industry and products

South Africa is among the global fishing nations that have identified the challenges within their fishing industry. With 22

commercial fisheries sectors and new fisheries being explored and experimented with, South Africa has two fisheries sector components.

Wild capture fisheries include three distinct components, namely commercial, recreational and subsistence fisheries, each of which requires specific research and management interventions.

The aquaculture (fish farming) sector is considered underdeveloped and as a result, has been prioritised, owing to declining wild stocks.

Legislation and policies

The Small-Scale Fisheries Policy seeks to address imbalances of the past and ensure that small-scale fishers are accommodated and properly managed. For the first time, fishing rights can be allocated on a group, rather than an individual. The policy further aims to support investment in community entities to take joint responsibility for sustainably managing the fisheries resources and to address the depletion of critical fisheries stocks.

Resource management

The department increased its capacity to combat illegal, unregulated and unreported fishing, and launched an anti-poaching project in the Western Cape, funded through the WfFP.

This enabled the department to deploy 60 military veterans in the Overberg region to serve as the “eyes and ears” of government.

The fishing sector comprises large-scale operators and small-scale and recreational fishers.

According to a recent UN report, more than two-thirds of the world's fisheries have been overfished or are fully harvested, and more than one third is in a state of decline, owing to the loss of fish habitats, soaring pollution levels in oceans and rivers and climate change.

According to the report, abalone stocks remain in a depleted to heavily depleted state as the resources continue to decline, due to increasing levels of poaching and ecological factors.

Meanwhile, line fish resources range from heavily depleted to optimal states, depending on species.

There are, however, signs of a positive response by some species to the emergency management measures implemented in 2000.

Given the low population sizes of many line fish species, however, present management measures are expected to assist in allowing stock to increase.

Under the operational management procedure, the West Coast rock lobster is showing signs of recovery.

Deep-water hake remains depleted. However, its status is improving, whereas shallow-water hake is considered optimal to abundant.

The implementation of precautionary management approaches to hake fisheries in recent years has resulted in a faster than anticipated recovery of deep-water hake.

Harders, which are the main target of the beach-seine and gillnet fisheries, remain in a depleted to heavily depleted state.

Environmental anomalies and illegal netting have affected the recruitment of the species in recent years.

The abundance of Agulhas sole has remained relatively constant over the past 15 years, while Cape horse mackerel numbers have grown in recent years, due to good recruitment, and the stock is considered to be in an optimal state.

The anchovy stock is at the lowest level observed in the past 15 years, but sardine and round herring stocks continue to increase.

In South Africa, the fisheries sector is worth around R6 billion a year and directly employs some 27 000 people in the commercial sector. Thousands more and their families depend on these resources for food and the basic needs of life.

The total allowable catch apportioned for the subsistence (small-scale/interim relief) subsector, is set at 276 t (138 kg per fisher).

The apportionment for the recreational fishing subsector remains unchanged at four West Coast rock lobsters per person per day for the duration of the fishing season.

The size restriction remains at 80 mm carapace length and recreational fishing permits will only be issued to persons above the age of 12 years. Any West Coast rock lobster caught, collected or transported shall be kept in a whole state.

West Coast rock lobster caught with a recreational permit may not be sold.

Recreational West Coast rock lobster permits are obtainable at the Post Office, at a cost of R94 per permit and are valid for the entire recreational fishing season.

The International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas (ICCAT) is responsible for the management of tuna and tuna-like species in the Atlantic Ocean and Mediterranean Sea.

South Africa's strategic intent with participating in the ICCAT is to ensure long-term fishing access in the Atlantic Ocean for South African fishing companies in the tuna pole fisheries and the developing large pelagic fisheries.

Access to the Atlantic Ocean is essential for encouraging future investment in the tuna and swordfish fisheries, to create the enabling environment for these fisheries to develop.

The ICCAT will benefit South Africa with management activities, including collating fisheries data, guiding research, conducting stock assessments, establishing management and conservation measures and issuing country quotas.

Aquaculture

Aquaculture incorporates the breeding, trading or rearing of aquatic organisms in a controlled or selected aquatic environment for recreational, commercial or subsistence purposes. It is divided into fresh-water culture and mariculture.

Species farmed in the latter include dusky kob, abalone, Pacific oysters, Mediterranean mussels and black mussels, among others. According to the National Aquaculture Strategic Framework, the sector is relatively small and the government wants to create a climate in which it can grow.

Special attention will be paid to freshwater aquaculture, as it has shown growth potential.

Government will also boost investments in research, development technology, transfer and extension, as well as education and training programmes in aquaculture.

The Agriculture Development Enhancement Programme, which offers cost-sharing grants of R40 million per company, aims to create more jobs in the sector. The grants will be made available for machinery, equipment, infrastructure, commercial vehicles and work boats, in pursuit of boosting competition in the industry.

Abalone fishing is severely restricted in South African waters, however, poaching is rife, as it is a lucrative trade.

Poaching has caused the decline in abalone numbers over the years. The species is highly coveted and fetches high prices, especially in the Far East.

The National Aquaculture Policy Framework was developed against the backdrop of a global aquaculture sector that has seen an increased demand for fishery products.

The policy provides a unified framework for the establishment and development of an industry that contributes towards sustainable job creation and increased investment.

In order to create an enabling legislative environment to promote sustainable aquaculture sector growth, the first dedicated aquaculture legislation, the Aquaculture Development Bill, was developed to address the current fragmented regulations and red tape. The Bill has gone through all relevant processes and public participation and is now with Parliament.

The department has also commenced with the process of developing a 'National Freshwater (Inland) Wild Capture Fisheries' policy which seeks to create an efficient regulatory regime for the inland fisheries sector that will promote sustainable growth and transformation of the sector.

In South Africa, marine and freshwater aquaculture presents a good opportunity to diversify fish production to satisfy local demand; contribute to food security, job creation, economic development and rural development; and improve export opportunities.

Aquaculture has been given a boost through its inclusion in the Oceans Economy Operation Phakisa. While the marine-based "mariculture" part of aquaculture has been around for some years, focusing on species such as abalone, oysters and mussels, freshwater aquaculture is experiencing a rapid expansion, owing in part to Government's multipronged aquaculture promotion campaign.

Globally, wild fish stocks have been dwindling, growing at a modest 1% per annum, while aquaculture has grown by 7% and accounts for 44% of the global fish production. Therefore, aquaculture is seen as a quick win for growing the oceans economy.

While the marine-based "mariculture" part of aquaculture has been around for some years, focusing on species such as abalone, oysters and mussels, freshwater aquaculture is experiencing a rapid expansion, owing in part to Government's multipronged aquaculture promotion campaign.

Aquaculture has been included in the Oceans Economy Operation Phakisa. The number of Operation Phakisa projects has increased from 24 to 35. These projects have committed to increase production in the sector from 5 000 to 25 000 t, create over 3 000 additional jobs and increase GDP contribution by over R1 billion per annum.

The aquaculture sector has unlocked investments of more than R400 million across 10 aquaculture farms, which are already in production. The community in Hamburg in the Eastern Cape has seen its first harvest of dusky kob and the Siyazama Aquaculture Cooperative in Hamburg sold its first harvest of dusky kob to the Cape Town Fish Market at the V&A Waterfront.

In the Eastern Cape and Northern Cape, the department is looking at establishing multispecies hatcheries that will support community based aquaculture farms, stock enhancement and skills development.

The hatcheries will supply seed and fingerlings and provide training for the local community. To promote transformation of the sector and to ensure support for small scale and rural aquaculture enterprises, DAFF is developing a small scale aquaculture model and transformation strategy. To create an enabling environment, DAFF is implementing Aquaculture Development Zones.

Since the Gariep Aquaculture Training Centre was officially handed over to South Africa in June 2017, 236 potential farmers and government officials were trained and the aim is to broaden it to SADC countries.

Recreational fishing

While the illegal harvesting of abalone poses the greatest threat to management objectives, the DAFF will continue to work with all stakeholders in the abalone sector and continue to strengthen partnerships with other law-enforcement agencies and communities to ensure that the country grows and protects its resources.

South Africa's extensive coastline spanning two oceans and its numerous dams, lakes, rivers and streams, make the country a recreational fisher's paradise. However, recreational fishing may only be undertaken with a valid permit, and is limited to certain times of the fishing season.

To reduce user conflicts between commercial and recreational fishing, and to, protect stocks during breeding periods, certain areas have been declared closed areas.

Recreational fishers are also subject to bag limits of fish on a per-day basis.

Annual recreational fishing licences in all industries total about 300 000, with income generated from these licences amounting to R18 million. The actual annual catch is about 17 000 t of high-value species.

World Fisheries Day

South Africa celebrates World Fisheries Day every year on 21 November with fishing communities throughout the world.

The World Fisheries Day helps in highlighting the critical importance to human lives, of water and the lives it sustains, both in and out of water.

World Soil Day

World Soil Day is observed and celebrated every year on 5 December by all UN member states, organisations of the UN system and other international and regional organisations, civil society, non-governmental organisations and individuals to emphasise the importance of soil.



South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

Arts and Culture

South Africa's arts and culture are as varied as one might expect from such a diverse nation. The blend of local cultures and diverse influences make for a melting pot of creativity that never disappoints.

As custodians of South Africa's diverse cultural, artistic and linguistic heritage, the Department of Arts and Culture (DAC) aims to develop and preserve South African culture to ensure social cohesion and nation-building.

South Africa's cultural and creative industry is a good revenue generator, and still has great potential to produce more and contribute to job creation.

Worldwide, the turnover of cultural industries makes this the fifth-largest economic sector, which comprises design, the performing arts, dance, film, television, multimedia, cultural heritage, cultural tourism, visual arts, crafts, music and publishing.

The department has entered into partnerships with significant stakeholders to map cultural industries.

Cabinet has identified the creative and cultural industries as one of the drivers of economic growth and job creation in the implementation of the New Growth Path.

The Industrial Policy Action Plan 2 identifies the cultural industries, in particular the craft sector, music, jewellery production, clothing, leather, footwear and textiles as some of the sectors that will be subjected to focused and significant support by the State.

The department is mandated to:

- develop and promote arts and culture in South Africa, and mainstream its role in social development
- develop and promote the official languages of South Africa, and enhance the linguistic diversity of the country
- improve economic and other development opportunities for South African arts and culture nationally and globally through mutually beneficial partnerships to ensure the sustainability of the sector
- develop and monitor the implementation of policy, legislation and strategic direction for the identification, conservation and promotion of cultural heritage. The DAC aims to increase interactions across all races, foster constitutional values, and encourage equal opportunities, inclusion and redress.

Legislation and policies

The DAC derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- The Heraldry Act, 1962 (Act 18 of 1962).
- The Culture Promotion Act, 1983 (Act 35 of 1983).
- The National Archives and Record Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996).
- The Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997).
- The South African Geographical Names Council Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998).
- The Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998).
- The National Council for Library and Information Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001).
- The National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999).
- The Use of Official Languages Act, 2012 (Act 12 of 2012)
- The National Film and Video Foundation Act, 1997 (Act 73 of 1997).

Broadly, this legislation mandates the department to:

- develop and promote arts and culture in South Africa and mainstream its role in social development
- develop and promote the official languages of South Africa and enhance the linguistic diversity of the country
- improve economic and other development opportunities for South African arts and culture nationally and globally through mutually beneficial partnerships to ensure the sustainability of the sector
- develop and monitor the implementation of policy, legislation and strategic direction for the identification, conservation and promotion of cultural heritage.
- Fund various disciplines in the the Arts and Culture sectors.

Budget

Cabinet has effected reductions of R385.4 million on the department's budget over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. Of this amount, R109.6 million is on operational and capital transfers to 13 public entities; R38.8 million is on goods and services across all programmes; and the remaining R236.9 million is on the community library services grant.

As a result of these reductions, the time taken to complete capital projects and procure certain items, such as library materials, will be extended.

Promoting and preserving heritage infrastructure

Expenditure on heritage infrastructure is designed to achieve redress for South Africa's historical imbalances and continue to contribute to social transformation, particularly the transformation of the heritage landscape to be more inclusive and reflective of all South Africans. In addition, the department's infrastructure development initiatives aim to establish and maintain world class heritage sites to boost tourism and create job opportunities in previously disadvantaged areas. As such, an estimated 99 infrastructure projects at various stages of completion are to receive financial support at a projected total cost of R1.4 billion over the MTEF period in the Institutional Governance, Arts and Culture Promotion and Development, and Heritage Promotion and Preservation programmes.

The liberation heritage route honours those who dedicated their lives to South Africa's liberation struggle. The route is expected to comprise a number of sites that express the key aspects of the South African resistance and liberation experience. A total of R118 million is set aside over the medium term in the Heritage Promotion and Preservation programme to develop 3 sites per province, including a liberation movements museum and other forms of memorialisation. Construction of the National Heroes' Acre, which is part of the liberation heritage route, is expected to commence in 2020/21.

The department has budgeted R67.4 million for 500 bronze statues that form part of the heroes' acre. To date, 90 bronze statues have been produced. A total of R6.5 million is allocated over the MTEF period to expand the existing national, heritage and other honours and awards to make provision for recognising individuals, organisations and communities who have contributed significantly to social cohesion and nation building.

Community library services

The community library services grant aims to transform urban and rural community library infrastructure, facilities and services,

targeting previously disadvantaged communities, through a recapitalisation programme at the provincial level. An amount of R4.5 billion is earmarked for this purpose over the medium term in the Public Library Services subprogramme in the Heritage Promotion and Preservation programme.

Over the medium term, the department plans to procure 497 computers and 430 000 items of library material for provinces to ensure the consistent delivery of services to the public. A key imperative of the community library services grant is the provision or upgrading of public library infrastructure. To this end, the department plans to build 96 new libraries and upgrade 150 community libraries over the MTEF period. In collaboration with the Department of

Basic Education, the department also plans to build 70 dual library service points to support school curricula and enhance learning outcomes.

Positioning the cultural and creative industries

Through the Mzansi Golden Economy strategy, the department aims to ensure that the arts sector contributes to inclusive economic growth, job creation, artist development and urban renewal by creating employment opportunities in the arts, culture and heritage sector, thereby stimulating the broader economy.

The strategy involves activities such as arts festivals, touring ventures, public art projects, and engagement in the cultural and creative industries, through which the department can create employment. An amount of R970.4 million is allocated in the Arts and Culture Promotion and Development programme to implement the Mzansi golden economy strategy over the MTEF period. Of this allocation, 33.7% (R327 million) is set aside to fund 56 flagship cultural events, 90 touring ventures and 60 public art programmes.

Funding of R160 million over the MTEF period through the venture capital fund, which is administered by the National Empowerment Fund for loans to arts and culture organisations, will support the development of small, medium and micro enterprises, and sustainable arts and culture projects administered by previously disadvantaged South Africans.

An amount of R117 million in the Arts and Culture Promotion and Development programme is allocated over the medium term

for interventions such as incubators, master classes and other training initiatives that aim to provide skills training, create jobs and empower artists to participate in the economy. A further R18.3 million has been set aside over the same period in the National Language Services subprogramme for the language bursary programme to fund 900 tertiary students.

Facilitating nation-building and social cohesion

Community conversations provide a space for people from diverse backgrounds to find levers for social cohesion within their communities towards bridging divisions. Over the medium term, the department plans to host 99 community conversations to provide a platform for individuals and organisations to discuss their perceived differences and form a common understanding of what it means to be South African.

An estimated R13.3 million is expected to be spent over the medium term in the Institutional Governance programme to host these conversations across South Africa. The national social cohesion summit takes place every five years, with the next summit scheduled to take place in 2018/19.

The summit aims to gauge progress made in achieving the resolutions adopted at the previous summit, and provides an opportunity for government, business, labour, youth formations, the media and civil society organisations to work together to address social issues. A total of R9 million has been set aside for the summit in the Social Cohesion and Nation Building subprogramme.

The Young Patriots programme encourages young people to participate actively in building the capacity of the arts, culture and heritage sector, and gain meaningful skills through service delivery improvement and moral 2018 regeneration initiatives, and the youth social cohesion advocates programme. Over the medium term, R28.5 million is allocated in the Social Cohesion and Nation Building subprogramme for activities related to youth development.

National symbols

Animal: Springbok
(*Antidorcas marsupialis*)

The springbok's common name is derived from its characteristic

jumping display. It is the only southern African gazelle and is fairly widespread in open, dry bush, grasslands or riverbeds near water. It is also the emblem of South Africa's national rugby team, which bears its name.

Bird: Blue crane
(*Anthropoides paradisea*)

This elegant crane with its silvery blue plumage is endemic to southern Africa, with more than 99% of the population within South Africa's borders.

Fish: Galjoen
(*Coracinus capensis*)

The galjoen is found only along the South African coast and is a familiar sight to every angler. It keeps to mostly shallow water and is often found in rough surf and sometimes right next to the shore.

Flower: King protea
(*Protea cynaroides*)

This striking protea is found in the south-western and southern areas of the Western Cape. It derives its scientific name *cynaroides*, which means "like cynara" (artichoke), from the artichoke-like appearance of its flower head.



Tree: Real yellowwood (*Podocarpus latifolius*)

The yellowwood family is primeval and has been present in South Africa for more than 100 million years. The species is widespread, from Table Mountain, along the southern and eastern Cape coast, in the ravines of the Drakensberg up to the Soutpansberg and the Blouberg in Limpopo.

National flag

South Africa's flag is one of the most recognised in the world. It was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history.

It is the only six-coloured national flag in the world. The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag pole in a "V" form and flowing into a single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with

the hoist or the cord seam at the top.

When displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place, it should be to the right of the audience.

National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* and *The Call of South Africa* (*Die Stem van Suid-Afrika*).

Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika was composed by Methodist mission schoolteacher, Enoch Sontonga, in 1897. The words of *The Call of South Africa* were written by CJ Langenhoven in May 1918, and the music was composed by Reverend ML de Villiers in 1921.

National Coat of Arms

South Africa's Coat of Arms, the highest visual symbol of the State, was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

Its central image is a secretary bird with uplifted wings and a sun rising above it.

Below the bird is the protea, an indigenous South African flower, representing the aesthetic harmony of all cultures and the country flowering as a nation. The ears of wheat are emblems of the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant symbolise wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

At the centre stands a shield signifying the protection of South Africans, above which are a spear and knobkierie. These assert the defence of peace rather than a posture of war.

Within the shield are images of the Khoisan people, the first inhabitants of the land. The figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art.

The motto of the coat of arms – *!ke e:/xarra//ke* – is in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, and means "diverse people unite" or "people who are different joining together".

National Orders

National Orders are the highest awards that the country, through its President, can bestow on individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities.

- The Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement.



The National Anthem

*Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.*

*Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.*

*Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.*

*Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.*

- The Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation, and community service.
- The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, cooperation and friendship towards South Africa.
- The Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution.
- The Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport.
- The Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery. President Cyril Ramaphosa hosted the National Orders



Awards Ceremony in Pretoria in April 2019.

The Order of Mendi for Bravery

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- Thapelo Tambani (Posthumous): For his selfless act of saving another life, which led to his unfortunate demise.

The Order of the Baobab

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- Maduke Lot Ndlovu
- Braam Jordaan
- Constance Mirriam Thokozile Koza (Posthumous)
- Bongani Donald Mkhwanazi (Posthumous);
- Ray and Dora Phillips (Posthumous)
- William Smith (Posthumous).

Order of Ikhamanga

The Order was bestowed in Silver on:

- Achmat Davids (Posthumous);
- Jacques Henry Kallis
- Yvonne Chaka Chaka Mhinga
- Nomhle Nkonyeni
- Benjamin Pogrand
- Mathatha Tsedu
- Mary Mhlongo Twala.

The Order was bestowed in Gold on:

- Johaar Mosaval.

Order of Luthuli

The Order was bestowed in Silver to:

- Velaphi Msane
- Thandi Lujabe-Rankoe
- Antony Andrew Trew
- Moyisile Douglas Tyutyu
- Yosuf (Joe) Veriava.

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo

The Order in Bronze was bestowed on:

- Riccardo Sarra (Italy): For his consistent contribution to the fight for the liberation of the people of South Africa and the Southern African region.

The Order in Silver was bestowed on:

- Klaas de Jonge (The Netherlands);
- Khotso Makhulu (United Kingdom);
- Paulette Pierson-Mathy (Belgium);
- Amii Omara-Otunnu (Uganda)
- Lucia Raadschelders (The Netherlands) (Posthumous).

The Order was bestowed in Gold to:

- His Excellency Admiral Didier Ignace Ratsiraka (Madagascar): For his outstanding contribution to the struggle for democracy in South Africa.

Languages

South Africa is a multilingual country. The country's Constitution guarantees equal status to 11 official languages to cater for the country's diverse people and their cultures. These are: English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Afrikaans, Sepedi, Sesotho, Setswana, Siswati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Other languages used in South Africa include the Khoi, Nama and San languages, Sign Language, Arabic, German, French, Greek, Gujarati, Hebrew, Hindi, Portuguese, Sanskrit, Tamil, Telugu and Urdu.

South Africa has various structures and institutions that support the preservation and development of languages.

In line with the Use of Official Languages Act of 2012, the

DAC developed its Official Language Policy in 2014. The policy provides for the use of all 11 official languages, taking into account factors such as usage, practicality, expense, regional circumstances and the balance of the needs and preferences of the public it serves, and sets out how these languages will be used for DAC's purposes.

The DAC language policy is implemented through the National Language Service, which is composed of four sections namely; Translation and Editing, Terminology Coordination, Human Language Technologies and Language Planning and Development.

Role players

National Heritage Council

The NHC of South Africa is a statutory body that is responsible for the preservation of the country's heritage. Since its inception in February 2004, it has managed to place heritage as a priority for nation-building and national identity.

The NHC focuses on policy development for the sector to meet its transformation goals, enhance public awareness and education, and increase knowledge production in heritage subjects that were previously neglected. It also makes funding available to projects that present heritage as a socio-economic resource.

The NHC engages heritage stakeholders in public and private institutions, including the various organs of civil society, mobilises debates and builds awareness about heritage.

Golden Shield National Heritage Awards

The awards acknowledge active citizenship that protects and promotes the country's heritage.

South African Heritage Resources Agency

SAHRA is mandated to coordinate the identification and management of the national estate. The aims are to introduce an integrated system for the identification, assessment and management of the heritage resources and to enable provincial and local authorities to adopt powers to protect and manage them. SAHRA is a statutory organisation established under the National Heritage Resources Act of 1999, as the national

administrative body responsible for the protection of South Africa's cultural heritage.

SAHRA provides for the identification, protection, conservation and promotion of South Africa's heritage for present and future generations. It established the National Heritage Resources Fund to provide financial assistance to approved bodies or individuals, for any project that contributes to the conservation and protection of South Africa's national heritage resources.

Conservation categories include:

- national heritage sites, registers, areas and objects
- protected areas
- structures of more than 60 years old
- burial grounds and graves
- fossils (palaeontology) and archaeology
- rock art
- sites relating to the history of slavery in South Africa
- movable objects such as those recovered from the soil or waters of South Africa
- discoveries that are associated with living heritage; ethnographic and decorative art; objects of scientific interest; books, documents, photographs, film material or sound recordings.

SAHRA conserves buildings of historical or architectural value.

It is the national administrative management body for the protection of South Africa's cultural heritage. The agency's main functions include managing the national estate through partnerships with other bodies to promote an integrated heritage resources management system. Heritage South Africa is a non-profit organisation that conserves South Africa's variety of architectural gems.

South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC)

The SAGNC advises the Minister of Arts and Culture on the transformation and standardisation of official geographical names in South Africa. The council has jurisdiction over all names of geographical features and entities falling within the territories over which the South African Government has sovereignty.

The renaming of geographical features is regarded as a form of symbolic reparation to address South Africa's past.

The following principles are adhered to:

- each individual feature or entity should have only one official name
- the following types of geographical names would generally be avoided:
 - approved names of places elsewhere in South Africa
 - names of places in other countries and names of countries
 - names that are blasphemous, indecent, offensive, vulgar, unaesthetic or embarrassing
 - names that are discriminatory or derogatory
 - names that may be regarded as an advertisement for a particular product, service or firm
 - names of living people.

Geographical names committees have been established in all nine provinces.

National Arts Council of South Africa

The NAC facilitates opportunities for people to practise and appreciate the arts. The council also promotes the general application of the arts in the community, fosters the expression of national identity by means of the arts, promotes freedom in the practice of the arts, and gives historically disadvantaged people greater access to the arts.

The mandate of the NAC is to:

- provide, and encourage the provision of, opportunities for persons to practice the arts;
- promote the appreciation, understanding and enjoyment of the arts;
- promote the general application of the arts in the community;
- foster the expression of a national identity and consciousness by means of the arts;
- uphold and promote the right of any person to freedom in the practice of the arts;
- give the historically disadvantaged such additional help and resources as are required to give them greater access to the arts;
- address historical imbalances in the provision of infrastructure for the promotion of the arts;
- promote and facilitate national and international liaison between individuals and institutions in respect of the arts; and

- develop and promote the arts and to encourage excellence in regard to these.

Arts institutions

The following arts institutions contribute to a sustainable performing arts industry based on access, excellence, diversity and redress, and encourage the development of the full range of performing arts:

- State Theatre, Pretoria
- Playhouse Company, Durban
- ArtsCape, Cape Town
- Market Theatre, Johannesburg
- Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein
- Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg.

The institutions receive annual transfers from the DAC, but also generate revenue through entrance fees, donor assistance, sponsorships and rental income.

Business and Arts South Africa (BASA)

BASA's vision is to be the leading connector catalyst and resource that supports a better understanding by business of the arts, and continues to advocate an arts culture in our society.

BASA's mission is to ensure the relevance and sustainability of the arts in South Africa by providing expertise in developing partnerships between business and the arts.

Arts and Culture Trust (ACT)

The ACT is the oldest arts funding agency in democratic South Africa. Since 1994 it has advanced its position towards becoming a self-sustaining perpetual fund for the continued development of arts and culture.

It was established to develop and promote arts, culture and heritage, in general, by securing financial and other resources; and to promote the needs and the role of the sector in the public domain.

Due regard is given to ensuring a spread of projects across all the cultural and artistic disciplines, including arts administration, arts education, community art, festivals, heritage, craft, fine art, dance, music, theatre, literature, multidisciplinary and new media.

A number of focused funding and development programmes implemented by ACT support a broad range of activities nationally. Through the Professional Development Programme, the Trust makes funding available to individual artists, practitioners and arts and culture organisations and institutions in the form of once-off grants. The Scholarships Programme facilitates the allocation of three grants to pursue undergraduate performing arts studies and the annual ACT Awards recognise and celebrates excellence in South African arts, culture and creativity.

Through the presentation of arts management master classes, ACT develops administration and management skills of practitioners, which in turn increases the capacity and sustainability of arts organisations and institutions. The annual Arts and Culture Conference aims to share information, knowledge and research with stakeholders of the creative economy with a view to develop, enable and inspire the sector.

Community art centres and other Cultural organisations

There are hundreds of community art centres in operation, varying from community-initiated to government-managed centres, in South Africa.

The centres operate at different levels, ranging from general socio-cultural promotion to advanced programmes and vocational training.

Some of these centres are located in, for example, craft centres, community halls and theatres.

Many art centres are functioning well and have made impressive contributions to local socio-economic development.

The DAC endorses and supports programmes in needy centres that are community-initiated or non-governmental.

Bureau of Heraldry

The Bureau of Heraldry was founded in 1963 and is responsible for registering:

- coats of arms
- badges and other emblems such as flags, seals, medals and insignia of rank and offices of order
- names and uniforms (colours) of associations and

- organisations, such as universities
- promoting national symbols.

National Language Service (NLS)

The NLS is tasked with meeting the constitutional obligations of multilingualism by managing language diversity through language planning, human-language technologies and terminology projects. It also provides a translation and editing service in the official and foreign languages.

Through its bursary scheme, the department offers language-learning opportunities, as well as training in language practice.

The NLS promotes the use and equal status of all official languages. This entails the review of the national language policy, the development of language terminologies and human language technology, translation and publishing services in all official languages, and the awarding of bursaries.

Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB)

PanSALB is a constitutional organisation that was established in 1995 to support and safeguard the language rights of all South Africans. In terms of Section 4 of the PanSalb Act, 1995 (Act 59 of 1995), the board is an independent organ of state, subject only to the Constitution and its founding legislation, and must perform its duties without fear, favour or prejudice.

Programmes, projects and initiatives Public Art Development Programme (PADP)

The PADP is a work stream of the Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy (MGE). It is implemented in partnership with other levels of government, agencies and civil society. The PADP is implemented to strengthen and grow the arts, culture and heritage sector, with particular emphasis on giving the youth, women, children and persons with disabilities the opportunity to participate and benefit from the PADP.

- The objectives of the PADP include:
- creating decent work for artists, designers, researchers, storytellers, crafters, performance artists and a range of other workers that are involved in the realisation and presentation of public artworks

- attracting investment and economic activity to particular locations, including the rural areas.

Mzansi Golden Economy Strategy

The MGE strategy will host 63 flagship cultural events over the medium term at an estimated cost of R532,1 million over the period, budgeted for in the Cultural and Creative Industries Development subprogramme in the Arts and Culture Promotion and Development programme.

There are national flagship cultural events, such as the Buyel'Ekhaya Pan African Music Festival (Eastern Cape), the Joy of Jazz Festival (Gauteng), the Marula Festival (Limpopo) and the Diamonds and Dorings Festival (Northern Cape).

Another part of the strategy is to develop major international exchange platforms such as Africa Month and international cultural seasons.

The cultural seasons are a programme of arts and culture exchange between South Africa and other countries to create new international markets for South African arts and culture products.

The DAC is planning the South Africa-Russia Season for the medium term. The department projects that the MGE strategy will create an estimated 53 000 work opportunities over the period.

Art Bank

The purpose of the Art Bank of South Africa is to identify and purchase contemporary visual art works from emerging and established South African artists. The objectives of the Art Bank of South Africa are to:

- be a national rental agency for contemporary South African art (art works will be leased out for a minimum period of two years);
- procure and curate art works in all public buildings, including government departments, government institutions and South African embassies around the world, on a bi-annual basis, to ensure that good-quality contemporary art works are displayed; and
- allow for the exposure of artists in marketing their works, as this will further contribute to audience development and consumption of South African art.

Festivals

Arts and cultural festivals abound in South Africa, offering something for every taste – from prickly pears, peaches, “witblits”, asparagus and cherries, to various music forms, dance, arts, science, books and whales.

Many of these have become annual events, growing in popularity and attendance numbers.

- Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.
- Arts Alive International Festival in Newtown, Johannesburg provides the best in homegrown and overseas entertainment in September.
- The Cape Town International Jazz Festival features international and African artists. It also features photographic and art exhibitions.
- The Dance Umbrella is a festival of contemporary choreography and dance, presenting work ranging from community-based dance troupes to international companies.
- The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, known as the KKNK, a vibrant festival for the performing arts, is held annually in Oudtshoorn and presentations include drama, cabaret, and contemporary and classical music.
- The Mangaung African Cultural Festival (Macufe) in Bloemfontein in the Free State is one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa. This 10-day festival showcases the cream of African and international talent.
- The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings in Africa.
- Oppikoppi Bushveld Bash near Northam in North West offers live performances by rock, alternative and blues bands, both local and from abroad.
- The Splashy Fen Music Festival near Underberg in KwaZulu-Natal offers a variety of mainstream and alternative rock and pop music.
- Standard Bank Joy of Jazz is Johannesburg’s biggest annual jazz festival, with local and international artists performing at different venues across the city.
- Up the Creek is a popular music festival on the banks of the

Breede River near Swellendam in the Western Cape.

- The Mandela International Film Festival aims to celebrate and stimulate a brave new world of film-making, and is dedicated to improving both the craft and business of film.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international level are: Innibos in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; Taung Cultural Calabash in North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal; the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg; and the Hilton Arts Festival in KwaZulu-Natal.

Theatre

South Africa has a prolific theatre scene with more than 100 active spaces around the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire to West End and Broadway hits, classical opera and ballet. South African theatre very interactive, with actors sometimes directly addressing audiences.

The country has a long and rich history of storytelling, from the oral narratives and shamanistic dances of the San, to the fables told around the fire by South Africa’s indigenous peoples, to the modern and youthful productions of today.

South African theatre came into its own during the apartheid years, partly due to the cultural boycott of the country by British and American actors. Without any external influences, South African theatre flourished with its own unique and local feel, particularly the protest theatre of the 1970s and 1980s.

But the formal South African theatre tradition dates back as far back as the 1830s, when Andrew Geddes Bains’s *Kaatje Kekkelbek*, or *Life Among the Hottentots*, was performed in 1838 by the Grahamstown Amateur Company.

Over the years, playwrights such as Athol Fugard and Gibson Kente would form the backbone of South African theatre. And through their plays, actors such as John Kani and Winston Ntshona became a few of the early participants of a form of theatre that sought to challenge the apartheid system and question racial attitudes of the time.

With mainstream venues like the National Theatre barring black people from creative participation, the Market Theatre in Johannesburg and The Space in Cape Town were just two

of many theatres established to give black artists a stage and multiracial audience. Theatre venues were desegregated in 1978.

Some of the more well-known venues include the Market Theatre, Jo’burg Theatre and Soweto Theatre in Johannesburg; the Baxter and Artscape theatres in Cape Town; and the Playhouse in Durban.

Many of the casinos and malls in South Africa are also home to theatres. The Montecasino Theatre and Studio has hosted major productions such as *Dream Girls* and *Phantom of the Opera*.

There are also multitudes of festivals that take place across the country. The most well-known is the Grahamstown National Arts Festival which is the biggest annual celebration of the arts on the African continent. Over the years, the festival has showcased some of South Africa’s best-performing arts talent, including up-and-coming artists. It has also spawned a multitude of similar festivals such as the Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees in Oudtshoorn.

Music

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report, and Government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. Local music accounts for a third of all the music bought by South Africans.

Township jazz and blues, especially the *kwêla* music of the forties and fifties, are being redefined; the country also has a rich choral tradition, and pop and rock musicians have made their mark internationally.

Even techno-rave and house music have found their own variations in local culture. Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular, combining elements of rap, reggae and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Kwaai Jazz is also gaining momentum.

In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue.

The Taking South African Music to the World Programme is aimed at improving export opportunities for South African music.

The DAC funds a number of musical ensembles directly and indirectly, through the NAC.

Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition

The DAC hosts the annual Moshito Conference and Exhibition, a key music event on the African continent that promotes collaboration among interested parties from both the private and public sectors.

The event is designed to provide opportunities for business networking; information exchange; music-business education; promotion and product development for national music producers, performers, individuals and entities providing support services; as well as to strengthen business opportunities for the music industry and related media.

Mangaung African Cultural Festival

Macufe is one of the most popular cultural festival on the African continent and beyond. This festival has from humble beginnings grown from strength to strength and has undoubtedly reached international stature.

South African Music Awards (SAMAs)

The 24th annual SAMAs ceremony was held in Sun City in June 2019.

- Best Traditional Album – Candy – Hupenyu Unenge Viri
- Best Traditional Faith Music Album – Spirit of Praise – Spirit of Praise Vol 7
- Beste Kontemporere Musiek Album – Coenie de Villiers – Pure Coenie
- Beste Pop Album – Snotkop – Sous
- Capasso Best Selling Digital Download Composers Award – Joyous Celebration 22 – All for you :Lindelani Mkhize, Mnqobi Nxumalo, Sipiwe Ngcobo, Thobeka Mahlangu
- Collaboration of the year – Black Coffee feat. David Guetta and Delilah Montagu – Drive
- Duo/Group of the Year – Black Motion – Moya Wa Taola
- Female Artist of the Year – Sho Madjozi
- Lifetime Achievement Award – HHP, TKZEE and Mango Groove
- Male Artist of the Year – Black Coffee – Music is King
- Music Video of the Year – Jeremy Loops – Gold by Robert Smith

- Newcomer of the Year – Sho Madjozi – Limpopo Champions League
- Record of the Year – Holly Rey – Deeper
- Remix of the Year – Zakwe – Sebentini by Cassper Nyovest, HHP, Blaklez, Kwesta and Musiholiq
- Best of Africa Artist – Diamond Platnumz – A Boy from Tandale
- SAMPRA Highest Airplay Song of the Year – Lady Zamar – Collide
- SAMRO Composers Highest Airplay Award – Lady Zamar – Collide
- Album of the Year – Sjava – Umqhele
- Best Adult Contemporary Album – Ard Matthews – Impossible Machines
- Best African Adult Contemporary Album – Nathi- Iphupha Labantu
- Best African Indigenous Faith Album – Ithimba Le Africa – Sesiphunyukile
- Best Afro Pop Album – Sjava – Umqhele
- Best Alternative Album – Nakhane – You Will Not Die
- Best Contemporary Faith Music Album – We Will Worship – Seasons Volume 1
- Best Dance Album – Black Motion – Moya Wa Taola
- Best Engineered Album – Vusi Nova – Manyan-nyan by Robin Walsh
- Best Hip Hop Album – Nasty C – Strings N Bling
- Best Jazz Album – Bokani Dyer Trio – Neo Native
- Best Kwaito/Gqom/Amapiano – Spikiri – King Don Father
- Best Live Audio Visual Recording – Cassper Nyovest – Fill up Orlando Stadium – Robin Kohl
- Best Maskandi Album – Sgwebu Sentambo – Yekani Umona
- Best Pop Album – Tresor – Nostalgia
- Best Produced Album – Nasty C – Strings and Bling
- Best RnB/Soul Album – Zonke – L.O.V.E
- Best Reggae Album – Black Dillinger – Mavara is King
- Best Rock Album – Dan Patlansky – Perfection Kills
- Best Selling Artist – Joyous Celebration 22
- Best Selling DVD – Joyous Celebration 22

South African Traditional Music Achievement (SATMA) Awards

The SATMA Awards are aimed at promoting, preserving, uplifting, developing, honouring and awarding traditional musicians across racial and ethnic backgrounds.

Dance

Dancing is part of the African way of life and has become a prime means of artistic expression, with dance companies expanding and exploring new territory.

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The University of the Witwatersrand (Wits) Theatre is another popular dance venue.

Dance Umbrella

The Dance Umbrella is an annual platform for South African contemporary dance at which new choreographic creations are presented. It is an open platform encompassing performances by youth and community groups, the efforts of young choreographers and commissioned works from professionals.

Celebrating its 30th anniversary, Dance Umbrella 2018, ran at various theatres and venues in Johannesburg from 6 to 18 March 2018. It opened on March 6 and 7 2018 at the UJ Centre for the Arts with two works: Gula Matari by Vincent Sekwati Mantsoe and Mayhem by Gregory Vuyani Maqoma.

The internationally renowned annual festival presented 18 programmes of new contemporary dance works from both local and international choreographers.

Visual arts

South Africa has a rich variety of visual art, with influences ranging from prehistoric, ancient and indigenous art to western,

Asian and contemporary art.

Art galleries, ranging from small privately owned commercial galleries, to major regional galleries such as the South African National Gallery in Cape Town, the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal, the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng and King George VI Gallery in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape, showcase collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Educational institutions also play an important role in acquiring works of national interest.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in southern Africa in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in the region, which also represents the largest collection of its kind in the world.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as their interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space.

Indigenous people with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoi fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists' spiritual world can also be found on the sandstone canvases. These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone, some 10 200 years, was discovered in a living floor at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (around 6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Cango Valley near Oudtshoorn.

Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back some 3 900 years.

The DAC supports a number of projects, including a rock-heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape.

Millions of pieces of tools made by humankind's ancestors (possibly the *Homo heidelbergensis* species) were uncovered at Kathu in the Northern Cape in July 2014. The site is between 700 000 and a million years old and used to be a huge workshop to produce tools.

The findings were published in the technical magazine, PLoS One, by the universities of Cape Town and Toronto (Canada) and the McGregor Museum in Kimberley.

The hominid species produced tools and equipment at the site for 20 000 to 30 000 years generation after generation.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographer's paradise.

Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee table books, documentaries, local and international exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

Famous South African photographers include Kevin Carter, Ernest Cole, Alf Kumalo, Peter Magubane, Jürgen Schadeberg, Austin Stevens, Greg Marinovich, Andrew Tshabangu, Sam Nzima and James Oatway.

In June 2016, Peter Magubane launched a book titled *June 16: 40th Anniversary Edition* in Johannesburg. It is a pictorial account of the events that took place on 16 June 1976 – a fateful day that marked a significant change in the discourse of South Africa's push for liberation. The foreword of the book was written by Struggle veteran Winnie Madikizela-Mandela.

A number of photographers from the state of emergency era partnered with the McGregor Museum and the Nelson Mandela Foundation to honour photographers who played a fundamental role in the liberation.

This museum is home an exhibition which tells forgotten stories and highlights South Africa's heritage.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage, reflecting contributions from all the cultural groups in the country. Through

the centuries, a unique trend has developed in South Africa's architectural style, which has been referred to as an innovative marriage of traditions.

This is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern, commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world.

Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities, including the universities of Pretoria, Cape Town, the Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, the Witwatersrand and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University.

Crafts

A high level of skill is brought to the production of work that has long been a part of African society, and has found new commercial outlets.

South African beadwork, once the insignia of tribal royalty, has found a huge range of applications, from the creation of coverings for everything such as bottles and matchboxes, to the reproduction of the red AIDS ribbon using Zulu beadwork known as Zulu love letters.

With workplaces ranging from the pavements and markets of the big cities to dwellings in deep rural areas, South Africans produce a remarkable range of arts and crafts, including various forms of traditional artwork and innovative new products.

There are also several important collections of African art in South Africa, such as the Standard Bank collection at the Gertrude Posel Gallery at Wits University, in Johannesburg. The Durban Art Gallery houses works of historical and anthropological significance.

These range from jewellery, tableware, home decorations, embroidery and key rings to skilfully crafted wooden engravings and wirework sculptures. In addition to the standard materials such as beads, grass, leather, fabric and clay, many other mediums are also used, including telephone wire, plastic bags, empty cans, bottle tops and even food tin labels, to create brightly coloured paper mâché bowls.

Shops, markets and collectors dealing in African crafts provide much-needed employment and income to communities.

Fugitive's Drift in KwaZulu-Natal, offers a large variety of skilfully crafted basketry; the Northern Cape Schmidtsdrift community of displaced San people produces paintings influenced by ancient rock art; and the Madi a Thavha Art Gallery in the Soutpansberg region of the Limpopo produces and sells a range of arts and crafts created by the local Venda and Tsonga communities, including beautiful beadwork, sculptures, ceramics and jewellery.

South African folk art is also making inroads into Western-style "high art".

The Ndebele tradition of house-painting, part of the widespread African practice of painting or decorating the exteriors of homes, burgeoned amazingly with the advent of commercial paints.

It also gave rise to artists such as Esther Mahlangu, who has put her adaptations of the distinctive, highly coloured geometric Ndebele designs on everything from cars to aeroplanes.

Design

Design Indaba, the internationally acclaimed creative conference, took place in Cape Town from 27 February to 1 March 2019 at the Artscape Theatre, and once again set the standard for creative excellence, innovative entrepreneurship and lateral solutions-based thinking on global design and social challenges.

In keeping with the Design Indaba ethos - a better world through creativity - the conference promised to inspire design activism through compelling presentations that combine career-changing insights and cutting-edge work. From architecture and industrial design to pop culture, emerging technologies and environmental problem-solving, the 2019 edition offered inspiration and insights across industries.

Literature

South Africa has a rich and diverse literary history, with realism, until relatively recently, dominating works of fiction.

Fiction has been written in all of South Africa's 11 official languages - with a large body of work in Afrikaans and English. This overview focuses primarily on English fiction, though it also touches on major poetic developments.

The local literature sector has become globally competitive

and the country's writers continue to command respect throughout the world.

Well-known South African writers include Nobel Prize winners JM Coetzee and Nadine Gordimer, Gcina Mhlope, Phaswane Mpe, Es'kia Mphahlele, Wally Serote, Athol Fugard, Herman Charles Bosman, Sir Percy Fitzpatrick, Breyten Breytenbach, Dalene Matthee, Alan Paton, Olive Schreiner, Andre P Brink and Njabulo Ndebele.

The current generation of writers are also making their mark on the world stage, with writers such as Zakes Mda, Niq Mhlongo and the late Kabelo K Sello Duiker, who have had their novels translated into languages such as Dutch, German and Spanish; and Deon Meyer, whose work has attracted worldwide critical acclaim and a growing international fan base. Originally written in Afrikaans, Meyer's books have been translated into 25 languages, including English, French, German, Dutch, Italian, Spanish, Danish, Norwegian, Swedish, Russian, Finnish, Czech, Romanian, Slovakian, Bulgarian, Japanese and Polish.

Well-known poets include the late Keorapetse William Kgotsile, Joseph Mbuyiseni Mtshali, Roy Campbell, Sheila Cussons, Jakob Daniël du Toit (better known as Totius), Elisabeth Eybers, Ingrid Jonker, Antjie Krog, Thomas Pringle, NP van Wyk Louw and Eugène Marais.

The new pop culture in poetry, often referred to as "spoken-word poetry", is one of the most celebrated art forms in the country and beyond. Poets such as Lesego Rampolokeng, Lebogang Mashile, Kgafela oa Magogodi, Blaq Pearl, Jessica Mbangeni and Mark Manaka are household names in the genre. Regular platforms have been created to give these poets opportunities to hone their skills.

The Publishing Association of South Africa is committed to creativity, literacy, the free flow of ideas and encouraging a culture of reading.

The 2018 National Book Week celebrations (NBW) ran from 3 to 9 September under the theme: #OURSTORIES.

This annual campaign is aimed at uncovering the thrill and magic of reading books. It is guided by the idea that when the nation learns to share the joy of reading books, the country benefits by developing empowered, self-reliant communities.

The programme reaches a diverse audience during its annual

visits across the country, including pre-schoolers, learners from Grade R -12, youth, adults, the elderly, the visually impaired, the hearing impaired and the disabled persons.

During the NBW, the South African Book Development Council (SABDC) also draws attention to various programmes to ensure that books reach as many South African households as possible. The lack of leisure books in households is a key motivator for the #BUYABOOK strategy under the National Book Week campaign.

This annual campaign is supported by the SABDC, in association with the Department of Arts and Culture, with broadcast media support from the SABC Foundation.

The DAC supports the Baobab Literary Journal with the purpose of providing a regular publishing platform for budding writers to appear alongside seasoned ones. This publication includes contributors from various countries across the African continent and the Diaspora.

The department continues to support the Time of the Writer and the Poetry Africa festivals, held annually in Durban. These festivals also deliver developmental workshops for young emerging writers, a schools programme and an initiative with the Department of Correctional Services to promote writing among inmates. WordFest, a literary component of the Grahamstown Arts Festival, focuses on promoting literature in indigenous languages. Also popular are the Johannesburg and Franschhoek literary festivals.

There is an English Literary Museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans Museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal is home to the Bernth Lindfors Collection of African literature.

The centre's mission is to promote a culture of reading, writing and publishing in all local languages, and easy access to books for all South Africans.

South African Literary Awards (SALA)

The 2018 winners of the prestigious South African Literary Awards were announced at a gleaming awards ceremony on 6 November at UNISA.

Twenty-three South African authors were shortlisted for the 2018 SALA. The winners, which include authors, poets,

writers and literary practitioners whose works are continuously contributing to the enrichment of South Africa's literary landscape, were celebrated in an auspicious ceremony.

The SALA have honoured over a hundred individuals in the past 13 years. The year 2018 marked the highest milestone of the awards, as the shortlist included, for the first time, two additional categories: Novel Award and Children's Literature Award.

Following the passing on of the second National Poet Laureate, Prof Keorapetse Kgotsitsile, the prestigious South African Literary Awards announced liberation struggle poet and novelist Mongane Wally Serote as the successor.

Kelwyn Sole received the Poetry Award for his anthology *Walking, Falling*, whilst South African journalist, writer and publisher Sam Mathe got the Literary Journalism Award.

The Lifetime Achievement Literary Award was jointly awarded to author of historical and political Hermann Giliomee and award winning author Ronnie Kasrils.

The Chairperson Award was given to South Africa's most distinguished award-winning photo journalist, Peter Magubane.

The Novel Award was awarded to Dan Sleigh for his book *1795*, with Malebo Sephodi receiving the First-Time Published Author Award for her memoir, *Miss Behave*.

Nick Mulgrew and Nicole Jaekel Strauss were announced as joint winners for the Nadine Gordimer Short Story Award for *The First Law of Sadness* and *As in die mond*, respectively.

Jürgen Schadenberg was the recipient of the Creative Non-Fiction Award for his monograph, *The Way I See It*.

Film

The first-ever newsreel was shot in South Africa during the Anglo-Boer/South African War, which ended in 1902. The weekly newsreel ran for more than 60 years. Film production began in 1916, when IW Schlesinger set up Killarney Studios in Johannesburg.

The studio produced 42 movies between 1916 and 1922. Access to international markets became limited in the 1920s, and it was only in the 1950s that the market picked up again, when Afrikaans filmmakers developed an interest in the industry.

In the 1980s, South Africa gave foreign companies the

opportunity to film movies in the country by giving them tax breaks.

The South African film industry contributes R3,5 billion annually to the country's GDP, while providing employment for more than 25 000 people.

The South African Government offers a package of incentives to promote its film production industry.

The incentives comprise the Foreign Film and Television Production incentive to attract foreign-based film productions to shoot on location in South Africa, and the South African Film and Television Production and Co-Production incentive, which aims to assist local film producers in producing local content.

South Africa's first co-production treaty was signed with Canada in 1997, followed by Germany, Italy, the UK, France, Australia and New Zealand.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit, called Cinema Nouveau, with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Durban International Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.

National Film and Video Foundation

The NFVF develops and promotes the film and video industry in South Africa. The foundation promotes local film and video products, supports the development of and access to the industry, and addresses historical imbalances in infrastructure, skills and resources in the industry.

In March 2019, the NFVF in partnership with MIFA hosted the second edition of "The Road to Annecy" pitching session, which took place at the Cape Town International Animation Film Festival.

The session specifically aimed to create a platform for South African producers to pitch their projects that are in development

or production to potential investors, producers, distributors, and programmers and international funding agencies for either production or sales.

i In April 2018, the University of Johannesburg honoured internationally-renowned Ndebele artist Esther Mahlangu with a doctoral degree for her contribution to the arts. Mahlangu was born in 1935 on a farm near Middelburg, Mpumalanga. She has also been recognised internationally with a painting on a boulevard in New York. She has also collaborated with international brands, such as BMW and singer John Legend. Her work has been featured at galleries across the globe,

South African Film and Television Awards (SAFTAs)

The 13th annual SAFTAs, were held in March 2019 in Sun City, North West. The winners were:

- Best TV Soap: Uzalo.
- Best Actor (TV soap) – Jamie Bartlett: Rhythm City.
- Best Actress (TV soap) – Kgomotso Christopher: Scandal.
- Best Supporting Actress (TV soap) – Gcina Mkhize: Isibaya
- Best Supporting Actor (TV soap) Abdul Khoza: Isibaya
- Best TV drama: Lockdown 2.
- Best Actor (TV drama) – Mothusi Magano: Emoyeni.
- Best Actress (TV drama) – Dawn Thandeka King: Lockdown 2.
- Best Supporting Actress (TV drama) – Lorcia Cooper: Lockdown 2.
- Best Supporting Actor (TV drama) – S'dumo Mtshali: Is'thunzi Season 2.
- Best TV comedy: Tali's Wedding Diary
- Best Actor (TV comedy) – Hannes Brummer: Elke Skewe Pot 2.
- Best Actress (TV comedy) – Julia Anastasopoulos: Tali's Wedding Diary.
- Best Supporting Actress (TV comedy) – Nomsa Buthelezi: Abo Mzala 3.
- Best Supporting Actor (TV comedy) – Warren Masemola: Single Galz.

- Best Talk Show: Thando Bares All.
- Best TV Presenter – Sivuyile Ngesi: The Man Cave Season 6.
- Most Popular TV Soap/Telenovela: The River.
- Best Feature Film: Sew the Winter to my Skin.
- Best Actress (feature film) – Jill Levenberg: Ellen, The Ellen Pakkies Story.
- Best Actor (feature film) – Jarrid Geduld: Ellen, The Ellen Pakkies Story.
- Best Supporting Actress (feature film) – Ilse Klink: Stroomop.
- Best Supporting Actor (feature film) – Zolisa Xaluva: Sew the Winter to my Skin.
- Best Documentary Feature: Everything Must Fall.
- Best Short Film: Stillborn.

Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can justifiably be called the “museum country of Africa”, with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

There are more than 300 museums in South Africa. They range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Visitors can find exhibits, both conventional and eccentric, on every conceivable topic – from beer to beadwork, from fashion to food.

New additions are those reflecting the apartheid era, and commemorating those who fought and died for the cause of establishing a democratic country.

Most of the country’s national museums are declared cultural institutions and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the DAC.

They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but function autonomously.

The following officially declared heritage institutions depend on annual transfers from the DAC:

- Northern Flagship Institutions, Pretoria
- Freedom Park, Pretoria
- Iziko Museum, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg

- Bloemfontein National Museum
- Afrikaans Language Museum, Paarl
- The National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha.

The following museums report to the Minister of Arts and Culture:

- Ditsong museums of South Africa
- Iziko museums, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Language Museum, Paarl
- National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Msunduzi/Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Ditsong museums of South Africa comprise the National Cultural History Museum, Kruger House, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum the Coert Steynberg Museum, the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko museums of Cape Town comprise the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa’s first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned.

In April 2009, the DAC declared Freedom Park, Pretoria, a

cultural institution under the Cultural Institutions Act of 1998.

The //hapo museum at the historic Freedom Park was officially unveiled in April 2013.

The museum, which is situated at the top of Salvokop in Pretoria, will also serve as a monument to the mighty legacy of South Africa’s first democratically elected President, Nelson Mandela.

//hapo is a Khoi word which means “a dream”. The museum will help the country define the history, in holistic terms, from the early wars of dispossession such as the Khoikhoi-Dutch war in the 1500s; the arrival of Jan van Riebeeck in the Cape in 1652; the Third War of Dispossession between the Khoisan and colonial authorities in the 1800s; and the South African War, previously known as the Anglo-Boer War, to the anti-apartheid struggle – all of which form part of the freedom history and define the freedom South Africans enjoy today. The museum is the result of nationwide consultative processes that solicited advice from youth, intellectuals, academics, artistic communities, women’s groups, traditional leaders and healers and faith-based organisations.

It is a product of South Africans from all walks of life and is in every shape and form a community’s dream.

Other elements include a vast wall commemorating those who paid the ultimate price for freedom, an eternal flame paying tribute to the unknown and unsung heroes and heroines, a gallery dedicated to the legends of humanity, a symbolic resting place for those who have died and the story of southern Africa’s 3.6 billion years of history.

Other museums administered by central government departments or research councils are the:

- Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria)
- Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria)
- South African Air Force Museum at Swartkop Air Force Base (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban
- museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria).

The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko museums, the Ditsong museums of South

Africa, the National Museum and the KwaZulu-Natal Museum.

The following natural history museums do not fall under the DAC, but work closely with the national heritage institutions:

- McGregor Museum, Kimberley
- East London Museum
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown
- Port Elizabeth Museum
- Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural history collections are housed in the Iziko and the Ditsong museums, as well as the Durban Local History Museum and Museum Africa in Johannesburg.

The South African National Gallery in Cape Town and the William Humphreys Art Gallery in Kimberley report to the DAC.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country.

The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, and relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent.

The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with a planetarium attached to it.

The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2.5-million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings.

It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, combines a museum with a cultural-development initiative.

The National Cultural History Museum in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans.

It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both, and nurtures the living cultures of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the

Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel.

It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable gold field was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored.

Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly in two museums. These are Kleinplasia in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspuit, in Gauteng.

This museum comprises two "house" museums and runs educational programmes based on its extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals.

The Absa Museum and archives in Johannesburg preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. The museum also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the apartheid years.

Exhibitions in the museum include audiovisual footage recorded during the apartheid era.

The Red Location Museum in Port Elizabeth highlights the struggle against apartheid and has won several international awards.

A common type of museum in South Africa is the "house" museum. Examples include an entire village nucleus in Stellenbosch; the mansion of the millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks; the Kruger House Museum, the residence of Paul Kruger, former President of the Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek; and Melrose House, where the Peace Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the Second Anglo-Boer/South African War (1899 to 1902) was signed, around the massive dining table, on 31 May 1902, in Pretoria. performing arts institutionsSimpler variations include the Pioneer Museum and 1848 house in Silverton, Pretoria; and the Diepkloof Farm Museum featuring a farmhouse dating back to the 1850s, at Suikerbosrand near

Heidelberg, in Gauteng.

There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example, Tsonga Kraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War, in particular.

The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.

On 18 May, the world celebrates International Museum Day which is coordinated by the International Council of Museums. The objective of International Museum Day is to raise awareness of the fact that museums are an important means of cultural exchange, enrichment of cultures and development of mutual understanding, cooperation and peace among peoples.

The event highlights a specific theme that changes every year and that is at the heart of the international museum community's preoccupations.

The 2018 International Museum Day theme was: Hyperconnected museums: New approaches, new publics.

Participation in International Museum Day is growing among museums all over the world.

The main mission of museums is to oversee the safekeeping and protection of the heritage that lies both within and beyond their walls.

Archives

The archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin.

The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives (NFVSA).

Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value, and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the

National Archives' repository in Pretoria.

The nine provinces run their archiving services independently from the National Archives.

The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the National Automated Archival Information System, which can be found at www.national.archives.gov.za.

It includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs and audiovisual material.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance.

The National Archives also renders a regulatory records-management service with regard to current records in governmental bodies, aimed at promoting efficient, transparent and accountable administration.

In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The Oral History Programme seeks to build the National Archives' capacity to document the spoken word, and fill the gaps in the archives of previously disadvantaged communities.

The automated National Register of Oral Sources is an important element of the programme.

The National Oral History Association, which was established in 2006, hosts annual oral history conferences.

The National Archives' outreach programme promotes the use of its facilities and functions. Archives are taken to the people of South Africa through coordinated national and provincial archive services.

The National Archives is also responsible for ensuring effective, transparent and accountable management of all public records.

The Convention for a Democratic South Africa and the multiparty South African collections have been nominated and provisionally registered for the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) Memory of the World International Register.

This is part of South Africa's contribution to the documented collective memory of the peoples of the world.

Library and information services (LIS)

The DAC oversees various libraries, including the National

Library of South Africa, a statutory body; the South African Library for the Blind; and Blind South Africa.

South Africa's growing LIS sector also includes public/community libraries; special libraries; government libraries; and higher education libraries.

In 2018, public libraries in South Africa were commemorating 200 years of existence since the first National Library in South Africa (South African Library) was found in Cape Town in 1818. This was the forerunner of the current National Library of South Africa, Cape Town campus.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA was established after the merger of the former State Library in Pretoria and the former South African Library in Cape Town, and includes a specialist unit, the Centre for the Book in Cape Town.

The NLSA in Pretoria has seating capacity for 1 300 library users.

The NLSA offers free Internet access to users in Cape Town and Pretoria.

The Centre for the Book promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all official languages of South Africa.

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's knowledge resources. It is mandated to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material and make it accessible worldwide.

Its collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and special interest material, including Africana and newspapers.

The functions of the NLSA are to:

- build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa
- maintain and preserve these collections
- provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlending services
- promote information awareness and literacy.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map,

manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic.

The Bookkeeper Mass De-Acidification has been installed at the NLSA in Pretoria to treat books and archival non-book material to extend the useful life of paper collections.

The NLSA is also able to offer moderate services to local libraries, archives and museums.

The NLSA is a link between the LIS sector and heritage sector. It will influence a social cohesive nation by providing free and equitable access to knowledge and information resources, with a theme: "A reading nation is a thriving nation".

Library and Information Association of South Africa (LIASA)

LIASA is the national professional association that represents libraries and information institutions; all library and information workers; and millions of users and potential users of libraries in South Africa.

It aims to unite, develop and empower all people in the library and information field. It represents the interests of and promotes the development and image of library and information services in South Africa.

Libraries have always played a role in education, whether school, academic, public or special libraries.

Where there are not enough school libraries, public libraries are largely bridging the gap.

The concept of lifelong learning is one embodied in all libraries, especially public and community libraries.

That any person, young or old, rich or poor, employed or unemployed, can walk into a library and find information (in both electronic and traditional formats) to educate and enrich themselves, is one of the major benefits of libraries.

National Library Week was held from 19 to 25 March 2018 under the theme, Libraries: heart of the Community. The theme re-emphasizes the idea that libraries belong to the community and are central to it. The theme is also reminder to all library users that the library is a communal space that caters to specific needs – educational, social, recreational or informative.

LIASA remains aligned with South Africa's National Development Plan (NDP) 2030 that will shape communities

through among others, skill development in a focused attempt to reduce unemployment especially amongst the youth.

National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

The NCLIS is an advisory council that advises the ministers of arts and culture, of basic education and of higher education and training on matters relating to LIS to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, recreational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country.

The council is broadly representative and councillors are appointed for their expertise and experience in the field of LIS.

Members serve on the council for a renewable term of three years.

Some important policy matters include the development of the Library and Information Services Transformation Charter, which aligns the role of libraries with the vision and strategic framework of Government; the training of librarians; and the funding of the sector.

Legal Deposit Committee

The Legal Deposit Committee was appointed in terms of the Legal Deposit Act of 1997, which is administered by the DAC.

The committee members serve on the committee for a renewable term of three years.

The mandate of the Act includes:

- providing for the preservation of the national documentary heritage through the legal deposit of published documents
- ensuring the preservation and cataloguing of, and access to, published documents emanating from, or adapted for, South Africa
- providing for access to government information.

The core functions of the Legal Deposit Committee include:

- advising the Minister on any matter dealt with in this Act
- making recommendations to the Minister concerning any regulations which the Minister may make under this Act
- coordinating the tasks carried out by the places of legal deposit

- advising any place of legal deposit regarding any matter dealt with in this Act.

The places of legal deposit are: the NLSA, the Library of Parliament in Cape Town, the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein, the Msunduzi/Voortrekker Municipal Library in Pietermaritzburg and the NFVSA in Pretoria.

The Act also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories (OPDs), namely the Constitutional Court Library in Johannesburg, Phuthaditjhaba Public Library in the Free State, the North West Provincial Library, Information and Archives Service, and the Mpumalanga Library Services.

South African Library for the Blind

The SALB is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown in the Eastern Cape. Its purpose is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa.

It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on funds from the private sector and the general public.

The SALB also produces documents in special media such as Braille, audio and tactile formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields.

It also acquires, manufactures and disseminates the technology people with visual disabilities use to read. The SALB has five broad objectives, namely to significantly contribute towards:

- helping to build a nation of readers
- assisting the organised blind community
- improving the lives of individuals with print disabilities by meeting their information needs
- helping the State to discharge its cultural mandate, and its obligations to blind and visually impaired people
- assisting Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind people and the institutions that serve their information needs.

The SALB has a membership of about 3 655 people, an audio and Braille collection of more than 25 600 books, and an annual circulation of 133 222 books in Braille or audio format.

To make library services more accessible, the SALB has partnered with 82 public libraries providing accessible reading material and assisting devices.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg.

It provides services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille.

The organisation equips blind people with the skills they need to fully and independently participate in society. This includes support in living without assistance, getting about, using technology, reading, working and socialising. All this is made possible through the organisation's advocacy, education committee, braille services, orientation and mobility services and employment programme.

It is through this, and the support of its donors, that Blind SA connects South Africans who are blind or visually impaired with the world they live in.

Blind SA provides:

- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students
- interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment)
- information (including free Braille magazines)
- assistance in finding sustainable employment
- advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights)
- Braille publications at affordable prices in all the official languages
- free Braille training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people)
- free orientation and mobility training (newly blind people or previously disadvantaged blind people).

International relations

The DAC's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union (AU) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development, South Africa has embarked on the

road to restoring, preserving and protecting its African heritage.

The department ensures that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage, and uses arts and culture as a tool for economic self-liberation.

Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the UK, China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and many more.

South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so.

In the area of international cooperation on cultural development, the DAC is committed to promoting the African Agenda.

The DAC continues to encourage and support initiatives to promote South African artists on the world stage.

Cultural diplomacy

South Africa continues to expand its international Cultural Diplomacy Programme led by DAC, in order to create opportunities for artists and showcase South African talent and creativity to the world.

Cultural diplomacy and seasons programmes build relations between individuals, communities, states and institutions, in order to foster better understanding of each other's cultures and heritage and to use this power to promote peaceful relations.

Cultural diplomacy support and enhance political dialogue and economic cooperation. It uses the power of culture as a driver and facilitator of economic development, and contributes to poverty reduction, whilst fostering positive, socially-cohesive nations.

The Cultural seasons initiative is one of the tools used for the implementation of cultural diplomacy. It is a concentrated focus of cultural activities and exchanges over a specific period of time, agreed to between two countries and is based on reciprocity. It seeks to profile and strengthen cultural relations between two countries and showcase the best talent while providing growth opportunities for emerging and up-and-coming young artists.

It creates international platforms and opportunities for artists and cultural practitioners of all genres to showcase their work, and to engage with their counterparts and audiences, growing and further developing the arts and culture sector.

The initiative creates reciprocal cultural, arts and heritage collaboration and exchanges between involved countries, creating institutional ties, increasing the level of awareness of each other's culture and heritage, and unlocking opportunities in other spin-off areas, including cultural tourism.

Over the past five years South Africa had seasons programmes with France, UK, China, Gabon, and Algeria.

Africa Seasons

The African cultural seasons are aimed at showcasing South Africa's artistic and cultural talent and promote regional integration. In line with the NDP and South Africa's foreign policy imperative on "regional integration", South Africa's national interests include the development and upliftment of its people; growth and development of the economy; growth and development of Southern Africa; and a stable and prosperous African continent.

Africa Month

South Africa recognises itself as an integral part of the African continent and therefore understands its national interest as being intrinsically linked to Africa's stability, unity and prosperity.

In line with South Africa's commitment to contribute to a better Africa and a better world and the principles of the Charter for African Cultural Renaissance, the DAC initiated the Africa Month Programme in 2015.

The theme for Africa Month 2018 was: "A Year of Nelson Mandela – Building a Better Africa and a Better World". Celebrations culminate in Africa Day on 25 May, which is a day declared by the AU and celebrated in Africa.

South Africa-Russia Seasons

The initiative has become an excellent and innovative way to showcase different cultures, discover new talent and connect new generations of creative professionals and audiences in South Africa and Russia. It is about the sustainability and growth of the arts and culture sector. The South Africa-Russia Seasons initiative, at its core is about common and shared heritage, the need to positively influence each other, shared thinking on the arts, culture and creative industry, institutional collaboration, nurturing of leadership in the arts and promoting innovation.

South Africa-China: People-to-People Exchange Mechanism

Among others, its aim is to create new opportunities for developing and enriching the current bilateral cooperation and exchange mechanisms between China and South Africa in the fields of arts and culture, health, youth, science and technology, education and tourism.

Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS)

South Africa hosted the third BRICS Film Festival from 22 to 27 July 2018 at Playhouse in Durban, KwaZulu Natal. On 31 October 2018, the country hosted the Brics Ministers of Culture Meeting at the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site in Maropeng, Gauteng.

Indigenous music and oral history

The International Library of African Music (ILAM), attached to the Music Department at Rhodes University, is the largest repository of African music in the world. Founded in 1954 by ethnomusicologist Hugh Tracy, ILAM is devoted to the study of music and oral arts in Africa. It preserves thousands of historical recordings, going back to 1929, and supports contemporary fieldwork.

The DAC has entered into partnerships with the universities of Venda, Fort Hare and Zululand to conduct research into indigenous music and instruments, as well as identifying and collecting all aspects of intangible cultural heritage in their provinces.

The department and the African Cultural Heritage Fund promote indigenous music by hosting regional, provincial and national indigenous dance and music competitions.

African World Heritage Fund (AWHF)

The AWHF provides financial and technical support for the conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage of outstanding universal value.

The fund was established as a result of work undertaken by African member states of UNESCO, with the objective of developing an ongoing strategy to deal with the challenges

that most African countries have in implementing the World Heritage Convention. The AWHF is the first regional funding initiative within the framework of the UNESCO World Heritage Convention.

The AWHF strives towards the effective conservation and protection of Africa's natural and cultural heritage. AWHF is aimed at AU member states that signed the 1972 UNESCO World Heritage Convention in support of these goals.





South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

Communications

POSTING BOX



South Africa's combined information and communications technology (ICT) sector and general communication between government and citizens as well as between citizens and the private sector is governed by three bodies:

- The Department of Communications (DoC)
- The Government Communication and Information System (GCIS)
- The Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services (DTPS).

Department of Communications

The Ministry of Communications is responsible for the overarching communications policy and strategy, information dissemination and publicity, as well as the branding of the country abroad.

The DoC comprises the following entities: Brand South Africa (Brand SA); the Film and Publication Board (FPB); the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA), the Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) and the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC).

The vision of the DoC of providing vibrant and sustainable communication services for an informed citizenry and a positive image of South Africa supports its mission of creating an enabling environment for the provision of inclusive communication services to all South Africans; in a manner that promotes socio-economic development and investment through broadcasting, new media, print media and new technologies, and brand the country locally and internationally.

The DoC is responsible for the national communications policy and strategy; information dissemination and publicity; and the branding of South Africa. Improved communication and marketing will promote an informed citizenry and assist the country in promoting investments, economic growth and job creation. The department's mandate is derived from section 192 of the Constitution, which provides for the independence of broadcasting regulation in the public interest, the International Telecommunications Union and the World Intellectual Property Organisation.

The National Development Plan (NDP) envisages an active citizenry that participates in the social, economic and political life of the country. This is given expression by outcome 14 (nation building and social cohesion) of government's 2014-2019 medium-term strategic framework, which is closely aligned with the work of the Department of Communications.

Transforming the communications sector through digital broadcasting

The shift from analogue to digital broadcasting is critical to transforming the communications sector, as it frees up

much needed spectrum for broadband and other modern communications services. Digital broadcasting, therefore, will enable South Africa to adapt to and participate meaningfully in a globalised economy. As such, the department plans to fast-track the rollout of the digital migration project, which involves migrating all citizens by July 2020 to digital broadcast platforms. This is in line with the department's adoption of a new delivery model for digital migration, which was approved by Cabinet in 2018. The new model entails supplying digital set-top boxes to citizens through retail stores rather than directly by government, thereby freeing up government procurement processes.

The model will follow a phased provincial approach, where targeted public awareness and messaging will be done by the department through marketing and education programmes broadcast mainly on the South African Broadcasting Corporation's television and radio platforms, community radio and print media. Consumer awareness and registration campaigns will also be conducted by field teams comprising volunteers and contracted staff between April 2019 and July 2020. In addition, consumers will be provided with call centre support for all decoder installation and other related queries. This service will be administered and operated by Sentech due to its core role in the project. To carry out all activities related to the fast-tracking of the digital migration project, R96.9 million has been set aside over the medium term in the Broadcasting Digital Migration subprogramme in the Industry and Capacity Development programme.

Strengthening entity oversight

Over the medium term, the department intends to review and benchmark shareholder compacts and accountability instruments to strengthen oversight of all entities.

The department will also continue to monitor and assess the delivery of entities on their mandates and compliance to all relevant founding legislative prescripts. This is expected to be achieved through analysing quarterly performance and annual reports, and coordinating monthly and quarterly accountability forums between the department and its entities.

In 2018/19, the department established a task team to ensure progress in resolving the financial constraints faced by the SABC. The task team's purpose is to, among other things, monitor the implementation of the corporation's turnaround strategy, and assist with the development of a revised corporate plan and government guarantee application with the aim of making the corporation profitable. All activities related to strengthening entity oversight are carried out in the Entity Oversight programme, which has an allocation of R4.6 billion over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

Developing a responsive communications policy and regulatory framework

The department is committed to promoting an informed citizenry through developing a responsive communications policy and regulatory framework. As such, over the medium term, the department will focus on amending and updating communications policies to ensure they are aligned with international standards, especially in relation to online and on-demand broadcasting. As this involves content classification, it will ensure that children are protected from harmful content and cyberbullying.

To promote a vibrant community media and communications sector, over the MTEF period, the department plans to launch an appropriate course curriculum for digital media literacy in line with international best practice. This is expected to be done in partnership with private institutions and individuals, including NGOs and other civil society organisations.

The department also plans to develop and implement the Audio-Visual and Digital Content Bill, and a charter for media transformation and diversity; and review and finalise the Media Development and Diversity Amendment Bill, which seeks to update outdated laws. These activities are carried out in the Communications Policy, Research and Development programme, which has a budget of R52.8 million over the MTEF period.

DoC legislation

The department is responsible for the administration and implementation of the following legislation:

- The Films and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996).
- The Broadcasting Act, 1999 (Act 4 of 1999).
- The MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002).
- The ICASA Act, 2000 (Act 13 of 2000).
- The Electronic Communications and Transactions Act, 2002 (Act 25 of 2002).
- The Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005).

Budget

The department's budget allocation for the 2018/19 financial year was R1.5 billion. Over the MTEF period, 91.3% (R4.6 billion) of the department's total budget will be transferred to entities for the implementation of communications and broadcasting policies, while 28.4% (R1.4 billion) will be transferred to the GCIS to carry out its functions. The remaining 8.7% (R431.2 million) will be used by the department for its operating costs, of which R282.3 million will be spent on compensation of employees, and R148.6 million on goods and services.

DoC entities

Brand SA

Brand SA develops and implements a proactive and coordinated international marketing and communication strategy for South Africa to contribute to job creation and poverty reduction; and to attract inward investment, trade and tourism.

The new slogan, “South Africa: Inspiring New Ways”, represents the next phase of the country’s development, where South Africa has moved from possibility to delivery, and is now an important regional power.

Internationally, Brand SA lobbies and networks extensively among global opinion leaders to shift perceptions about the country and the continent.

Being a member of the Brazil-Russia-India-China-South Africa (BRICS) trade bloc, for example, provides a platform to engage and influence perceptions.

Brand SA also regularly brings groups of international journalists to the country to interact with government and business representatives, experience local life and culture, and learn about the country’s latest technological developments.

The organisation’s total budget for 2018/19 was R200.4 million.

Film and Publication Board

The FPB assists the public to make informed choices about whether a particular film is appropriate by displaying guidelines that identify classifiable elements such as strong language, violence, sex, nudity, drug abuse, blasphemy and religious prejudice.

The Films and Publications Act of 1996 recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression with the exception when it comes to child pornography; it therefore requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children.

The board spearheads a national anti-child-pornography campaign to educate learners about ways to avoid victimisation. Child-pornography websites can be reported by calling the board’s toll-free number 0800 148 148.

Over the medium term, the FPB will focus on:

- informing and educating society to empower adults and protect children against harmful content
- implementing compliance as well as monitoring and evaluation
- developing leading-edge technology to perform online content regulation, classify content for films, games and adult publications
- conducting research on the impact of content on the public.

The Film and Publication Board regulates and controls the creation, production, possession, exhibition and distribution of

certain films, interactive computer games and publications in terms of the Films and Publications Act of 1996. The board is also responsible for monitoring age restricted business premises for compliance with their licence and registration terms. The board’s total budget for 2018/19 was R94.6 million.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

ICASA was established in July 2000 as a merger of the telecommunications regulator, the South African Telecommunications Regulatory Authority and the Independent Broadcasting Authority.

The ICASA Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 2 of 2014) provided for the additional incorporation of the Postal Regulator into ICASA. It also increased ICASA’s council complement from seven to nine councillors.

ICASA is responsible for regulating the telecommunications, broadcasting and postal industries in the public interest and ensure affordable services of a high quality for all South Africans. ICASA is further tasked with:

- issuing licences to telecommunications and broadcasting service providers
- enforcing compliance with rules and regulations
- protecting consumers from unfair business practices and poor quality services
- hearing and deciding on disputes and complaints brought against licensees
- controlling and managing the effective use of radio frequency spectrum.

ICASA is a Chapter 9 institution in terms of the South African Constitution and is an entity of the DoC.

The NDP recognises the need for universal access to and the availability of a wide range of services at a cost and quality at least equal to South Africa’s main peers and competitors. Over the medium term, ICASA will focus on increasing access to wireless broadband services to meet the demand for them; protecting consumers against harmful practices employed by operators in the use of premium-rated services; increasing competition in the telecommunications and broadcasting sector; and developing a framework for dynamic spectrum management.

The authority contributes to outcome 14 (nation building and social cohesion), and indirectly to outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) and outcome 12 (an efficient, effective and development oriented public service), of government’s 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework.

The authority plans to increase competition in the telecommunications and broadcast sector by regulating the industry and making sure that all licensees have equal

opportunities. The authority plans to protect consumers against harmful practices employed by operators in the use of premium rated services by reviewing the number of portability regulations in the telecommunications sector. In the commercial broadcasting sector, the authority is set to license the multiplex 3 frequency spectrum and free to air television services. These activities are budgeted for in the licensing programme with an allocation of R168.3 million over the medium term. To promote competition in the sector, the authority seeks to increase access of the high demand spectrum from the current 566.695MHz to 890.305MHz by 2020/21. Access to spectrum will enable the authority to rollout wireless broadband infrastructure by licences.

To meet the demand for wireless broadband services, the authority is set to increase mobile network coverage by 15% and extend network traffic measurements to include data and voice calls. The authority also plans to obtain inputs from the 5G Forum global network, and update the national radio frequency plan and radio frequency migration strategy. A projected R58.5million is allocated in the engineering and technology programme over the medium term to facilitate effective competition in the ICT sector by 2020/21.

The authority expects to derive 93.9% of its revenue over the medium term through transfers from the department and 6.1% from licence fees. Revenue is expected to increase to R518.4 million in 2020/21 – at an average annual rate of 4.3%.

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA promotes media development and diversity to ensure that all citizens can access information in a language of their choice; and to transform media access, ownership and control patterns in South Africa. It was established in terms of the MDDA Act of 2002.

A public-private partnership, the MDDA’s mandate is to promote media development and diversity by providing the most disadvantaged, those traditionally sidelined by the mainstream media, access to information in the language of their communities.

The agency functions independently from and at arm’s length of its funders and political-party and commercial interests. This arrangement enables Government, the media industry and donors to work together to address the legacy of imbalances in media access.

Its mandate includes:

- creating an enabling environment for media development and diversity that reflects the needs and aspirations of all South Africans
- redressing exclusion and marginalisation of disadvantaged communities and people from access to the media and the media industry

- promoting media development and diversity by providing support primarily to community and small commercial media projects
- encouraging ownership and control of, and access to, media by historically disadvantaged communities as well as by historically diminished indigenous language and cultural groups
- encouraging the development of human resources and training as well as capacity-building within the media industry, especially among historically disadvantaged groups
- encouraging the channelling of resources to the community media and small commercial media sectors
- raising public awareness with regard to media development and diversity issues.

Over the medium term, the agency's service delivery priority will be on encouraging media diversity in a rapidly changing telecommunications environment. Its core activities will continue to be financial and non-financial support of community broadcast and community and small commercial print projects. This will cover grant funding to strengthen existing projects and enhance their sustainability, and to fund new projects, with an emphasis on the promotion of indigenous languages and making a contribution to community development and the alleviation of poverty and inequality. Financial support through grant funding initiatives will be R133million over the medium term.

The MDDA is actively trying to build relationships with key stakeholders to enable it to increase the financial resources available to the community media sector. The positive impact will add to the funds set aside over the MTEF for community media. The agency aims to support around 120 projects over the medium term. The MDDA will focus its capacity building initiatives on supporting content generation by the community media, as well as addressing other urgent needs of the sector, such as governance training, in an effort to further ensure its sustainability. Over the medium term, some 120 projects will be capacitated to assist in closing the skills gaps in these various areas.

Community broadcast grants account for 47% of the agency's total budget over the medium term, while overall spending on print and digital and community broadcast projects is expected to decrease by an average of 5.4 % over the medium term as a result of no funding from print media. Total funding to the agency' by the DoC is expected to be R99 million over the medium term. The agency no longer receives funding from the print media but is engaging the sector in order to revive this revenue stream. Broadcast funders will provide an average of R97 million over the medium term.

Continued stakeholder engagement and lobbying initiatives

are being carried out to ensure the MDDA is financially empowered to achieve and make significant impact in line with its mandate

In its funding support of community and small commercial media projects, the MDDA applies a stringent set of criteria in order to identify those projects whose priority is to change material conditions in provinces and communities plagued by social and economic inequalities. In such circumstances, the broadcast or publishing language of the project is a key criterion as media in the language(s) of the community serves as a powerful platform to raise awareness around such issues and to increase access by communities to information.

Recently approved MDDA beneficiary projects illustrate how the community media sector, with the support of the MDDA, is delivering on this principle. Print and digital media projects approved by the MDDA Board for funding range from Mapepeza Newspaper, which distributes to the Lesedi Local Municipality in Gauteng, and publishes in mainly Zulu and Sesotho; to Nthakgolo News publishing in the Northern Cape's Sol Plaatje Local Municipality in Setswana and Xhosa. In the Western Cape, Mamre News, circulated on the Cape West Coast, is an Afrikaans and English paper, while The Youth Voice, Lerato La Thabo, targets the youth and schools of the Bushbuckridge Local Municipality in Mpumalanga, publishing 60% in Xitsonga. With the global trend to digital media, a notable project is the online publication, Kleva Nkleva Online in the Mpondoland region in the Eastern Cape, and publishing in IsiXhosa, IsiMpondo and English.

Similarly, broadcast projects approved for funding cover a wide geographic spread with North West based Diamond FM providing broadcast services, predominantly in Setswana, Sesotho and English, to the Maquassie Hills Municipality, and Rise FM, broadcasting in IsiZulu and IsiSwati, targeting the Ehlanzeni District Municipality in Mpumalanga. In Limpopo, Musina Community Radio from the Vhembe District Municipality, broadcasts mainly in Tshivenda, Sepedi and English, and Vuwani Community Radio broadcasts predominantly in Vhenda and Tsonga. In Gauteng, Ga Rankuwa Community Radio broadcasts to the City of Tshwane Metro in SeTswana, English and Sepedi, while Ugu Youth Radio in KwaZulu-Natal is a youth-initiated community radio, targeting the Ugu District Municipality mainly in IsiZulu.

The agency's total budget for 2018/19 was R66.9 million.

South African Broadcasting Corporation

The SABC is the country's only public service broadcaster. An Act of Parliament established the SABC in August 1936. At its inception, the SABC only had one English radio station. In 1976, it launched the country's then first and only television channel.

The SABC is made up of 18 radio stations, which cater for the country's 11 official languages, as well as the iXun and Khwe language.

The SABC radio stations have remained relevant, widely accessible and are a core platform for the public broadcaster to deliver on its public service mandate. The radio stations command an all-adult share (15+ years) of 70.5% which translates to 28 328 million South Africans.

The broadcaster also consists of three free-to-air channels and two other channels carried on a subscription digital satellite network. The channels deliver local and international content in all South Africa's languages throughout the nation. SABC1, SABC2 and SABC3 attract, on average, 28 million South African viewers in a typical month.

The SABC, which is governed by the Broadcasting Act of 1999 (as amended), has developed editorial policies which guide and give direction to the corporation's public broadcasting mandate and licence conditions, as set by ICASA and the provisions of the Broadcasting Act of 1999.

The organisation's vision, "Broadcast for Total Citizen Empowerment", propels it in fulfilling its public-service mandate as a broadcaster.

The SABC remains South Africa's most accessible broadcaster and therefore government continues to support it to discharge its public broadcasting service mandate. The DoC has a duty to promote the growth and development of the local content industries to ensure that there is enough content for digital platforms in all 11 official languages.

Over the medium term, the SABC is focusing on improving the quality, diversity and accessibility of content, and embracing diversity by acquiring and/or producing content from various demographic groups. The corporation contributes towards the NDP's vision of developing South Africa into an informed and literate nation. Its work is aligned with outcome 12 (an efficient, effective and development oriented public service) of government's 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework.

The corporation plans to facilitate diverse programming by producing content that represents all demographic groups within the country, as well as content in marginalised languages. The corporation projects to spend R184.1 million over the MTEF period in the administration programme on producing multilingual broadcasts on Channel Africa in Southern Africa, East Africa and West Africa. An estimated R412 million will be spent over the medium term to produce educational programmes on all channels.

The corporation will continue to improve the quality, diversity and accessibility of content by producing news and current affairs content, and acquiring television and radio programmes. An estimated R7.9 billion is allocated over the MTEF period in

the local content delivery: television programme for this. The corporation plans to spend a further R1.8 billion in the sports programme over the same period to broadcast all sporting codes of national interest.

The corporation expects to generate 97.2% of its revenue over the medium term from licence fees, commercial revenue from advertising, and sport sponsorship across television, radio and online platforms. Revenue is expected to increase to R8.5 billion in 2020/21, at an average annual rate of 3.8%.

Government Communication and Information System

The GCIS mandate is to serve as the central communications agency of government, leading the reconstruction and development of post-apartheid South Africa. The GCIS mobilises the nation behind the NDP, showcases progress and invites South Africans to work together to address challenges is critical to the achievement of Vision 2030.

The GCIS is responsible for informing all citizens of South Africa about government's work and how they can participate in governance and consolidating the country's democracy.

The GCIS has a responsibility to act in the interest of all South Africans, without discrimination and to communicate effectively in all official languages and reach all communities in urban, peri-urban and rural areas.

The GCIS reaches millions of South Africans through different platforms, which include publications, the news media, radio, television and *izimbizo*.

Cabinet directed the department to reposition the Thusong Service Centres programme to widen government access. Repositioning means the department, working with partner departments, will have to look at the possibility of identifying the suitable structure, platforms and partnerships to effectively fulfil the mandate of the programme, which is not only limited to information.

The GCIS continues to enhance existing communication platforms and products, and initiate new ones to ensure that targeted audiences and communities receive relevant information through various means.

It is also establishing partnerships with strategic stakeholders within the three spheres of government, and within broader society, to achieve more extensive reach into the country's diverse communities.

The GCIS supports municipalities in their communication, with preference given to municipalities that are part of the Local Government Turnaround Strategy, to close the gap between municipalities and communities, which sometimes contributes to the factors behind protests in some communities.

The department has a mandate to ensure that Government's vision and policies are clearly understood in the Public Service. The GCIS coordinates the Internal Communicators' Forum, to ensure messages disseminated across the various channels and outlets managed by departments are coherent.

Providing and facilitating strategic government communication

One of the key functions of the department is to provide information about government policies, plans, programmes and activities to the public. Accordingly, the department plans to produce and publish 14 788 various communication products and reports over the medium term. This excludes the production and distribution of 18.7 million copies of 22 editions of the *Vuk'uzenzele* newspaper and 9 600 Braille copies of the publication in each year over the medium term. *Vuk'uzenzele* is a free national government newspaper. It is the only newspaper in the country available in Braille and all official languages.

Information published in *Vuk'uzenzele* focuses on key government priorities, such as issues affecting youth, service delivery and rural development, and includes advertisements for vacant posts in government. The printing and distribution cost of *Vuk'uzenzele* will amount to R87 million over the medium term.

The online version of the newspaper is due for further enhancement and improved usability.

SAnews.gov.za produces hard news and human-interest features, and carries many exciting pictures as well as video content on YouTube. It is also available on Facebook and Twitter.

The government news agency has become more popular with the public and it will continue to be marketed to the broader public as a complement to South Africa's rapidly diversifying news and information mix. It has also entered into mutual-cooperation agreements with various foreign news agencies.

The department also plans to produce 36 analysis reports based on research surveys conducted on behalf of various national departments and premiers' offices. These reports seek to provide guidance and assistance to government communicators in departments and premiers' offices on how to develop communication strategies, and to understand the broader communications environment.

The department also drives a proactive and reactive media liaison strategy by hosting cluster and Cabinet media briefings, and communicating directly with the public through direct communication activities such as door-to-door, community workshops and gatherings in all provinces. These activities are carried out in the Content Processing and Dissemination programme, which has a total budget of R489.4 million over the medium term.

To reduce government's cost of media advertising while maintaining the visibility of government's communication campaigns, over the medium term, the department plans to provide media advertising bulk buying and media production services to other government departments. As such, the department aims to provide approximately 1 000 media advertising bulk buying services over the MTEF period; and annual media production services that include 1 000 photographic and video products and services, and 240 radio products and services. These products and services include advertisements, the hosting of talk shows, the compilation of voice-overs, and video and photographic services to client departments and public entities, and are funded through the communication budgets of the respective client departments and entities.

Through the Media Engagement Facility subprogramme in the Intergovernmental Coordination and Stakeholder Management programme, the department will continue to manage the interface between government, and commercial and community media. In doing so, it will, among other things, coordinate a support function across government departments on the occasion of key communication projects carried out by the president and deputy president, and for cluster media programmes.

The subprogramme also manages daily responses to issues in the communication environment through the GCIS rapid response function. To carry out activities related to interface management, R9.4 million is allocated over the MTEF period in the Intergovernmental Coordination and Stakeholder Management programme, which has a total budget of R402.1 million over the MTEF period.

The GCIS, through its media-buying operation, continues to support the financial viability of a diverse community media sector, by placing over R38 million in advertising in the community press, radio and television.

Facilitating active citizen participation

The department is committed to aligning provincial and local communications strategies to the national communication strategy framework. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department plans to conduct an estimated 9 300 outreach campaigns to improve public participation in government policies, plans, programmes and achievements.

These include the development of 1 140 development communication activations per year, 1 710 community and stakeholder liaison visits per year, and 252 marketing events at Thusong service centres per year. These initiatives are expected to deliver information to more than one million people per month through direct and indirect communication with citizens,

community radio talk shows, community newspapers, and awareness campaigns. These activities are carried out in the Intergovernmental Coordination and Stakeholder Management programme at an estimated cost of R10 million over the medium term.

Over the same period, the department plans to continue the Imbizo programme, which facilitates interactions between political principals and the public, and develops content for print and electronic products, including leaflets during the State of the Nation Address. An additional R1 million in the Intergovernmental Coordination and Stakeholder Management programme is allocated over the medium term to carry out activities related to the Imbizo programme.

Other communications activities include compiling annual online editions of the *South Africa Yearbook* and *Official Guide to South Africa*, providing daily government news and updates on *sanews.gov.za*, updating content on government's website (*www.gov.za*), and producing 12 annual reports on the performance of government's social media accounts.

Department of Telecommunications and Postal Services

The mandate of the DTPS is to create a vibrant ICT sector that ensures that all South Africans have access to robust, reliable, affordable and secure ICT services to advance socio-economic development goals and support the Africa agenda and contribute to building a better world.

The core functions of the DTPS include developing ICT policies and legislation; and ensuring the development of robust, reliable, secure and affordable ICT infrastructure that supports and enables the provision of a multiplicity of applications and services to meet the needs of the country and its people. The main focus of the of the DTPS is to roll-out ICT infrastructure, applications and services, postal and banking services, developing e-strategies to roll-out e-Government and e-sectoral services and promoting cybersecurity and the security of networks.

The state-owned enterprises (SEOs) under the DTPS are the South African Post Office (SAPO), Sentech, the National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (NEMISA), the Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (USAASA), .za Domain Name Authority (ZADNA), Broadband Infraco (BBI) and the State Information Technology Agency (SITA).

The department's objectives are in line with the country's NDP, which recommends developing a coordinated and enabling ICT strategy and a plan that cuts across government departments and sectors to improve e-literacy, and provide

clarity on the roles and functions of the State to prevent unintended policy outcomes.

The *National Integrated ICT White Paper* replaces the *White Paper on Telecommunications (1996)* and the *White Paper on Postal Services (1998)*. It responds to the development of technology, including convergence, digitisation, the increasing use of the Internet, and how South Africans communicate, work and interact with Government.

The policy is a strategic instrument to implement what is envisaged by the NDP as it introduces a range of interventions to ensure everyone in South Africa, irrespective where they live or their socio-economic status can access the benefits of participating in the digital society.

The White Paper lays the foundation for realising the NDP vision for the ICT sector to create "a seamless information infrastructure by 2030 that will underpin a dynamic and connected vibrant information society and a knowledge economy that is more inclusive, equitable and prosperous."

The department has the following key priorities:

- Implementing the *National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper*
- Implementing the ICT SMME Development Strategy
- Implementing the e-Government Strategy
- Broadband connectivity
- SOC Rationalisation
- Ensuring that South Africa is among the top ICT leaders globally.

South Africa Connect, the National Broadband Policy, and the associated strategy and plan, was development in response to South Africa's vision in the NDP of "a seamless information infrastructure by 2030 that will underpin a dynamic and connected vibrant information society and a knowledge economy that is more inclusive, equitable and prosperous."

Provinces have recognised broadband as a key enabler for economic development. All provinces are actively pursuing broadband plans/strategies, and they are at different levels of implementation. The department continues to play the key role of coordinating and collaborating with provinces through provincial broadband steering committees to achieve alignment with South Africa Connect objectives.

The department's key objective is to provide access to quality, affordable and safe ubiquitous high-speed broadband. To achieve this objective the department has commenced with the implementation of the first phase of South Africa Connect, which is focused at providing broadband connectivity to the eight National Health Insurance (NHI) sites. The department has mandated its entities, SITA and BBI, the first phase, which will continue through the upcoming MTEF period. Focus will also be on securing funding options for the second phase of the broadband rollout.

Furthermore, going forward, the department will operationalize the National Rapid Deployment Coordination Centre, in line with the Rapid Deployment Policy, to expedite the rapid deployment of electronic communication facilities.

Budget

The DTPS had a total adjusted appropriation baseline allocation of R4.006 billion for the 2018/19 financial year. The adjusted allocation for 2018/19 decreased by 22.5% compared to the previous financial year allocation of R5.174 billion. Of the total allocation, transfers and subsidies amounts to R497.5 million (12%) of the total budget. These transfers were mainly to departmental agencies and accounts, as well as allocations for Digital Broadcasting Migration. Payment for financial assets amount to R2.947 billion (73.5%) of the available budget and it was allocated for the purposes of recapitalisation of the SAPO.

The allocation for goods and services amounts to R316.9 million (8%) of the total budget. The allocation for compensation of employees amounts to R224.3 million (6%), while R21.3 million (0, 5%) was allocated as payment for capital assets.

The spending of the third quarter for the 2018/19 financial year amount to R714.9 million (17.8%) of the adjusted budget of R4.006 billion.

Revenue in the first six months of 2018/19 was R516,1 million, or 99.7% of the adjusted revenue estimate of R517.8,% for the year. In comparison, mid-year departmental receipts in 2017/18 amounted to R653.5 million, revenue over the same period increased by R137 million.

Legislation

In executing its role, the department is guided by the following legislation:

- Sentech Act, 1996 (Act 63 of 1996);
- Postal Service Act, 1998 (Act 124 of 1998);
- DoC Rationalisation Act, 1998 (Act 10 of 1998);
- Electronic Communications and Transactions Act, 2002 (Act 25 of 2002);
- Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, 2000 (Act 13 of 2000);
- South African Post Bank Limited Act, 2010 (Act 9 of 2010);
- South African Post Office SOC Ltd Act, 2011 (Act 22 of 2011);
- State Information Technology Agency Act, 1998 (Act 88 of 1998);
- Broadband Infraco Act, 2007 (Act 33 of 2007);
- Independent Communications Authority of South Africa Act, 2000 (Act 13 of 2000); and
- Electronic Communications Act, 2005 (Act 36 of 2005)

The Electronic Communications Act of 2005 allows the Minister of Telecommunications and Postal Services to draft policies

to fulfil South Africa's obligations under bilateral, multilateral and international treaties and conventions; set guidelines for the determination of certain licence fees by ICASA; promote universal service and electronic communications services in underserved areas; promote the participation of small business in the ICT sector; and enhance the capacity of and exercise oversight of SOEs.

DTPS entities

South African Post Office

SAPO is a Schedule 2 Public Entity in terms of the Public Finance Management Act of 1999 (PFMA). It is a government business enterprise established to provide postal and related services to the public, and derives its mandate from the Postal Services Act of 1998, SAPO SOC Ltd Act of 2011 and the South African Postbank Limited Act of 2010.

The Postal Services Act of 1998 grants it an exclusive mandate to conduct postal services. This Act makes provision for the regulation of postal services and operational functions of the postal company, including universal service obligations and the financial services activities of Postbank.

The department has revised the Postal Policy as contained in the 2016 *ICT White Paper to reposition SAPO* in line with the digital era. Within the revised Postal Policy, SAPO has opportunities to expand on its service offerings, taking into account the developments within the ICT space, especially electronic-commerce and partnership opportunities. The amendments of the postal legislations are accordingly embarked upon in order to align the Acts with the revised ICT policy. The objectives of the amendments include making provisions for:

- Repositioning SAPO to take advantage of new opportunities brought by digital technologies and ensuring that it contribute to e-Government by providing services on behalf of government departments and e-commerce platform;
- Universal postal services and access and availability of ICTs and government services in post offices (access points for multiple governments and other commercial services);
- Utilisation of SAPO's infrastructure to provide financial and government services among others; and
- Development of a framework for the funding of the universal postal services.

The principles of relevance, reliability, resilience and reach were used as guidelines in establishing the strategic objectives of the SAPO.

The entity's strategic goals are:

- to have efficient systems and processes,
- to optimise assets and infrastructure,
- to diversify funding and revenue,
- future products and services,

- to put customers and communities first, and
- to create a culture of excellence.

Post offices are becoming important service-delivery centres not only for postal services but also for government services, financial services and other services and thus offering more South Africans a convenient place to access services, especially in rural communities and underserved communities. Over the past year, more focus was placed on leveraging the SAPO infrastructure to promote access to essential services. The appointment of SAPO as government's delivery agent for the distribution of social grants is a great milestone, which is aligned to the revised policy envisioned in the *ICT White Paper of 2016*.

Other examples of government services offered through the Post Office as a delivery arm include the renewal of motor vehicle licences, delivery of study material and the payment of bills (municipal services).

SAPO is also focusing on continuing to provide access to postal and related services, and increasing the number of addresses to allow wider access to postal and financial services in underserved areas. By 31 January 2019, the utility had rolled out 4.9 million addresses against a target of 3.5 million.

It also maintains 2.190 points of presence (which include post offices, mobile units and retail postal agencies).

To ensure the growth and sustainability of the postal sector, the department supports the implementation of a strategic turnaround plan and universal service obligation, and thus motivating for funding through MTEF processes. The following funding was made available to SAPO in the past five years and the current MTEF period:

- 2014/15 financial year: R50 million
 - 2015/16 financial year: R115 092 000
 - 2016/17 financial year: R890 million (R650 million allocation plus R240 million for DTT)
 - 2017/18 financial year: R3 940 000 000 (R3,7 billion allocation plus R240 million for DTT)
 - 2018/19 financial year: R2 947 300 000
- The 2019/20 to 2021/22 MTEF allocation for universal service obligation is as follows:
- 2019/20 financial year: R474 624 000
 - 2020/21 financial year: R500 731 000
 - 2021/22 financial year: R528 276 000

During the periods when government funding was still being sourced SAPO was supported with the issuance of government guarantees which assisted to raise borrowings.

The SAPO is also embarking on revenue diversification initiatives which include establishing itself as an e-commerce platform. The utility has been selected to be part of the Universal Postal Union's (UPU) Ecom@Africa project initiative which is aimed at positioning the African posts as key enablers and

facilitators of e-commerce. This is a great opportunity for the the SAPO and it is critical in reinforcing international supply chains platforms and realizing the potential of e-commerce for citizens and businesses worldwide. It will also go a long way towards enabling the SMMEs to overcome the infrastructural, socio-political, financial and related barriers to e-commerce and create employment opportunities. More focus is thus placed on the efforts to develop the SAPO's ecommerce capabilities.

The SAPO is currently exploring the restructuring of its operations in order to streamline various business units into distinct lines of business to promote greater efficiencies. This is incorporating review of its operating model to reduce heavy reliance on mail revenue.

The SAPO has the capabilities and potential to contribute to all the objectives of the NDP, utilising its broad reach infrastructure as an interface between the public and various role players in different sectors of the economy, including the government.

The SAPO's points of presence are being positioned to be utilized for broadband connectivity around the country. The department is working with the SAPO to prioritise the connectivity of the relevant sites.

Postbank Corporatisation

SARB is still assessing the application for a license to establish a Postbank.

The following milestones have been achieved to date on the Postbank Corporatisation process:

- Appointment of the initial board members,
- Registration of the South African Postbank Limited SOC with the Companies and Intellectual Property Commission,
- Amendments to the Banks Act, 1990 (Act 94 of 1990) to enable state owned companies to be registered as both a bank and bank controlling companies, and
- Determination of the extent of business to be separated between SAPO and Postbank.

The options on the establishment of the Bank Controlling Company structure for the Postbank have been completed.

Sentech

Sentech Limited is an SEO established in terms of the Sentech Act of 1996 and is listed as a schedule 3B public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. The company is mandated to provide broadcasting signal distribution for broadcasting licensees, with a particular focus on accelerating the implementation of government ICT interventions within the framework of the NDP and the strategic integrated project for expanding access to communication technology.

In 2002, the company's mandate was expanded to provide an international voice gateway and common carrier multimedia

services in accordance with government's imperative to liberalise the telecommunications sector.

The entity's strategic goals over the medium term were to:

- align its strategic roadmap with shareholder programmes to enable the development of open access government participation in the communications industry through infrastructure-based investment
- continue working to support and realise government's ICT vision and goals, including innovation in broadcasting and media services, and content management and distribution
- create solutions that enhance the customer experience and are in line with government's mandate of access to communication services for all citizens
- repackage social responsibility interventions and create community social investment ICT programmes that improve lives, create value and are sustainable.

Sentech derives commercial revenue from terrestrial television services, terrestrial FM and AM radio services, satellite linking, facility rentals and the sale of satellite decoders.

National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa

The National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (NEMISA) was established as a non-profit institute for education in terms of the Companies Act of 1973 and is listed as a schedule 3A public entity in terms of the PFMA of 1999. The institute's programmes are structured to enhance the market readiness of students in a wide range of broadcasting disciplines.

Its mandate is to expand to include the development of South Africans' digital skills capacity, and it is accordingly responsible for the implementation of digital skills programmes, including broadcasting, in collaboration with its partners.

The process to re-establish the entity as the iKamva National e-Skills Institute over the medium term is under way, including its merger with the e-Skills Institute and the Institute for Space and Software Applications. The rationale for the merger is to consolidate electronic media support institutions into a single organisation to improve coordination, avoid duplication and improve outcomes in the sector.

The new entity will provide additional digital skills programmes undertaken through collaborative laboratories, which are responsible for one or more of the identified digital skills priority areas in higher learning institutions. The identified digital skills priority areas include government e-enablement, creative new media industries, e-inclusion and social innovation, knowledge-based economies and e-literacy, ICT for rural development, e-health, e-tourism and e-agriculture.

Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa

The Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa

was established in terms of section 80 of the Electronic Communications Act of 2005 as a statutory body and is listed as a schedule 3A public entity in terms of the PFMA. Its sole mandate is to promote universal service and access to electronic communications services, electronic communications network services, and broadcasting services. The 2016 *White Paper on National Integrated ICT Policy* recommends changes to the mandate and structure of the Agency. The Agency is responsible for managing the Universal Service and Access Fund.

State Information Technology Agency

SITA was established in 1999 to consolidate and coordinate the State's information technology resources in order to achieve cost savings through scale, increase delivery capabilities and enhance interoperability. SITA is committed to leveraging Information Technology (IT) as a strategic resource for government, managing the IT procurement and delivery process to ensure that the government gets value for money, and using IT to support the delivery of e-Government services to all citizens.

.za Domain Name Authority

ZADNA is a statutory, not-for-profit entity established in terms of Chapter X of the Electronic Communications and Transactions Act 25, 2002 (Act 25 of 2002) to administer, manage and regulate the .ZA namespace. Its mandate is to:

- Manage and administer the .ZA namespace,
- License and regulate the .ZA policy,
- Monitoring and compliance,
- Domain name awareness and education,
- Research and development, and
- Making relevant policy recommendation to the minister.

Broadband Infraco

BBI sells high-capacity long-distance transmission services to licensed fixed and mobile network operators, internet service providers and other value-added network service providers.

In advancing inclusive growth, Broadband Infraco continues to connect black-owned regional internet service providers such as Galela, Umzinyathi and Brightwave technologies.

To enhance South Africa's international connectivity and the speed of broadband, Broadband Infraco has co-invested with the private sector in the deployment of the West African Cable System (WACS).

The WACS is the fifth submarine cable system linking South Africa to the world. Broadband Infraco's investment in the WACS entitled it to 11.4% of the system's total capacity, which would help South Africa meet its target of providing broadband connectivity to all who need it by 2020.

The cable system has 15 established terminal stations en route, and will reduce the cost to connect Africa's west coast with the high-speed global telecommunications network for years to come.

Programmes and initiatives

National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper

The *National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper* was developed to respond to the development of converged technologies, digitisation, the increasing use of the Internet, and how South Africans communicate, work and interact with the government.

The White Paper is a strategic instrument to implement what is envisaged by the NDP as it introduces a range of interventions to ensure everyone in South Africa, irrespective of where they live or their socio-economic status can enjoy the benefits of using in the digital society.

Following Cabinet approval of the White Paper in September 2016, the department has prioritised the phased implementation of the White Paper over the medium term. The department plans to draft identified bills stemming from the *National Integrated ICT Policy White Paper*. Such identified legislation will, in the short to medium term, include amendments to the State IT Agency Act, 1998 (Act 88 of 1998), the ICT Sector Commission and Tribunal Bill as well as the Digital Development Fund Bill. Furthermore, the department will focus on the development of a Big Data, Cloud and Cybersecurity Policy to ensure that South Africa is up to speed and remains relevant in this fast changing technological era.

The iKamva National e-Skills Institute Bill, which seeks to create a public entity that will be a national catalyst, and change agent for developing e-skills capacity in the country, was introduced in Parliament in March 2018.

ICT SMME Development Strategy

The South African government is aware that addressing problems confronting the country's economy and that reversing the unemployment rate requires a radical policy shift that recognises the urgent need to invest in small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs) as they are key drivers of economic growth and job creation. The ICT SMME Development Strategy focuses on key interventions to accelerate the development, growth and sustainability of small and medium enterprises in the ICT sector, and aims to facilitate increase in the levels of uptake and usage of ICTs by the general small business sector. In this regard, the focus over the medium term will be on facilitating the implementation of the ICT SMME Development Strategy.

Broadband Connectivity

The DTPS's key objective is to provide access to quality,

affordable and safe ubiquitous high-speed broadband. To achieve this objective the department has commenced with the implementation of Phase 1 of SA Connect, which is focused on providing Broadband connectivity to all government facilities (i.e. schools, health facilities and government offices) in eight district municipalities that also forms part of the NHI pilot project. The department has mandated its entities, SITA and BBI, to implement Phase 1 of SA Connect, which will continue through the upcoming MTEF period. Focus will also be on securing funding for Phase 2 (broadband rollout).

Provinces have identified broadband as a key enabler for economic development. All provinces are actively pursuing broadband plans/strategies, and they are at different levels of implementation. The department continues to play a key role of coordinating and collaborating with provinces through provincial broadband steering committees to achieve alignment with SA Connect objectives.

Furthermore, the department plans to continue to operationalize the National Rapid Deployment Coordination Centre, in line with the Rapid Deployment Policy, to expedite the rapid deployment of electronic communication facilities.

SOC Rationalisation

As part of plans to strengthen the role of SOCs and support government's developments goals, Cabinet approved a framework for the establishment of a State ICT Infrastructure Company through the merger of SENTECH and BBI as the first phase, and the State IT Company by repurposing SITA.

The Department will focus on submitting such legislation to Cabinet. The impact of such legislation is aimed at increasing investment in ICT Infrastructure, improving the performance of the SOEs under the DTPS portfolio, promoting innovation and transforming the ICT sector as a catalyst for economic growth.

e-Government Strategy

The implementation of the National e-Government Strategy and Roadmap is essential for the transformation and modernisation of public service delivery as it provides an enormous opportunity to deliver government services without having to rely on manual processes that require human intervention.

The National e-Government Strategy and Roadmap is to guide the digital transformation of public service in South Africa into an inclusive digital society where all citizens can benefit from the opportunities offered by digital technologies to improve their quality of life. This will contribute towards the reduction of poverty and inequality by ensuring that government services are delivered to all citizens through the use of ICTs.

The implementation of the strategy is, therefore, essential for the transformation and modernisation of public service delivery

as it provides an enormous opportunity to deliver government services without having to rely on manual processes that require human intervention.

In the medium term, the department plans to focus on facilitating and coordinating the implementation of the Strategy together with relevant stakeholders. SITA is the lead agency in the digital transformation of government services, collaborating with the various government departments to realise a digital government that embraces citizen centrality.

Preparing South Africa for the Fourth Industrial Revolution

The Fourth Industrial Revolution (4IR) has necessitated that countries develop new policies, strategies and innovation plans to enable an inclusive developmental approach that will comprise of the representatives of a cross section of stakeholders, including the public sector, business, academia and research institutions, experts, labour, SMMEs, youth, women and non-governmental organizations. In essence, South African policies, strategies and plans should seek to advance the goals of inclusivity and shared growth. A core short-term focus of South Africa's national response will be on the impact of the changing technological landscape on the economy and employment.

In the medium term, the country needs a more broad-based approach that looks at threats and opportunities that technological change and convergence will have on South Africa's other development imperatives including; economic infrastructure, environmental sustainability and transitioning to a low-carbon economy, an integrated and inclusive rural economy, human settlements, education, training and innovation, health, social protection, safer communities, and building a capable and developmental state.

The DTPS's priorities are anchored in an endeavour to prepare South Africa for the 4IR. Key initiatives in this regard will include coordinating the establishment of the Presidential Advisory Council on the 4IR to ensure that the country is in a position to seize the opportunities and manage the challenges of rapid advances in ICT. The council will act as an advisory body that will ensure that South Africa leverage on the benefits of the latest technology by coordinating and planning across the industries and sectors that will underpin the drive towards the 4IR.

The council will also serve as a platform to address challenges identified through research and consultation and ensure that ICTs are regarded as drivers in creating jobs, through innovations and development of ICT SMMEs.

Focus will also be on the establishment of the Digital Transformation Centre to build capacity around standardisation, intellectual property management and conformance testing to

boost localization and the manufacturing of new technologies. Furthermore, the department will focus on the development of the National Digital Skills Strategy, which will address the need for future digital skills while taking into consideration the existing skills gaps in South Africa.

The department will also continue with the implementation of various other elements of the National e-Government Strategy aimed at stimulating sector growth and innovation by driving public and private ICT investment, especially in network upgrades and expansion (particularly in broadband) and development of local content and applications.

Positioning South Africa as a global ICT leader

The department's international programme is focused on positioning South Africa as global ICT leader; influencing the debates and decisions of multilateral organisations in favour of national interest and development agenda; increasing investment in the economy; and promoting South African business and technological capabilities.

In the 2018/19 financial year, South Africa was elected to the International Telecommunications Union (ITU) Council for the period 2019 – 2022. Manager: Radiocommunications at ICASA, Mandla Mchunu, representing South Africa, was also elected to the Radio Regulations Board of the ITU for the period 2019 – 2022. South Africa was also elected to the African Telecommunications Union (ATU) Council for the same period.

Over and above that, South Africa has been appointed to Chair the ATU 4IR Committee that will oversee the development of the African Strategy for 4IR. South Africa also chairs the Southern African Development Community for 4IR programme, as well as the SADC Shared Satellite Programme. The country's participation and leadership in the continent and globally primarily focuses on ensuring that Africa owns and capitalises on its own technological resources and capabilities in order to contribute to national GDPs and build the digital economy.

In 2018, the department hosted the first ITU Telecom World to be held in Africa. This is an annual ICT event organised by ITU Telecom, part of the International Telecommunication Union (ITU), the UN agency responsible for ICT-related issues. Twenty three SMMEs from South Africa were shortlisted for the Telecom World awards while, 22 SMMEs from the continent were also shortlisted. Pulego Communications won the overall Global SME Excellence Award for Innovation with the greatest social impact, Tuse Communications won the Best Business Model Category; and Uthini won the Most Innovative use of ICT category.

As a legacy of the ITU Telecom World, the department has launched a Digital Transformation Centre whose objective is to incubate enterprise talent and harness innovation. With

the support from ITU, the World Economic Forum and other partners, the centre will support the entry and growth of SMMEs in various aspects of these future communication systems and networks, focusing on management of intellectual property rights, standardisation, conformance testing, and SMME innovation. It will further support the production and usage of ICT technologies and break the current monopolies in the electronic manufacturing industry.

On the international postal programme, the country will continue to implement the UPU Ecom@Africa – an initiative aimed at positioning the postal network as a key enabler and facilitator of e-commerce. In 2018, South Africa, Tunisia and other African countries were successful in pursuing the Reform Agenda at the UPU. The outcomes of the UPU Extraordinary Congress were favourable to developing countries, in redressing the proportional geographic balance in the UPU governance structure. The department will continue to influence the global arena to influence digital transformation.

Internet

According to Statistics South Africa's General Household Survey (GHS) 2018, 64.7% of South African households had at least one member who had access to, or used the Internet either at home, work, place of study or Internet cafés. Access to the Internet using all available means was highest in Gauteng (74.6%), Western Cape (72.4%) and Mpumalanga (70.2%), and lowest in Limpopo (46.2%) and Eastern Cape (55.3%). Marginally over one-tenth (10.4%) of South African households had access to the Internet at home. Access to the Internet at home was highest among households in Western Cape (25.8%) and Gauteng (16.7%), and lowest in Limpopo (1.7%) and North West (3.0%).

Household access to the Internet at home was highest in Western Cape (25.8%) and Gauteng (16.7%) and lowest in Limpopo (1.7%). While 17.3% of households in metropolitan areas had access to the Internet at home, this was true for only 1.7% of rural households in general and less than one per cent of rural households in North West (0.8%) and Limpopo (0.6%). Households were generally more likely to have access to the Internet at work than at home or at Internet cafés or at educational institutions. Households in Gauteng and Western Cape were most likely to access the Internet at work while those in Limpopo were least likely to do so.

Mobile access to the Internet has made it much more accessible to households in rural areas. Nationally, Internet access using mobile devices (60.1%) was much more common than access at home (10.4%), at work (16.2%) and elsewhere (10.1%). Although the use of mobile Internet access devices in

rural areas (45.0%) still lags behind its use in metros (67.5%) and urban areas (63.7%), it is much more common in rural areas than any of the alternative methods.

Social media

The emergence of social media as a social and business communication tool in the last few years, has been dramatic.

In South Africa, a country where first and third-world conditions are often separated by just a few kilometres, social media has levelled the playing field and created a platform that is affordable for everyone, easy to use and highly effective as a communication tool.

Online retail

Latest stats from World Wide Worx reveal that online retail is projected to reach 1.4% of total retail in South Africa, based on an estimated R1-trillion to be spent via traditional channels in 2018. The 2% mark is likely to be reached by 2022.

The forecasts by World Wide Worx for the next three years, from 2018 to 2020, show online retail sales more than doubling to almost R20-billion, a year sooner than originally forecast in 2016.

Cybercrime and cybersecurity

Cyberspace comes with new types of challenges to the governments of the world and it therefore introduces a further dimension to national security.

The cyberworld is a borderless platform that enables more sophisticated threats such as cybercrime, cyberterrorism, cyberwar and cyber-espionage. For this reason, the cyberthreats need to be addressed at both the global and national levels.

The Cybersecurity Hub offers alerts and warnings, announcements, security-related information dissemination, incident-handling and incident response support as services to its constituents. These services can be categorised as proactive, reactive and social services.

Regarding incident-handling, incidents are logged via the Cybersecurity Hub website and depending on their evaluation, incidents that can be handled by the Cybersecurity Hub are timeously resolved or else relevant incidents are escalated to other agencies for further investigation.

Mobile communications

South Africa has one of the largest telecommunications markets on the continent. It has five mobile operators, namely Cell C, MTN, Vodacom, Telkom Mobile and virtual network operator Virgin Mobile.

Mobile phones are the dominant technology for voice and data communication among base of pyramid (BoP) users

and for informal businesses. People in this group access the Internet mostly via their mobile phones and smartphones have taken over functions that used to be performed by computers.

Users are also finding innovative ways to bypass expensive cellphone SMS rates by using Facebook Zero or other instant message services such as WhatsApp.

Although half of the 50 million people in South Africa live below the poverty line, more than 75% among those in low-income groups who are 15 years or older own a mobile phone.

Mobile ownership at the BoP – households with an income of less than R432 per month, per household member – is relatively high, compared to other African countries. This is according to research commissioned by infoDev, a global partnership programme within the World Bank Group, about the use of mobile phones among BoP users.

Some of 98,5% low-income groups who own mobile phones in South Africa have a prepaid SIM card, but there is a small percentage (1.5%) of BoP mobile owners who have post-paid contracts.

According to the GHS 2018, only 0.1% of South African households living in metropolitan areas exclusively used landlines, compared to 86.9% that exclusively used cellular phones. The exclusive use of cellular phones was most common in City of Tshwane (91.1%), City of Johannesburg (90.3%), and Ekurhuleni (89.6%). Almost one-fifth (19.9%) of households in Cape Town used both landlines and cellular phones compared to 6.7% in Buffalo City and 8.1% in Tshwane.

PostNet

PostNet is South Africa's largest privately owned counter network in the document and parcel industry, trading across more than 330 owner-managed retail stores.

It serves in excess of 60 000 walk-in customers per day, countrywide.

There are five product types within PostNet, namely courier, copy and print, digital, stationery and mailboxes.

The media

South Africa is fortunate to have vibrant and independent media.

According to the Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:

- freedom of the press and other media
- freedom to receive or impart information or ideas
- freedom of artistic creativity
- academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa.

Radio

Radio is a great communications medium and still enjoys the broadest reach of any media category in South Africa. The diversity of stations, formats, voices and offerings ensures that most of the public's needs are catered for.

It also fulfils a vital need for information and entertainment, with relatively low costs to the distributors and the listeners.

As a communication medium, radio has very few barriers to access. SABC Radio has more than 25 million listeners weekly in South Africa.

The fact that radio cuts across boundaries of illiteracy strengthens the importance of the medium to the consumer and the advertiser.

The SABC's national radio network comprises 18 radio stations, of which 15 are dedicated specifically to public-service broadcasting.

These include 11 full-spectrum stations, one in each of the official languages of South Africa; a cultural service for the Indian community broadcasting in English; a regional community station broadcasting in isiXhosa and English; and a community station broadcasting in the !Xu and Khwe languages of the Khoisan people of the Northern Cape.

The SABC has three stations in its commercial portfolio. These are 5FM, Metro FM and Good Hope FM. Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese.

Commercial radio stations

Commercial radio stations in South Africa include:

- YFM
- 702 Talk Radio
- Metro FM
- 5FM
- Channel Africa
- Good Hope FM
- 567 Cape Talk
- Radio 2000
- Capricorn FM
- Radio KFM
- Lotus FM
- X-K FM
- TruFM
- RSG
- Power 98.7.

Stations such as 94.2 Jacaranda FM, 94.7 Highveld Stereo, OFM, Algoa FM, Classic FM, Kaya FM and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster.

Many of South Africa's radio stations are also available online.

Community radio

Community broadcasting remains an important project for the DoC. From the early days of Cape Town's Bush Radio, Africa's oldest community radio station project, to today's broadcasting landscape which boasts more than 200 stations across the country's nine provinces, community radio has provided communities with an indispensable platform from which to raise awareness of their grass roots issues, irrespective of race, gender, disability or economic class.

Still a relatively youthful sector, community radio can trace its origins back to Bush Radio, the idea for which started in the 1980s when community activists and alternative media producers explored ways in which media could be used for social upliftment. The radio was officially formed in 1992, broadcasting illegally following numerous attempts to apply for a broadcast license from the apartheid government.

It was however only after the first democratic elections of 1994 that South Africa saw the liberalisation of the airwaves with the establishment of an independent regulator, the Independent Broadcasting Authority (IBA), now the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (ICASA). In subsequent years some 275 community radio stations have been licenced.

In 2002, the MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002) was promulgated giving further, significant impetus to the transformation of the media. Published figures indicate that listenership of community radio as compared to total radio audience has moved from 8% in 1997 to 28% some 20 years later and a national listenership of 9 million out of the total radio audience of approximately 33 million.

The community radio sector also contributes to the promotion of indigenous languages and cultural groups. Across the more than 150 community broadcast projects that have received funding from the MDDA, the full spectrum of South African languages can be heard.

Television

The SABC's television network comprises of three free-to-air channels and two other channels carried on a subscription digital satellite network. South African television is broadcast in all 11 official languages and in Sign Language.

Community television

In 2007, Soweto TV was the first community television station to obtain a seven-year broadcasting licence from ICASA.

Since then, more seven-year licences have been issued to stations operating in Soweto, Cape Town, Tshwane, Empangeni and Nelson Mandela Bay. The issuing of new community television licences is on hold until the migration from analogue to digital broadcasting is complete.

Free-to-air television

e.tv is South Africa's first private, free-to-air television channel, launched in 1998. It is the largest English-medium channel in the country and the third largest overall.

e.tv also has a pan-African presence through e.tv Africa, which is distributed on the DStv Africa bouquet and by local affiliates in African countries. eNews Prime Time continues to lead the English prime time news slot. This success led to the launch of the leading 24-hour news channel on the DStv platform, eNCA (eNews Channel Africa) in 2008.

Satellite broadcasting

MultiChoice started as the subscriber management arm of M-Net. It is the leading multichannel digital satellite television operator across the African continent. MultiChoice provides its DStv services to different market segments. The DStv bouquets cater for different lifestyles and pockets, from entry level to premium.

Top-TV offers five bouquet options, arranged in seven package options.

e.sat tv supplies television, mobile and online news to various channels in South Africa and across the African continent under the brand name eNews Channel Africa (eNCA). Growing out of the success of eNews Prime Time, aired on e.tv, eNCA is South Africa's first and most watched independent 24-hour television news channel on the DStv Platform (Channel 403).

Newzroom Afrika is a premier South African 24-hour television news channel on DStv Platform (Channel 405). The channel which is 100% black-owned went on air on 2 May 2019, replacing Afro Worldview whose contract was terminated in August 2018.

In 2018, ICASA initiated an inquiry into subscription broadcasting services with the intention to define markets and market segments, the effectiveness of competition in the relevant markets, determining dominant licensees, and possible appropriate pro-competitive licence conditions that may be imposed.

This was perpetuated by the perceived difficulty for new players to enter and stay in the payTV market. This is one of the interventions to level the playing field but to ensure that those who are licensed are able to sustain themselves and provide a quality service to the public.

Print

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers and magazines have held their own in a volatile information era, characterised by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet.

Newspapers

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses. These include Media24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Ltd group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd and Arena Holdings. Other important media players include M&G Media Ltd; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd; Primedia Publishing Ltd; RamsayMedia, and Kagiso Media.

Some of the prominent daily and weekly newspapers in South Africa include: *The Sunday Times*, *Citizen*, *Sowetan*, *The Daily Sun*, *The Witness*, *Sunday World*, *City Press*, *The Weekly Mail and Guardian*, *Beeld*, *Pretoria News*, *The Star*, *Die Burger*, *The Cape Argus*, *Cape Times*, *Son*, *Daily Dispatch*, *The Herald*, *The Daily News*, *The Mercury*, *The Witness*, *Business Day*, *Die Volksblad*, *Diamond Fields Advertiser*, *Isolezwe*, *Rapport*, *Sunday Tribune*, *Sunday Sun*, *Ilanga*, *The Post* and *Soccer Laduma*.

Magazines

Some of the prominent magazines in South Africa are: *The Financial Mail*, *Finweek*, *Entrepreneur*, *Forbes Africa*, *Nosweek*, *BusinessBrief*, *Leadership*, *Farmer's Weekly*, *Landbouweekblad*, *Plaastoe*, *Veeplaas*, *Personal Finance*, *People*, *TV Plus*, *Bona*, *Drum*, *Huisgenoot*, *YOU*, *The Big Issue*, *Taalgenoot*, *Leisure*, *Easy DIY*, *House & Leisure*, *Sarie Kos*, *Elle*, *Decoration*, *SA Home Owner*, *SA Garden and Home*, *Tuis Home*, *VISI*, *Woolworths' Taste*, *Fresh Living/Kook en Kuier*, *Braintainment*, *Destiny Man*, *Blaque Magazine*, *GQ*, *Men's Health*, *Popular Mechanics*, *Stuff*, *Tjop & Dop*, *Amakhosi*, *Kick Off*, *Golf Digest*, *Compleat Golfer*, *Magnum's Game*, *Hunt/Wild*, *Jag*, *SA Hunter*, *Zigzag*, *Modern Athlete*, *CAR*, *Leisure Wheels*, *Drive Out/WegRy*, *Auto Trader*, *Bike SA*, *SA 4x4*, *Speed and Sound*, *Getaway*, *Weg/Go*, *SA Country Life*, *Cosmopolitan*, *Glamour*, *Elle*, *Fair Lady*, *Finesse*, *Destiny Magazine*, *Good Housekeeping/Goeie Huishouding*, *Ideas/Idees*, *Leef*, *Move!*, *True Love*, *Vroukeur*, *Woman and Home*, *Essentials*, *Fitness Magazine*, *Kuier*, *Marie Claire*, *Rooi Rose*, *Sarie*, *Your Family*, *Women's Health* and *Longevity*.

Media organisations and role players

The non-profit-making Print and Digital Media South Africa (PDMSA) was originally formed to bring together under one roof publishers of diverse print genres.

The PDMSA recognised the advantages of extending its footprint online by extending its membership to include digital media publications.

The members include Times Media Group, Caxton and CTP; Independent Newspapers; Media24; Mail & Guardian, and the Association of Independent Publishers (AIP).

The purpose of the PDMSA is to represent, promote, interact with and intervene in all matters concerning the collective industry and of common interest. It represents more than 700 newspaper and magazine titles in South Africa.

The PDMSA is a member of a number of international bodies, such as the World Association of Newspapers and the Federation of Periodical Press. Allied to the PDMSA, but not a constituent member, is the ABC, responsible for auditing and verifying print-media circulation figures.

The AIP represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

The South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef) was formed at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors and senior journalism educators and trainers, in October 1996.

Sanef membership includes editors and senior journalists from the print, broadcast and online/Internet media, as well as journalism educators from all the major training institutions in South Africa.

The Forum of Black Journalists addresses issues that directly affect its members.

Members of the public who have complaints or concerns about reports in newspapers and magazines can submit their grievances to the Office of the Press Ombudsman. Should they not be satisfied with the resultant ruling, they can lodge an appeal with an independent appeal panel. The Office of the Press Ombudsman was set up by the PDMSA, Sanef and the Media Workers' Association of South Africa.

The Freedom of Expression Institute was established in 1994 to protect and foster the rights to freedom of expression and access to information, and to oppose censorship.

The Forum of Community Journalists (FCJ) is an independent body that represents, promotes and serves the interests of all community-newspaper journalists in southern Africa. The decision to become an independent body followed the restructuring of the Community Press Association into the AIP.

The Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog, to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct. Members include the SABC, M-Net, Radio 702 and the Trinity Broadcasting Network. However, the commission does not deal with X-rated material, the broadcast of which is prohibited under criminal law.

Media Monitoring Africa (formerly Media Monitoring Project) is a non-profit organisation that acts in a watchdog role to promote ethical and fair journalism that supports human rights.

The National Community Radio Forum (NCRF) lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

The NCRF is a national, member-driven association of community-owned and run radio stations and support-service organisations.

Radio station members are independent, non-profit community-based organisations.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the:

- Foreign Correspondents' Association of Southern Africa
- Printing Industries Federation of South Africa, the South African Typographical Union
- South African Guild of Motoring Journalists
- Professional Photographers of South Africa
- Media Institute of Southern Africa
- Publishers' Association of South Africa
- Press clubs in major centres.

News agencies

The African News Agency, Africa's first syndicated multimedia content service, began publishing South African and international news stories in 2015.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are:

- Reuters
- Agence France-Presse
- Associated Press
- Deutsche Presse Agentur
- United Press International.

Journalism awards

South Africa's most important awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards
- Vodacom Journalist of the Year Awards
- South African Breweries Environmental Media and Environmentalist of the Year Awards
- Sanlam Financial Journalist of the Year Award
- CNN MultiChoice African Journalist Awards
- Discovery Health Journalism Awards
- Sanef's Nat Nakasa Award
- Local Media Excellence Awards.

Media awards

The annual Local Media Excellence Awards ceremony was held in July 2019 in Centurion. At the awards, (previously known as the Sanlam/MDDA Local Media Awards), local and community newspapers from all over the country and across all media houses compete against each other to award the best of the best in South Africa.

Other important annual media awards are the Eagles, the Pendering and the AdReview Awards.

Advertising

South Africa has a vibrant and dynamic advertising industry. Local advertising agencies are often recognised internationally for their excellence.

Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims.

It is an independent body established and funded by the marketing communication industry to manage advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation.

The ASA cooperates with government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

The code is the ASA's guiding document based on the International Code of Advertising Practice, prepared by the International Chamber of Commerce.

Drawn up by the ASA with the participation of representatives of the marketing-communication industry, the code is amended from time to time to meet the changing needs of the industry and of South African society.

Advertising awards

The 40th Annual Loerie Awards took place in August 2018 at the Durban International Conference Centre.

The full list of Grand Prix winners are:

- La Libanaise Des Jeux's 'Lucky Face' by Impact BBDO Dubai - Integrated campaign
- Louvre Abu Dhabi's 'Highway Gallery' by TBWA\RAAD Dubai - Radio
- Kimberly-Clark 'The World's First Baby Marathon' by Ogilvy Johannesburg - Film communication

Public relations

Public Relations Institute of Southern Africa (PRISA)

Established in 1957, PRISA represents professionals in public relations and communication management throughout the southern African region and has registered practitioners in Botswana, Namibia, Lesotho, Swaziland and South Africa.

It is a founding member of the Global Alliance for Public Relations and Communication Management, and initiated the formation of the Council for Communication Management in South Africa. The council is the coordinating body representing various groupings of professionals in South Africa.

PRISA plays a leading role in uniting professionals and driving transformation. As the recognised leader of the public relations and communication management profession in southern Africa and beyond, PRISA provides the southern African industry with the local professional advantage.

International relations

The international branch of the DoC continues to be the primary vehicle through which the department pursues government's priority of contributing to a better South Africa and contributing to a better and safer Africa in a better world.

South Africa chairs the Future Strategy Committee of the UPU. The country is also serving as a member of the UPU Council of Administration for a second term, 2017 – 2020.

It is also responsible for chairing a new committee dealing with strategy. The DoC was re-elected to the Postal Operations Council that deals with the operational, economic and commercial aspects of the postal business.

South Africa has contributed significantly to the UPU's work in developing National Address Systems. The country's use of Global Positioning Systems to allocate addresses to people in rural and undeveloped areas has proved critical.



South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

Economy



Over the past year, government has worked to end policy inertia and uncertainty that have undermined confidence and constrained investment in the economy. New partnerships with the private sector have led to large-scale investment commitments.

As several commissions probing allegations of corruption and wrongdoing continue their work, a special directorate is being established to investigate and prosecute serious crimes that have been brought to light. Government is reforming state-owned companies, with Eskom as its immediate focus.

Faster growth is needed to expand employment and raise the revenues needed to support social development. While progress is being made on various short-term initiatives, South Africa needs to implement a range of structural reforms that will bolster confidence, investment and economic growth. The State's capacity to implement policy also needs to be strengthened.

The South African economy slumped sharply in the first three months of 2019, contracting by 3.2%. Seven of the ten industries took a knock, with manufacturing, mining and trade the biggest contributors to the fall. Construction, mining and trade were in recession.

The 3.2% decline was the biggest quarterly fall in economic activity since the first quarter of 2009, when the economy – under strain from the global financial crisis – tumbled by 6.1%.

The manufacturing industry was the biggest drag on growth in the first quarter of 2019, falling by 8.8%. This was driven mostly by declines in petroleum, transport and wood and paper.

Mining failed to lift itself out of recession, registering its third consecutive quarter of negative growth. A fall-off in diamond, iron ore and coal production pulled the industry down by 10.8%. This was mining's biggest decline since the first quarter of 2016.

Weaker wholesale, retail and motor sales dragged the trade industry down by 3.6%. South Africa's trade industry is now in recession, this being its second consecutive quarter of negative growth.

Agriculture production slumped by 13.2% after registering a 7.9% rise in activity in the fourth quarter of 2018. A slowdown in the production of field crops (wheat, sunflower seeds, and tobacco) and horticultural products (vegetables, citrus and deciduous fruits) weakened performance in the first quarter.

Construction entered its third consecutive quarter of negative growth, slipping by 2.2%. Decreases were reported for activities related to residential and non-residential buildings, as well as construction works.

The construction industry has seen only one quarter of positive growth over the previous two years. In fact, the total value added of the industry fell from R109.6 billion in the first quarter of 2017 to R106.8 billion in the first quarter of 2019 (at constant 2010 prices).

On the employment front, the construction industry shed 142 000 jobs in the first quarter compared with the fourth quarter of 2018, contributing over half of the 237 000 jobs lost across the entire economy.

Government, finance and personal services were the three industries that posted positive growth figures, keeping their heads above water in the first quarter. Government activity expanded by 1.2%, mostly as a result of increased civil service employment contracts related to the run-up to the general election. Finance and business services, the largest industry in the South African economy, edged up 1.1%, and personal services also expanded by 1.1%.

Key facts from the gross domestic product (GDP) release for the first quarter of 2019:

- Real GDP in the first quarter was down 3.2% quarter-on-quarter (seasonally adjusted and annualised).
- Unadjusted real GDP in the first quarter was flat (0% growth) year-on-year.
- Nominal GDP in the first quarter of 2019 was estimated at R1.20 trillion, lower than the R1.26 trillion recorded in the fourth quarter of 2018.
- Expenditure on GDP in the first quarter fell by 3.4% quarter-on-quarter (seasonally adjusted and annualised), largely as a result of declining exports, weaker fixed capital investment and falling household consumption expenditure.

Economic indicators

Domestic outlook

The environment remains challenging. The medium-term economic outlook has been revised down, with GDP growth forecast to reach 1.5% from an estimated 1.7% at the time of the 2018 medium term budget policy statement. The weaker outlook projects a slow improvement in production and employment following



poor investment growth in 2018, and a moderation in global trade and investment. The medium-term outlook is subdued, with GDP growth projected to reach 2.1% in 2021, supported by a gradual improvement in confidence, more effective public infrastructure spending, and a better commodity price outlook than previously assumed.

In the first three quarters of 2018, real value added in the mining and agriculture sectors contracted. The mining sector is expected to remain under pressure over the medium term, largely as a result of low commodity prices.

Real value added in manufacturing increased by 0.9% in the first three quarters of 2018 compared with the same period in the previous year. An upturn during the third quarter was driven by food and beverages, and motor vehicles and parts. Trade performance also improved. Exports, led by base metals and vehicles, grew by 8.2% in 2018 compared the previous year.

Household consumption

Over the first nine months of 2018, household spending grew by 1.9%, on par with the same period in the previous year. This was driven by increased demand in the first quarter of the year, carried by a stronger rand, higher confidence and low inflation of durable and semi-durable goods.

Household spending growth lost momentum as the year progressed due to subdued wage and employment growth, reduced confidence, and rising petrol and electricity prices.

Household consumption is forecast to grow by 1.5% in 2019. Weak employment growth and further declines in real wages are expected to constrain household incomes. Household wealth is also expected to remain under pressure in 2019, following a sharp decline in equity prices at the end of 2018, and limited growth in house prices.

Over the medium term, household spending is expected to benefit from a recovery in economic activity and net wealth, and lower levels of indebtedness.

Global outlook

The global economy continues to grow, but signs of slowing growth have emerged. The International Monetary Fund (IMF) has lowered its projection for global growth to 3.5% in 2019 and

3.6% in 2020, from a prior estimate of 3.7% in both years.

Over the past six months, GDP growth projections for the United States (US), China and Europe have been revised down. Trade tensions between the US and China have contributed to weaker confidence and growth outlooks, and lower crude prices have reversed recent optimism about prospects for oil-exporting economies. World trade is expected to expand by 4% over the medium term, down from 5.3%.

In developed economies, growth is returning to lower long-term averages. The potential for tariff increases and retaliation among large economies still poses a risk to global trade. Nevertheless, US demand remains strong, oil prices have eased and monetary policy tightening is becoming less aggressive, which will offer some support to medium-term global growth. In developing countries, growth is expected to decline from 4.6% in 2018 to 4.5% in 2019, mainly due to lower oil prices and trade risks, before rising to 4.9% in 2020. The weak performance of sub-Saharan Africa's two largest economies – Nigeria and South Africa – continues to weigh on the region. The IMF projects Nigeria to grow by 2% this year and 2.2% in 2020. Economic growth for most economies in the region, including Kenya and Rwanda, is expected to exceed 4% over the next five years.

Developing countries remain vulnerable to swings in investor sentiment. Financial market conditions, which stabilised in the middle of last year, have become more volatile since the end of 2018. Short-term uncertainty has added to concerns about trade tensions and slower global growth.

Investment

Investment growth remains subdued. Investment fell by 0.3% year-on-year in the first three quarters of 2018, following a 0.7% expansion in the same period in 2017. Investment by private businesses and general government declined.

As a percentage of GDP, investment has persistently declined, reaching a 13-year low of 17.7% in the third quarter of 2018. The combination of low growth in employment, investment and productivity continues to restrain economic growth.

Investment growth is projected to rise from 1.5% in 2019 to 3% in 2021 as confidence gradually increases, worn-out capital

is replaced and the state improves its ability to execute capital projects.

However, concerns about electricity supply and slower global growth pose risks to the near-term outlook.

The Investment Summit affirmed that South Africa remains an attractive investment destination, with R300 billion in investments pledged across a variety of sectors. Efforts by the President's investment envoys yielded another \$28 billion in investment pledges.

Employment

Private-sector employment growth has been slowing since 2011. Job creation remains stagnant. The unemployment rate declined marginally from an average of 27.5% in 2017 to 27.1% in 2018. However, this is largely the result of the growth in the number of discouraged work seekers, who are not counted in the unemployment rate. The labour market obstructs easy entry into employment, particularly for young people.

Net employment rose by 225 000 in 2018, mostly due to an increase in the informal non-agricultural sector. Private-sector employment growth was flat over the first three quarters of 2018. Lower industrial employment has been partially offset by stronger growth in services.

Employment in gold mining has fallen during seven of the last eight quarters ending September 2018. Mining employment is expected to remain under pressure, with several companies announcing restructuring or mine closures.

The national minimum wage and other legislative amendments have come into effect, providing much-needed certainty in the labour market.

Through the National Economic Development and Labour Council, business and labour have committed to support job creation and retention. Exemptions and shifts in working hours are expected to limit the job losses from upward wage adjustments as a result of the national minimum wage.

According to the first Quarterly Employment Statistics survey of 2019 released by Statistics South Africa, employment decreased by 0.5% (86 000), while unemployment increased by 3.7% (220 000) when compared to the first quarter of 2018.

The number of persons who were not economically active



increased by 3.1% (470 000) over the year.

The working-age population increased by 149 000 or 0.4% in the first quarter of 2019 compared to the fourth quarter of the previous year. Compared to the first quarter of 2018, the working-age population increased by 605 000 or 1.6%. The number of employed persons decreased by 237 000 to 16.3 million, while the number of unemployed persons increased by 62 000 to 6.2 million, resulting in a decrease of 176 000 (down by 0.8%) in the number of people in the labour force. The absorption rate decreased by 0.7 of a percentage point to 42.6% and the unemployment rate increased by 0.5 of a percentage point to 27.6% compared to the fourth quarter of 2018.

Employment decreased in all four of the sectors in the first quarter of 2019. The formal sector recorded the largest employment losses of 126 000, followed by the informal sector (68 000), private households (31 000) and agriculture (12 000). Employment gains were recorded in transport (59 000), trade (25 000), utilities (16 000) and manufacturing (14 000).

The number of discouraged work-seekers and the number of people who were not economically active for reasons other than discouragement increased by 156 000 and 169 000, respectively, between the fourth quarter of 2018 and the first quarter of 2019, resulting in a net increase of 325 000 in the not economically active population.

When comparing the employment in the formal sector in the first quarter of 2019 with the same period in 2018, the loss of 135 000 jobs was mainly driven by community and social services (164 000), manufacturing (72 000), construction (53 000) and trade (16 000). Formal sector employment in other industries increased with finance and other business services recording the largest gains of 124 000, while transport and mining gained 29 000 and 18 000 jobs, respectively.

Compared to the same period in 2018, employment in the informal sector increased in five industries in the first quarter of 2019. Annual employment gains

were recorded in the trade (85 000), transport (35 000), manufacturing and utilities (with 3 000 each) and mining (2 000) industries. On the other hand, the largest employment losses were recorded in the community and social services (47 000), construction (39 000) and finance and other business services (10 000) industries.

The percentage of young persons aged 15 – 24 years who were not in employment, education or training (NEET) increased from 32.4% in the first quarter of 2018 to 33.2% in the first quarter of 2019. In this age group, the NEET rate for males increased by 1.9 percentage points, while the rate for females decreased by 0.2 of a percentage point. The NEET rate for females was higher than that of their male counterparts in both years.

Price inflation

Headline inflation slowed from 5.3% in 2017 to 4.7% in 2018, as lower food and services inflation offset high petrol inflation in the second half of the year. Fuel inflation rose to 20.1% in the second half of 2018 due to higher oil prices, putting upward pressure on public transport and freight costs. As a result of these large fuel price increases, the Department of Energy is reviewing the basic fuel price formula.

Consumer price index (CPI) inflation is expected to reach 5.2% in 2019 in response to rising food inflation associated with higher fuel and agricultural input prices. The headline CPI (for all urban areas) annual inflation rate in March 2019 was 4.5%. This rate was 0.4 of a percentage point higher than the 4.1% from February 2019. On average, prices increased by 0.8% between February 2019 and March 2019.

Electricity inflation is also expected to increase in 2019. The National Treasury assumes an annual adjustment of 10% in electricity prices in each of the next three years, effective from July 2019.

Core inflation – which excludes the impact of food, electricity and fuel prices – remains stable at about 5% over the medium term.

Exchange rates

Developing-country currencies depreciated sharply during 2018 due to higher risk aversion, trade tensions and rising US interest rates. The JP Morgan Emerging Markets Currency Index fell by 11.1% over the year. The rand performed in line with these trends, depreciating by 13.3% against the US dollar and 9.8% against the euro. Risk aversion and volatility remain high, although the rand has partially

recovered. Between September 2018 and January 2019, the rand appreciated by 11.5% against the US dollar.

Despite the weaker nominal exchange rate, South Africa's inflation remains higher than that of trading partners. The real effective exchange rate appreciated by 2.4% over the first 11 months of 2018, signalling a loss of export competitiveness.

Creating partnerships for growth

The October 2018 Jobs Summit strengthened the partnership between government, business, labour and communities. Highlights included:

- improving the efficiency of government spending, for example by increasing placement ratios in the private sector for beneficiaries of public employment programmes, and receiving local procurement commitments from the private sector.
- project-specific collaboration, as demonstrated by partnerships between commercial farmers, lenders and black farmers.
- improving policy certainty through consultations that respond to affected groups, evidenced in both the extension of the employment tax incentive as well as changes in the training lay-off scheme.

The Youth Employment Service, a business-led initiative launched in March 2018, offers one-year work experience and training alongside job placement services. Government supports the initiative, which also benefits from the employment tax incentive and enhanced broad-based black economic empowerment recognition.

The National Minimum Wage (NMW) was implemented in January 2019. The NMW of R20 an hour represents a marked increase in income for more than six million workers – or 47% of South Africa's labour force – who earn less than R20 an hour. This rate is subject to future adjustments in terms of the National Minimum Wage (NMW) Act of 2018.

The NMW is expected to significantly improve the lives of millions of low-paid workers and begin to address the challenge of wage inequality.

The Jobs Summit resulted in an agreement to extend the employment tax incentive, which was due to lapse in 2019, for 10 years.

The Small Business and Innovation Fund will help entrepreneurs and small businesses to navigate the pre-start-up phase and provide support as they scale up their enterprises. This will complement the work of the CEO Initiative's SME Fund, which has raised R1.4 billion to date, with about R500 million expected to be committed to debt and equity investments in SMEs by the first quarter of 2019.

The financial sector has committed to invest R100 billion over five years in black industrial enterprises and firms. The Financial Sector Transformation Council is working with the Department of Trade and Industry to finalise guidelines for the disbursement of this funding.

The infrastructure fund announced as part of the President's economic stimulus and recovery plan is intended to encourage capital investment by the private sector and development finance institutions in public infrastructure. The fund will build on work under way in government to improve the planning and management of large infrastructure projects.

Government expenditure

Government remains committed to prioritising social infrastructure, health services, access to education and social protection.

Since the 2018 The Medium Term Budget Policy Statement (MTBPS), risks from Eskom and adverse economic conditions have required substantial spending adjustments.

To limit growth in public debt and respond to poor revenue performance, baselines have been reduced by R50.3 billion over the next three years relative to the 2018 MTBPS. Proposed spending increases total R75.3 billion, of which R69 billion is set aside for reconfiguring Eskom. As a result, non-interest expenditure has been increased by R21.6 billion in 2019/20, R1.9 billion in 2020/21 and R1.4 billion in 2021/22.

Government expenditure is set to increase on average by 7.8% over the Medium term, from R1.67 trillion in 2018/19 to R2.09 trillion in 2021/22. Expenditure continues to grow above inflation, with real expenditure growth averaging 2.4%. Funding has been reprioritised to improve service delivery, mainly in health, roads, public transport and educational infrastructure. In addition, R5 billion is set aside for the infrastructure fund.

Provisional allocations of R4.3 billion have been made, mainly for road maintenance and broadband.

Compensation of employees remains the largest category of spending, accounting for an average 34.4% of expenditure over the Medium term. Government is implementing measures to contain the public-sector wage bill, which will produce some savings and assist in rebalancing the composition of expenditure.

The 2018 MTBPS proposed reprioritisation of R33.4 billion over the next three years, while leaving the expenditure ceiling unchanged. Of this total, R16.9 billion was allocated to infrastructure programmes (including in schools), clothing and textile incentives, and public employment programmes. The remaining R16.5 billion was allocated to various programmes that assist in building capacity and delivering services.

Since the 2018 MTBPS, however, serious risks have materialised that require immediate attention to protect the public finances and limit the increase in public debt. As a result, the 2019 budget proposes further baseline reductions. Even with these reductions, the expenditure ceiling will be raised by R16 billion over the medium term, mainly to finance the reconfiguration of Eskom.

As far as possible, the expenditure allocations have been lowered in line with the goal of improving the effectiveness and composition of spending. Reductions mainly affect specific departmental programmes and transfers to public entities.

Over the medium term, government will take additional steps to manage growth in compensation. The combination of natural attrition and active measures allow for a reduction of compensation budgets by R5.3 billion in 2019/20, R11 billion in 2020/21 and R10.7 billion in 2021/22. Wage increases for members of Parliament and provincial legislatures are frozen in 2019/20. In addition, public entities are encouraged to freeze salaries of employees earning R1.5 million or more a year in 2019/20, while those earning between R1 million and R1.5 million a year should receive a below-inflation increase of 2.8%. This follows several years of below-inflation increases for senior management in national and provincial government.

Government has reduced allocations to specific programme. The Special Defence Account, which manages the acquisition

and upgrading of main weapon systems and technology for the Department of Defence, was reduced by R5 billion in 2021/22. Goods and services budgets in public entities are lowered by 1%.

The public-service wage bill constitutes the largest share of government expenditure by economic classification, crowding out other spending. The wage agreement reached in 2018 adds to these pressures. Government will continue to manage the wage bill by helping departments to fund pension penalties for employees who retire early. This upfront spending is expected to reduce future compensation costs.

In 2016, government introduced legally binding compensation ceilings for national departments. These ceilings remain unchanged over the Medium term ahead, with departments expected to absorb any shortfall within their current allocations.

National and provincial government will work with municipalities to improve governance and confront weaknesses in financial management.

Overall growth

According to the 2018/19 budget speech, in 2017/18 the economy grew by 0.7% and is projected to grow by 1.5% in 2019. The output of the South African economy is now R4.7 trillion.

According to The United Nations Conference on Trade and Development's January 2019 Investment Trend Monitor, South Africa reversed the drop in Foreign Direct Investment (FDI) inflows since 2014 and recorded a strong recovery in 2018, with inflows amounting to \$7.1 billion compared to \$1.3 billion in the previous year. This was driven by large investments in mining, petroleum refining, food processing, information and communication technologies and renewable energy.

Financial ranking

South Africa's performance in the 2018 World Bank's Ease of Doing Business Index (EDB) was ranked at 82nd out of 190 economies.

The World Bank noted two areas of improvement in the EDB 2018, being: South Africa has made starting a business easier by reducing the time for online business registration, and the

country improved the monitoring of electricity outages through recording data to monitor outages better.

The World Bank's Ease of Doing Business Report, which was released in October 2018, is an indicator of the ease of doing business in various economies around the world.

The 2018 Ibrahim Index of African Governance (IIAG) report, also shows that South Africa has fallen from 6th to 7th position. The IIAG provides an annual measure of governance efficiency of African countries.

The report covers 54 countries and base its analysis on 100 indicators that are drawn from 36 independent sources which together fall into four broad thematic categories: Safety & Rule of Law; Participation & Human Rights; Sustainable Economic Opportunity; and Human Development.

South Africa's performance also showed a decline in the 2018-2019 World Economic Forum (WEF) Global Competitiveness Index. The country now ranks 61st out of 140 economies assessed in the annual survey.

South Africa's national strengths can be found in the Finance System ranking 18th, its Market Size at 35th, with strong performance in Business Dynamics at 56th, the Labour Market at 55th, with a relatively good ranking for Economic Stability at 57th. In the context of the Fourth Industrial Revolution it is notable that South Africa ranks 46th for Innovation Capability.

Economic Development Department (EDD)

The EDD has assumed responsibilities relating to the creation of decent employment through inclusive economic growth, including the implementation of certain aspects of the National Development Plan (NDP), the New Growth Path (NGP) and the national infrastructure plan as captured in outcomes 4, 6 and 7 of government's 2014 – 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

The department is also responsible for five public entities, comprising three regulatory bodies and two development finance institutions. These are: the Competition Commission, the Competition Tribunal, the International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa (ITAC), the Industrial Development

Corporation (IDC) of South Africa and the Small Enterprise Finance Agency (Sefa).

In contributing to South Africa's economic growth and long-term vision detailed in the NDP, the EDD will, over the medium term, continue to focus on providing support to development finance institutions and regulatory bodies, facilitating infrastructure initiatives, providing black women and youth with access to employment and entrepreneurship opportunities, and supporting provinces in economic planning.

Legislation

In line with these responsibilities, the department's mandate includes the administration of the following legislation:

- The Industrial Development Act, 1940 (Act 22 of 1940).
- The Competition Act, 1998 (Act 89 of 1998).
- The International Trade Administration Act, 2002 (Act 71 of 2002).
- The Infrastructure Development Act, 2014 (Act 23 of 2014).

Budget and funding

The EDD aims to drive government's priorities of job creation, inclusive economic growth and industrialisation, and to support the alignment of the State in implementing policies.

The department focuses its work in relation to Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth) of government's 2014 – 2019 Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF).

The department's NGP for creating the jobs that South Africa needs, aims for the collective achievement of a more developed and equitable economy and society over the medium term, in the context of sustained growth.

It sets out critical markers for employment creation and growth, and identifies where viable changes in the structure and character of production can generate a more inclusive and greener economy over the medium to longer term.

To that end, it combines macroeconomic and microeconomic interventions. Over the medium term, the department will make interventions aimed at integrating its NGP, including: interventions in infrastructure initiatives, support to provinces on economic planning, and strategic support to development finance institutions and regulatory bodies.

Cabinet has approved reductions of R13.5 million for 2018/19 to the department's compensation of employees budget. The reductions are part of Cabinet's decision to lower the national aggregate expenditure ceiling.

The department's operational expenditure is largely on compensation of employees for the skilled personnel required to drive its policy and coordination interventions.

A reduction in personnel will be mitigated through partnerships with higher education institutions to provide technical expertise as it is required. After consultation with the Department of Public Service and Administration and National Treasury, the department will develop and implement a plan to manage its personnel expenditure within its reduced personnel budget.

The department's goods and services budget has been reduced by R1.4 million for 2018/19, particularly in travel and subsistence. The department plans to mitigate the impact of the reductions by shifting expenditure from nonperforming areas.

For the 2018/19 financial year, the department was allocated R1.07 billion.

Interventions in infrastructure initiatives

The department will continue to provide secretariat services to the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission in its implementation of 18 national strategic infrastructure projects such as the construction of power plants, schools, health care facilities, roads, ports, water pipelines and bus route systems. The nature of this support includes unblocking or facilitating applications for permits or licences to accelerate the implementation of projects. Key infrastructure projects, which are in the 18 national strategic infrastructure projects, are expected to be unblocked over the medium term through the easing of regulatory challenges.

This will be done by engaging and coordinating with all parties involved in the planning and adjudication of projects, and overcoming challenges such as by-laws. Through these interventions, municipal services will be made available for new and existing investments in the water and sanitation, logistics, housing, health, transport, energy, agri-logistics, education, and Information and Communication Technology (ICT) sectors.

Over the Medium term, in the Investment, Competition and Trade programme, R82.7 million is allocated for the secretariat's work, and R165 million to the technical project management unit to enhance its capacity to assist departments with project preparation and make projects more appealing to investors.

Support to provinces on economic planning

The EDD was expected to continue supporting provinces on economic planning through a number of spatial, local and provincial economic initiatives.

Over the medium term, the department was expected to use 30 economic development initiatives to promote employment, empowerment and development in all the provinces. These engagements are intended to help identify and support the implementation of common initiatives such as skills development, employment creation, local procurement and the green economy; and responses to sector-wide industrial conflict and the uncertain global economic environment.

Support to provinces on economic planning is budgeted for in the Growth Path and Social Dialogue programme, and the increase in activities over the medium term drives expenditure to grow at an average annual rate of 12.4%, from R27.9 million in 2015/16 to R39.6 million by 2018/19.

Providing black women and youth with access to employment and entrepreneurship opportunities

The meaningful growth of the South African economy requires social partnerships and the provision of support to women and young people, particularly those who have been historically disadvantaged. In recognition of this, the department plans to deliver nine initiatives in support of women and young people over the medium term. These include engaging and mobilising economic stakeholders to channel investments towards women and young people; easing regulatory challenges in employment-generating sectors such as manufacturing, retail and ICT; coordinating the advancement of social accords; and producing reports on the facilitation of employment and entrepreneurship opportunities for black women and youth. Funding for these initiatives is provided in the Growth Path and Job Drivers subprogramme, which has an allocation of R77.3

million over the medium term, in the Growth Path and Social Dialogue programme.

Strategic support to development finance institutions and regulatory bodies

The department realises its mandate largely through its entities, and oversees them to enhance their impact on economic transformation, job creation and industrial development.

Over the medium term, transfers to entities account for an estimated 86.1% (R2.9 billion) of the department's total expenditure. The Competition Commission is set to receive the largest transfer (R935.7 million), followed by the Small Enterprise Finance Agency (R764.9 million), the Industrial Development Corporation (R701.3 million), the International Trade Administration Commission (R338.8 million), and the Competition Tribunal (R114.6 million). Spending on compensation of employees, by comparison, accounts for an estimated 9.2% (R314.6 million) of total expenditure.

Regulatory and development finance institutions Competition Commission

The Competition Commission is a statutory body constituted in terms of the Competition Act of 1998. It is empowered to investigate, control and evaluate restrictive business practices, including the abuse of dominant positions and mergers; and to promote the advocacy of competition issues to achieve equity and efficiency in the South African economy. The commission's total budget for 2018/19 was R282 million.

Competition Tribunal

The Competition Tribunal was established in terms of the Competition Act of 1998. All large corporate mergers and allegations of restrictive practices are brought before the tribunal by the Competition Commission and interested parties for adjudication. The Tribunal received a budget of R35 million 2018/19.

International Trade Administration Commission of South Africa

The ITAC is mandated to manage an efficient and effective trade administration system. It was established in terms of the

International Trade Administration Act of 2002. The ITAC is mandated to foster economic growth and development to raise incomes and promote investment and employment in South Africa and within the Common Customs Union Area.

This is done by establishing an efficient and effective system for the administration of international trade, subject to this Act and the Southern African Customs Union Agreement. The core functions are customs tariff investigations, trade remedies, and import and export control.

The ITAC's budget for 2018/19 was R102 million.

Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa

The IDC is a national development finance institution established in terms of the Industrial Development Act of 1940 with the objective of leading industrial capacity development.

This entails aligning its priorities with those identified in terms of government policies and programmes related to industrial development, including relevant elements of the NDP, the NGP and the Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP).

Small Enterprise Finance Agency (SEFA)

The SEFA was established in 2012 and combines the operations of Khula Enterprise Finance, the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund and the IDC's small business operations.

Sefa's mandate is to foster the establishment, survival and growth of small, medium and micro enterprises (SMMEs) and contribute towards poverty alleviation and job creation.

Sefa has a regional footprint of nine offices around the country and it lends between R500 and R5 million to SMMEs.

The target market is survivalists, SMMEs, including co-operatives falling in the following funding gap:

- Survivalists and microenterprises – loans between R500 and R50 000
- Small enterprises – loans between R50 000 and R1 million
- Medium enterprises – loans between R1 million and R5 million.

This is in partnership with other role players ensuring their growth, sustainability and enhancing their competitiveness and capabilities through coordinated services, programmes and projects.

SEFA received a budget of R229 million for the 2018/19 financial year.

Small Business Finance Agency

The Sefa was established on 1 April 2012 following the merger of South African Micro Apex Fund, Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd and the small business activities of the IDC.

New Growth Path

The NGP is government's vision to place jobs and decent work at the centre of economic policy. It sets a target of five million new jobs to be created by 2020.

It sets out the key jobs drivers and the priority sectors that will be the point of focus on over the next few years. It is based on strong and sustained, inclusive economic growth and the rebuilding of the productive sectors of the economy.

Infrastructure development in particular is a foundation for more jobs and addressing rural underdevelopment.

Green economy

South Africa is committed to pursuing and exploring opportunities in its transition to an inclusive, low-carbon, resource-efficient green economy.

Government aims to use all opportunities in the green economy to create jobs and cut carbon emissions. High-tech innovations will help employment grow over the long term, as new technology spreads throughout the economy and transforms other, larger sectors. South Africa's chemical industry is of substantial economic significance, contributing around 5% to the GDP and approximately 25% of manufacturing sales.

The Green Fund is budgeted for in the Environmental Programmes, receiving 3,8% or R290,5 million of the programme's budget over the medium term.

Established in 2011, the Green Fund is a national fund providing catalytic finance for investment in green initiatives that will support South Africa's transition towards a green economy.

The fund is additional and complementary to existing fiscal allocations, focusing on innovative projects that need to cover a funding or financing gap. The fund is managed by

the Development Bank of Southern Africa on behalf of the Department of Environmental Affairs.

Over the medium term, the Green Fund is expected to receive additional allocations from the economic competitiveness and support package of R95 million in 2018/19, R111 million in 2019/20 and R117.1 million in 2020/21.

Direct investment into projects, including co-investments and additional support realised thus far, amount to R285 million, with contributions from the private sector amounting to R91 million.

Drawing investment from the private sector is one of the key mandates of the fund. As investments begin to show favourable returns, it is expected that private sector investors will invest without any state involvement.

As a result, direct investment is expected to exceed R500 million over the medium term.

Department of Trade and Industry (the dti)

The mission of the dti is to promote structural transformation towards a dynamic industrial and globally competitive economy; provide a predictable, competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment, conducive to investment, trade and enterprise development; broaden participation in the economy to strengthen economic development; and continually improve the skills and capabilities of the dti to effectively deliver on its mandate and respond to the needs of South Africa's economic citizens.

The department's strategic objectives are to: facilitate transformation of the economy to promote industrial development, investment, competitiveness and employment creation; build mutually beneficial regional and global relations to advance South Africa's trade, industrial policy and economic development objectives; facilitate broad-based economic participation through targeted interventions to achieve more inclusive growth; create a fair regulatory environment that enables investment, trade and enterprise development in an equitable and socially responsible manner; and promote a professional, ethical, dynamic, competitive and customer-focused working environment that ensures effective and efficient service delivery.

The work of the dti supports Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth), Outcome 7 (comprehensive rural

development and land reform) and Outcome 11 (create a better South Africa, a better Africa and a better world) of government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF.

This work entails implementing the industrial policy action plan through the promotion of industrialisation and the expansion of production in value-added sectors with the aim of creating employment opportunities. As such, over the medium term, the department will focus on providing industrial finance and incentives, developing industrial infrastructure and strengthening South Africa's export capabilities.

Key products and services

Economic empowerment

The dti provides strategic direction in the development of policies and strategies that promote enterprise growth, empowerment and equity in the economy.

Trade, exports and investment

The dti plays a critical role in the promotion of economic development and meaningful participation in the global economic and trade environment. It achieves this by working to build an equitable multilateral trading system that facilitates development, and strengthens trade and investment links with key economies.

The dti recognises the importance of promoting trade and inward investment, and building trade and investment relations. It focuses on encouraging exports, to leverage global growth for the development of the South African economy, through the establishment of collaborative agreements with existing trading partners and dynamic fast-growing emerging markets. The dti, in partnership with the Provincial Investment Promotion Agencies, undertakes investment and export promotion activities in targeted markets that are aligned to South Africa's international relations and cooperation agreements.

- Financial Assistance (incentives): the dti provides financial support to qualifying companies in various sectors of the economy. Financial support is offered for various economic activities, including manufacturing, business competitiveness, export development and market access, as well as foreign direct investment.
- Legislation and Business Regulation: the dti develops and

reviews regulatory systems in the areas of competition, consumer protection, company and intellectual property, as well as public interest regulation. It also oversees the work of national and provincial regulatory agencies mandated to assist the dti in providing competitive and socially responsible business and consumer regulations, for easy access to redress and efficient markets.

Priority areas

Providing industrial finance and incentives

Part of the department's mandate is to provide or facilitate industrial financing to maximise productivity in identified economic sectors. This funding is mainly budgeted for in the Industrial Development programme and the Incentive Development and Administration programme.

Activities in the Industrial Development programme involve developing industrial policies, strategies and programmes that seek to strengthen identified economic sectors. Key initiatives that are currently implemented through funding from the programme include the clothing and textiles competitiveness programme; Intsimbi future production technologies initiatives, which facilitate the development of technical skills in the manufacturing sector; and the National Cleaner Production Centre, which supports South African industry to improve competitiveness and reduce environmental waste through the implementation of resource efficient and cleaner production methodologies. Funding for the clothing and textiles competitiveness programme constitutes 38.7% (R2.3 billion) of total spending in the Industrial Development programme over the Medium term. R600 million over the same period is reprioritised towards the clothing and textiles competitiveness programme to increase investment, competitiveness and exports in the sector.

The Incentive Development and Administration programme is responsible for the administration of key incentive measures such as grants, loans and tax allowances. The programme aims to promote industrialisation, sustain inclusive economic growth and transform the South African economy by supporting industrial enterprise development and monitoring compliance with the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 46 of 2013). As part of the programme,

over the medium term, the department plans to attract private-sector investment amounting to R60 billion by implementing the black industrialists programme and other incentives in sectors such as agro-processing, metals fabrication, and chemicals and plastics.

Through its incentives, the department aims to provide financial support to an estimated 2 800 enterprises or projects to support an estimated 60 000 jobs over the period ahead. Manufacturing incentives account for 59.7% (R10.6 billion) of the Incentive Development and Administration programme's budget over the Medium term, with the department expecting to support 1 200 manufacturing enterprises over the same period. However, allocations for manufacturing incentives are expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 8.3%, from R3.5 billion in 2018/19 to R2.7 billion in 2021/22. Allocations to the Incentive Development and Administration programme are also expected to decrease, from R5.6 billion in 2018/19 to R5.5 billion in 2021/22, at an average annual rate of 0.4%. This decrease is due to allocations to the economic competitiveness and support package being made only up to 2020/21.

Developing industrial infrastructure

The department promotes industrialisation by spending on infrastructure projects in the Infrastructure Investment Support subprogramme in the Incentive Development and Administration programme. Activities carried out in the programme relate to facilitating the establishment of special economic zones (SEZs) and industrial parks. This includes supporting the implementation of infrastructure development and critical infrastructure projects.

Through the SEZs incentive, the department provides financial support for bulk infrastructure and top structures to improve industrialisation, regional development, exports and employment, as well as attract foreign and domestic direct investment. Over the medium term, the department plans to designate an additional SEZ in Mogwase (North West) to focus on renewable energy and technology, agro-processing, logistics, and mineral beneficiation. Allocations for the SEZs incentive are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 21.7%, from R900 million in 2018/19 to R1.6 billion in 2021/22.

The critical infrastructure programme contributes to lowering

the cost of doing business in South Africa. Over the Medium term, the department plans to revitalise roads, and bulk water and electricity supply in 26 industrial parks across the country, and in the process support an estimated 85 000 jobs. Activities will also involve supporting 40 strategic critical infrastructure projects such as power substations, cogeneration power plants, bulk infrastructure, and technical testing facilities for aerospace and defence. This work will be carried out at an estimated cost of R706.1 million over the medium term in the Infrastructure Investment Support subprogramme.

Strengthening export capabilities

In line with the department's continuing effort to build capacity to increase South African exports, over the medium term, it plans to continue implementing the integrated national export strategy. An estimated 2 674 South African companies will be assisted to participate at 15 national pavilions, trade missions, and trade and investment initiatives with the emphasis on increasing support to women-owned enterprises. To carry out these activities, R761.8 million over the Medium term is allocated to the Export Marketing and Investment Assistance programme in the Incentive Development and Administration programme.

Investment promotion

The dti plays a critical role in the promotion of economic development and meaningful participation in the global economic and trade environment. It achieves this by working to build an equitable multilateral trading system that facilitates development, and strengthens trade and investment links with key economies. A significant feature of the dti's international engagement also involves work to support African regional economic integration and development cooperation.

The dti recognises the importance of promoting trade and inward investment, and building trade and investment relations. It focuses on encouraging exports, to leverage global growth for the development of the South African economy, through the establishment of collaborative agreements with existing trading partners and dynamic fast-growing emerging markets.

The dti, in partnership with the Provincial Investment Promotion Agencies, undertakes investment and export promotion activities

in targeted markets that are aligned to South Africa's international relations and co-operation agreements.

Invest SA is a division of the dti which provides a One-Stop-Shop service to investors. It provides investment promotion, facilitation and aftercare services which are geared towards fast-tracking projects and reducing government red tape.

Industrial parks/special economic zones

SEZs are geographically designated areas of a country set aside for specifically targeted economic activities, supported through special arrangements (that may include laws) and systems that are often different from those that apply in the rest of the country.

The purpose of the SEZ programme is to:

- expand the strategic industrialisation focus to cover diverse regional development needs and context
- provide a clear, predictable and systemic planning framework for the development of a wider array of SEZs to support industrial policy objectives, the IPAP and the NGP
- clarify and strengthen governance arrangements, expand the range and quality of support measure beyond provision of infrastructure
- provide a framework for a predictable financing framework to enable long-term planning.

There are currently five operating IDZs in South Africa, namely:

- The Coega IDZ is the largest IDZ in southern Africa. It was designated in 2001 and became South Africa's first IDZ. It lies in the Nelson Mandela Bay Metropolitan Municipality in the Eastern Cape, which is strategically located on the east-west trade route to service both world and African markets. The Coega IDZ leverages public sector investment to attract foreign and domestic direct investment in the manufacturing sector with an export orientation. The IDZ has attracted investment in the agro-processing, automotive, aquaculture, energy, metals logistics and business process services sectors. This has advanced socio-economic development in the Eastern Cape region through skills development, technology transfer and job creation.
- The Richards Bay IDZ is a purpose-built and secure industrial estate on the north-eastern South African coast. The N2 business corridor links the province's two major

ports, Durban and Richards Bay, and connects with Maputo in Mozambique and, ultimately, areas of East Africa. It is linked to an international sea port of Richards Bay, tailored for manufacturing and storage of minerals and products to boost beneficiation, investment, economic growth and, most importantly, the development of skills and employment. First-world infrastructure allows for the full exploitation of the areas' natural and strategic advantages. Through the superb industrial infrastructure, well-established network of shipments, tax and duty-free incentives, the IDZ aims to encourage international competitiveness and the attraction of export-orientated manufacturing investment.

- The East London IDZ has become a prime industrial park in South Africa, renowned for its customised solutions for various industries including automotive, agro-processing and aqua-culture. The IDZ offers growth-oriented companies a specialised manufacturing platform, innovative industrial and business solutions access to new markets and strategic industry networks. The IDZ, one of the country's leading specialised industrial parks, is located in Buffalo City, the municipal area which also incorporates Bhisho, the province's capital and King William's Town. It was one of the first IDZs in South Africa to become operational and represents an ideal choice for the location of exported manufacturing and processing. Its location provides investors with connections to major markets both locally and across the globe.
- The Saldanha Bay IDZ in the Western Cape is expected to serve as the primary oil, gas and Marine Repair engineering and logistics services complex in Africa, servicing the needs of the upstream Oil Exploration Industry and Production service companies operating in the oil and gas fields off sub-Saharan Africa. Situated approximately two hours north of Cape Town, the IDZ will include logistics, repairs and maintenance, as well as fabrication activities.
- The Dube TradePort is a catalyst for global trade and a portal between KwaZulu-Natal and the world. It is the only facility in Africa that brings together an international airport, a cargo terminal, warehousing, offices, a retail sector, hotels and an agricultural area. Located 30 km north of Durban, Dube TradePort is positioned between the two biggest sea ports in

southern Africa, and linked to the rest of Africa by road and rail. The following two areas have been designated as comprising the IDZ: the Dube TradeZone and the Dube AgriZone. The Dube TradeZone aims to focus on manufacturing and value-addition primarily for automotive, electronics and fashion garments. The facility involves warehousing, manufacturing, assembling real estate resource, complete with a single facility in which all freight forwarders and shippers are located (Dube TradeHouse), which enjoys a direct link to the adjacent Dube Cargo Terminal via an elevated cargo conveyor system. The Dube AgriZone – a high-tech, future farming facility and host to the continent's largest climate-controlled growing area under glass – will focus on high-value, niche agricultural and horticultural products. The AgriLab will look into specialised tissue culture, greenhouses, flowers and plants, all of which require swift air transportation.

According to the 2018/19 – 2020/21 Industrial Policy Action Plan (IPAP), SEZs have proven to be an effective policy instrument for propelling industrialisation in some of the world's leading developing economies.

A number of incentives are available to ensure SEZs growth, revenue generation, creation of jobs, attraction of FDI and international competitiveness.

These SEZ incentives include:

Preferential 15% Corporate Tax:

Businesses (prescribed in section 24 (4) of the SEZ Act, 2014 (Act 16 of 2014)) that are located in a SEZ may be eligible for tax relief, including the reduced rate of corporate income taxation. In addition to satisfying the requirements of the Act, further criteria for some of the available tax incentives are stipulated in the Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act 58 of 1962.)

Building Allowance:

Businesses and Operators (prescribed in section 1 of the SEZ Act of 2014) operating within a SEZ may be eligible for tax relief, including the building allowance, subject to requirements contained in the Income Tax Act of 1962.

Employment Incentive:

Businesses and Operators operating within a SEZ may be eligible for tax relief, including the employment tax incentive subject to requirements contained in the Employment Tax Incentive Act, 2013 (Act 26 of 2013).

Customs Controlled Area:

Businesses and Operators located within a customs controlled area of a SEZ will be eligible for tax relief as per the Value-Added Tax Act, 1991 (Act 89 of 1991), the Customs and Excise Act, 1964 (Act 91 of 1964), the Customs Duty Act, 2014 (Act 30 of 2014) and the Customs Control Act, 2014 (Act 31 of 2014).

12i Tax Allowance:

The 12i Tax Incentive is designed to support Greenfield investments (new industrial projects that utilise only new and unused manufacturing assets), as well as Brownfield investments (expansions or upgrades of existing industrial projects). The new incentive offers support for both capital investment and training.

Black Industrialists

The Black Industrialists Policy aims to leverage the government's capacity to unlock the industrial potential that exists within black-owned and managed businesses that operate within the South African economy through deliberate, targeted and well-defined financial and non-financial interventions as described in the IPAP and other government policies.

This policy targets entities that should have extensive experience, operations and track record in their respective or envisaged industrial sectors and value chains. It is expected that the entities supported will:

- Expand their current operations or businesses to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within 10 years of being in the programme;
- Start a new operation or business that can enable them to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within 10 years of being in the programme; and
- Acquire an existing or new business that can enable them to become major players in the domestic and/or global markets within a specified period.

- Such entities should be operating in the manufacturing sectors of the economy in line with the industrialisation path as articulated in the IPAP.

Black Business Supplier Development Programme

The Black Business Supplier Development Programme is a cost-sharing grant offered to black-owned small enterprises to help them improve their competitiveness and sustainability, to become part of the mainstream economy and create employment.

The programme provides grants to a maximum of R1 million: R800 000 for tools, machinery and equipment on a 50:50 cost-sharing basis; and R200 000 for business development and training interventions per eligible enterprise to improve their corporate governance, management, marketing, productivity and use of modern technology.

The objectives of the incentive scheme are to:

- draw existing SMMEs exhibiting potential for growth into the mainstream economy
- grow black-owned enterprises by fostering linkages between black SMMEs and corporate and public-sector enterprises
- complement current affirmative procurement and outsourcing initiatives of corporate and public-sector enterprises
- enhance the capacity of grant-recipient enterprises to successfully compete for corporate and public-sector tenders and outsourcing opportunities.

Legislation, policies and strategies

The dti develops and reviews regulatory systems in the areas of competition, consumer protection, company and intellectual property, as well as public interest regulation.

It also oversees the work of national and provincial regulatory agencies mandated to assist the department in providing competitive and socially responsible business and consumer regulations, for easy access to redress and efficient markets.

The department's work is governed by a broad legislative framework. These include the:

- The BBBEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003)
- The Consumer Protection Act, 2008 (Act 68 of 2008)
- The Co-Operatives Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 6 of 2013),

which amended the Co-Operatives Act, 2005 (Act 14 of 2005)

- The Copyright Act, 1978 (Act 98 of 1978)
- The Intellectual Property Laws Rationalisation Act, 1996 (Act 107 of 1996)
- The Liquor Act, 2003 (Act 59 of 2003)
- The Patents Act, 1978 (Act 57 of 1978)
- The Small Business Development Act, 1981 (Act 112 of 1981)
- The Trade Marks Act, 1993 (Act 194 of 1993).
- The Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act 5 of 2000) as amended
- The BBBEE Amendment Act of 2013 aims to strengthen the implementation of BBBEE and its reporting across the economy, as well as to put in place mechanisms to deal with non-compliance.

The latter Act has several objectives, including aligning it with other legislation that deals with BBBEE and the Codes of Good Practice. It also seeks to establish the BBBEE Commission to create an institutional environment for monitoring and evaluating BBBEE.

Some of the key material amendments in the BBBEE Amendment Act of 2013 refer to:

- aligning the Act and the codes, which comprises an interpretation clause extended to include a trumping provision that stipulates that the BBBEE Amendment Act will trump any law that was in force prior to the commencement date of the Act
- establishing the BBBEE Commission as an entity within the administration of the dti, headed by a commissioner appointed by the Minister; the commission will be responsible for overseeing, supervising and promoting adherence to the act, as well as the monitoring and evaluation of BBBEE
- setting clear penalties, which include a minimum penalty of 10 years imprisonment (and/or a fine) or if the offender is not a natural person, a fine of 10% of its annual turnover

Budget

For the 2018/19 financial year, the dti's allocated budget was R9.5 billion. During the 2018/19 financial year, departmental revenue collected amounted to R73 million, a decrease of R33 million when compared to R106 million in the previous financial

year. The decrease is due to fines and penalties levied in the previous financial year in respect of non-performance by certain companies participating in the National Industrial Participation Programme and alternative dispute resolutions issued by the B-BBEE Commission.

The department has a total budget of R30.2 billion over the Medium term, of which 82% (R24.8 billion) is expected to be transferred to public corporations and private enterprises, and departmental agencies and accounts for incentive programmes. Spending on compensation of employees accounts for 10.7% (R3.3 billion) of the department's budget, increasing at an average annual rate of 5%, from R987.5 million in 2018/19 to R1.1 billion in 2021/22. Cabinet has approved reductions to the department's baseline budget amounting to R78.5 million over the Medium term, which will be effected mainly on the department's manufacturing development incentives and transfers to entities.

Role players

Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission

The PICC has the following 18 strategic integrated projects:

- Durban-Free State-Gauteng Logistics and Industrial Corridor
- South Eastern node and corridor development
- Unlocking the economic opportunities in North West
- Saldanha-Northern Cape Development Corridor
- Integrated Municipal Infrastructure Project
- Integrated Urban Space and Public Transport Programme
- Green Energy in support of the South African economy
- Electricity Generation to support socio-economic development
- Electricity Transmission and Distribution for all
- Agri-Logistics and Rural Infrastructure
- revitalisation of public hospitals and other health facilities
- rational school build programme
- Higher Education Infrastructure
- expanding access to communication technology
- SKA and MeerKat
- regional integration for African cooperation and development
- Water and Sanitation Infrastructure Master Plan.

The main objective of the PICC awareness campaign is to promote infrastructure development initiatives across the

country, whilst showcasing the tangible benefits in terms of job creation and mainstreaming access to social services.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Limited is a specialist risk-finance company that provides customised financial solutions, technical assistance, mentorship, business premises and other added-value services for formal small and medium enterprises in South Africa and selected African countries. The company is passionate about funding, supporting and mentoring entrepreneurs.

Business Partners Limited considers financing applications up to R50 million in all sectors of the economy — with the exception of on-lending activities, direct farming operations, underground mining and non-profit organisations — to those formal small and medium businesses whose gross assets are under R100 million, where annual turnover does not exceed R200 million and/or employees are less than 500 in number.

Applications for financing below R500 000 are usually not considered; and the company does not operate in the informal or micro enterprise sectors.

National Empowerment Fund (NEF)

The NEF was established by the NEF Act, 1998 (Act 105 of 1998), to promote and facilitate black economic equality and transformation.

The NEF provides finance and financial solutions to black businesses across a range of sectors. It also structures accessible retail savings products for previously disadvantaged people based on state-owned equity investments.

Its mandate and mission is to be government's funding agency in facilitating the implementation of BBBEE, in terms of the BEE codes of good practice.

The fund has five core divisions: small and medium enterprises, rural development, venture capital, corporate finance, and women empowerment funds.

South African Women Entrepreneurs' Network (SAWEN)

SAWEN is a South African national network that facilitates and monitors the socio-economic advancement of women

entrepreneurs and their positive impact on the country's economy.

The objectives of SAWEN are to:

- provide a national vehicle that brings women and women's groups together to address the challenges faced by them
- lobby government, public and private institutions on such issues, but not limited to policy, legislation and/or proposed legislation affecting either directly and indirectly the trade and commerce activities of women entrepreneurs
- align SAWEN with other bodies or organisations with similar business interests at both national and international level, and to leverage the relationships arising out of these alignments for the benefit of its members
- facilitate access to business resources, information and opportunities for South African women entrepreneurs in a way that promotes their effective participation in the global economy
- profile and affirm women in business leadership positions in both public and private sectors.

To buttress government's intent of strategic intervention in women's economic empowerment, the dti has been using vehicles such as SAWEN, the Isivande Women's Fund (IWF), Bavumile and Technology for Women in Business.

The Ligugu Lami Awards acknowledge women entrepreneurs and encourages them to take pride in their achievements.

Isivande Women's Fund

IWF is an exclusive fund that aims to accelerate women's economic empowerment by providing more affordable, usable and responsive finance than is currently available. The IWF assists with support services to enhance the success of businesses. It pursues deals involving start-up funding, business expansion, business rehabilitation, franchising and bridging finance.

The fund is managed by the IDC on behalf of the dti through a development fund manager.

IDF Managers is an SME financier aimed at supporting the creation of self-sustaining black-owned and women-owned businesses in South Africa by providing primarily financial and non-financial support to its investee companies.

The IDF Managers is responsible for reviewing eligible business plans requiring funding of R30 000 to R2 million.

The women-owned enterprises have to meet the following criteria:

- at least six months in operation
- requires early stage, expansions and growth capital
- 50% plus one share owned and managed by women
- have potential for growth and commercial sustainability
- improved social impact in the form of job creation.

Resources

Technology support

The dti implements skills development, economic infrastructure, and innovation and technology programmes to support priority sectoral and regional industrial development plans.

Some of the key programmes include the Technology and Human Resource for Industry Programme (THRIP), the Support Programme for Industrial Innovation (SPII) and the Centre for Entrepreneurship and Technology Programme.

Provision is also made for transfer payments and subsidies to:

- The Small Enterprise Development Agency's (SEDA) Technology Programme, which is managed by SEDA, to finance and support early, seed and start-up technology-based ventures
- THRIP, which is managed by the National Research Foundation, to support research and technology development
- the SPII, which is managed by the IDC, to support a wide group of enterprises that promote technological development through financial assistance
- the Workplace Challenge Programme, which finances and supports world-class manufacturing and value-chain efficiency improvements in South African companies.

Programmes and projects

Industrial Policy Action Plan

The IPAP is firmly entrenched in government's overall policy and plans to address the key challenges of economic and industrial growth and race-based poverty, inequality and unemployment. It is a key component of the President's Nine Point Plan and

is aligned to the policy perspective of Radical Economic Transformation. It is guided by the vision of the NDP.

The IPAP is a product of the Economic Sectors, Employment and Infrastructure Development Cluster. The responsibility for its implementation lies with government as a whole and a wide range of entities, including SOC's.

The IPAP 2016/17 – 2018/19 is informed by the vision set out for South Africa's development provided by the NDP. The IPAP is a key pillar of the Nine-Point Plan, which seeks to ignite economic growth and create much-needed jobs.

Key focus areas of IPAP 2018:

- Grow the economy.
- Strengthen efforts to raise aggregate domestic demand - mainly through localisation of public procurement and intensified efforts to persuade the private sector to support localisation and local supplier development.
- Step up South Africa's export effort.
- Create and reinforce policy certainty and programme alignment.
- Strengthen ongoing efforts to build a less concentrated, more competitive economic and manufacturing environment in which barriers to entry for new entrants are lowered.
- Build a stronger system of industrial finance and incentives to support and secure higher levels of private sector investment in the productive sectors of the economy and grow exports.
- Press ahead with technology-intensive, value-adding beneficiation projects which fully leverage South Africa's comparative resource endowment advantage into a global competitive advantage.
- Optimise technology transfer and diffusion and, working closely with the Department of Science and Technology, further ramp up the effort to commercialise 'home-grown' R&D in key sectors.
- Support the further strengthening of energy-efficient production and carbon mitigation efforts and measures in a manner that allows for sustainable adaptation by all the energy-intensive sectors of the economy.
- Understand, grasp and prepare for the foreseeable effects of the Digital Industrial Revolution and emergent disruptive technologies, collaboratively adapting South Africa's productive

and services sectors to meet the challenges, including those relating to employment displacement.

Automotives

The automotive industry remained the largest and leading manufacturing sector in the domestic economy.

The automotives sector has performed exceptionally well. The dti has established a team of technical experts to develop a post-2020 Automotives Master Plan.

The mandate of the team is to examine the entire automotive sector and not just the existing Automotive Policy Development Plan, which will include light, medium and heavy vehicles and motorcycles.

The purpose is to ensure that in the context of long-term policy certainty, a post-2020 Master Plan will create a framework to secure even higher levels of investment and production, higher exports, deepening localisation and expanding employment.

The dti initiated the Medium and Heavy Commercial Vehicles Automotive Investment Scheme (MHCv-AIS), a subcomponent of the Automotive Investment Scheme (AIS), an incentive designed to grow and develop the automotive sector through investment in new and/or replacement models and components that will increase plant production volumes, sustain employment and/or strengthen the automotive value chain.

The MHCv-AIS provides for a non-taxable cash grant of 20% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets by medium and heavy commercial vehicle manufactures and 25% of the value of qualifying investment in productive assets by component manufactures and tooling companies for MHCv's as approved by the dti.

Some of the conditions are that the applicant must:

- be a registered legal entity in South Africa in terms of the Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008 (as amended)); Companies Act, 1973 (as amended); or the Close Corporations Act, 1994 (as amended), and must undertake manufacturing in South Africa
- be a taxpayer in good standing and must, in this regard, provide a valid tax clearance certificate before the MHCv-AIS grant is disbursed; the grant will only be applicable to

investment in assets that will be used in the entity's South African operations

- submit a business plan with a detailed marketing and sales plan, a production plan, budget and projected financial income statement, cash-flow statement and balance sheet, for a period of at least three years for the project submit a B-BBEE certificate, ITAC Registration certificate, projected financial income statement, cash-flow statement and balance sheet for a period of at least three years of the relevant division, cost centre or branch where the project is located, if applicable submit a cost benefit analysis for the project in cases where it cannot provide information in respect of a cost centre.

Clothing and textiles

After government set a 100% local content requirement, the clothing, textiles, leather and footwear sector saw the reintroduction of products where local production had been discontinued.

These include technical fabrics, protective footwear, protective fabrics and chambray fabrics.

This intervention, supported also by the Clothing and Textile Competitiveness Improvement Programme, has contributed to turning the sector around. In response to the flood of cheap clothing imports, government has increased the import duty on clothing to 45% in line with World Trade Organisation regulations.

Business process services (BPS)

South Africa's BPS sector continued to maintain its status as a leading global outsourcing destination, while steadily moving up the value chain in terms of service offerings.

BPS already accounts for 200 000 jobs nationally and is one of the country's fastest-growing sectors, with double digit growth over the past five years.

South African Emerging Black Filmmakers Incentive Scheme

The South African Emerging Black Filmmakers Incentive is available to South African black-owned qualifying productions. It aims to nurture and capacitate emerging black filmmakers to

take up big productions and contribute towards employment opportunities.

The dti expected to spend R100 million to support emerging black filmmakers by the end of March 2018.

World Economic Forum (WEF) 2019

The 49th WEF took place from 22 to 25 January 2019 in Davos, Switzerland.

The 2019 theme for this international gathering was "Globalization 4.0: Shaping a Global Architecture in the Age of the Fourth Industrial Revolution."

President Cyril Ramaphosa led the South African delegation to the event. The primary objective of the South African delegation was to strengthen partnerships and collaboration for inclusive economic growth and development in South Africa, with particular emphasis on increasing international investment into the country.

South Africa has the most developed, diversified, technologically advanced and industrially integrated economy on the African continent. The country remains one of the preferred investment destinations in Africa and is also an important gateway for markets and other business opportunities throughout the continent.

The WEF is an independent, international organisation whose aim is to contribute to more positive outcomes in the world by engaging business, political leaders, academia and other leaders of society to inform and shape the global, regional and industry agendas.

South African Premier Business Awards

The South African Premier Business Awards is an annual event hosted by the dti in partnership with Proudly South African and Brand South Africa. The awards recognise business excellence and honours enterprises that promote the spirit of success and innovation as well as job creation, good business ethics and quality. These awards bring together all single sector awards, among others technology, manufacturing and women in business.

The 6th South African Premier Business Awards were held on 13 March 2019 at the Sandton Convention Centre in Johannesburg.

The winners were as follows:

- Black Industrialist Award: Afro-zonke Projects and Investment.
- Enterprise Development Award: Saab Grintek Defence (Pty) Ltd.
- Exporter Award: Saab Grintek Defence (Pty) Lt.
- Investor Award: Coega Development Corporation.
- Manufacturer Award: J Bunyan Timbercraft CC T/A Timbercraft.
- Proudly South African: Jane Massey Trading RSAMade.
- SMME Award: Eco Smart and Ndoukhulu Hydraulic and Mining Supplier.
- Women-owned Award: CTE Investments (Pty) Ltd Eco Smart.
- Play Your Part Award: Intercessor Army Franchising.
- Young Entrepreneur Award: Bathu Swag (Pty) Ltd.

International cooperation

The Investment and Trade Initiative (ITI) is part of the dti's objective to create market penetration for South African value-added products and services, and to promote South Africa as a trade and investment destination.

The ITI focuses on showcasing South Africa's diverse range of capabilities to produce world-class products and services in the targeted sectors, which include agro-processing (rooibos tea, dried fruits, spices, sauces, frozen fish and sparkling 100% fruit juice), industrial chemicals and automotive components.

South African companies have developed highly specialised skills and products and there are various opportunities for South African companies to market their expertise and collaborate in projects with their Brazilian counterparts.

The programme of the ITI includes trade and investment seminar, business-to-business meetings and sector-specific business site visits to companies in São Paulo and Porto Alegre.

Department of Public Enterprises (DPE)

The Department of Public Enterprises (DPE) is the shareholder representative for government with oversight responsibility for seven state-owned companies (SOCs) in its portfolio, namely the South African Airways (SAA), the South African Express

Airways, Transnet, Eskom, Denel, the South African Forestry Company (SAFCOL) and Alexkor. The mandate of the DPE is to fulfil oversight responsibilities over these SOCs to ensure that they contribute to the realisation of government's strategic objectives, as articulated in the NDP, MTSF, the New Growth Path and IPAP.

In the current economic climate, SOCs have emerged as key instruments for the State to drive its developmental objectives of creating jobs, and for enhancing equity and transformation.

The SOCs in the DPE's portfolio form the cornerstone of the economy and their capacity would be strategically used to support the delivery of the NDP outcomes, making the strengthening of oversight tools for the SOCs crucial to socio-economic transformation.

The department does not directly execute programmes but seeks to leverage off state ownership in the economy to support the delivery of key outcomes outlined in the NDP and government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF.

To restore proper corporate governance, new boards with appropriately experienced directors, have been appointed at Eskom, Denel, Transnet, SAFCOL, and the South African Express Airways.

A Presidential SOE Council has been established to provide political oversight and strategic management in order to reform, reposition and revitalise SOEs, so that they can play their role as catalysts of economic growth and development.

Where SOEs are not able to raise sufficient financing from banks, from capital markets, from development finance institutions or from the fiscus, other mechanisms, such as strategic equity partnerships or selling off non-strategic assets will be explored.

Strengthening state-owned company oversight

Over the medium term, the department plans to continue assessing the corporate plans of these companies to ensure that key performance indicators in their compacts are incorporated appropriately, and will enhance its monitoring and reviewing of the companies' financial and operational performance. The department is developing operating procedures to standardise and enhance its analysis of the financial and operational

performance of these companies, and, where necessary, intervention measures will be developed with a view to align the performance of SOCs with the NDP vision.

In 2018/19, the Minister of Public Enterprises appointed new boards of directors in all SOCs to strengthen their governance systems. In 2019/20, the department plans to conduct five evaluations on the performance of the new boards of directors, in line with the companies' shareholder compacts. Working with other relevant departments, the DPE plans to align policies affecting the air transportation sector, with a view to positioning state airlines to support growth in trade and tourism, and thereby create jobs. In addition, proposals have been made for the implementation of an optimal corporate structure for state airlines, which will facilitate closer collaboration between the SAA and the South African Express Airways. The department will oversee and support the implementation of the approved structure.

Over the medium term, the department will continue developing a government shareholder management policy that aims to clarify how government will go about exercising its role as shareholder. The policy seeks to improve the performance of SOCs through good corporate governance by setting explicit goals, and requiring the companies' boards and management to monitor performance. Performance incentives for executives will be transparently and directly linked to desired outcomes, including audit outcomes.

Budget

The department's budget for the 2018/19 financial year was R6.5 billion. The department's oversight activities are mainly funded in the SOCs Governance Assurance and Performance, and Business Enhancement, Transformation and Industrialisation programmes. The combined budget for these programmes is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 71.6% over the medium term, from R6.5 billion in 2018/19 to R146 million in 2021/22. This is due to additional funding of R1.2 billion allocated to the SAA and R5 billion allocated to the SAA during the 2018/19 adjustments budget.

Spending on goods and services, mainly driven by travel and subsistence and consultants, is expected to increase at

an average annual rate of 6.3%, from R97.5 million in 2018/19 to R117.1 million in 2021/22. Spending on compensation of employees, which is set to increase at an average annual rate of 7.2 per cent, from R171.4 million in 2018/19 to R211.2 million in 2021/22, constitutes the department's largest cost driver.

Role players

The DPE oversees the following seven SOCs, which are key drivers of economic growth:

South African Airways

The SAA is the South African national flag carrier. Its vision is to be Africa's leading world-class airline. Its principal activities include providing scheduled air services for the transportation of passengers, freight and mail, to international, regional and domestic destinations. In fulfilling its mission of delivering a commercially sustainable, world-class air passenger and aviation services in South Africa, the rest of the African continent as well as internationally, the SAA operates to 32 destinations worldwide, carrying 8.5 million passengers and 115 260 tonnes of cargo annually with a fleet size of 62 aircraft.

The airline's turnaround strategy has been fine-tuned to take into account changes in the operating environment. In the turnaround strategy it was anticipated that the SAA would return to profitability in the 2020/21 financial year. The airline is on-track with implementation, projecting that it will achieve losses lower than the R5.2 billion budgeted for in the 2018/19 financial year.

The Department will be evaluating options for introducing a Strategic Equity Partner at the group level, to bring management expertise, expand the reach of the SAA's route network and reduce future fiscal burden.

South African Express

The South African Express Airways is a regional carrier providing scheduled air transportation of passengers, air charter services, air cargo and mail services on thin secondary routes in South Africa and the South African Development Community (SADC) region. The airline is currently operating from OR Tambo International Airport

and Cape Town International Airport to 10 destinations carrying 1.8 million passengers a year with a total of 10 active aircraft.

The South African Express Airways was established in 1994 as a regional carrier, providing feeder air services that connect with the South African Airways (SAA) route network. The airline's mission is to operate sustainably an integrated route network connecting secondary and hub airports with a market footprint spanning countries in the SADC region, including Angola, Botswana, Namibia, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Zambia.

The South African Express Airways's services were suspended in May 2016 and May 2018 by the South African Civil Aviation Authority. The airline is currently rebuilding its operations. It has developed a strategic turnaround plan with five pillars focused on addressing governance, profitability, operational efficiency, customer value proposition and human capital. The airline expects to improve its profitability in the 2019/20 financial year.

The department is currently looking at incorporating the South African Express into the SAA with an objective of enhancing operational coordination and realising efficiencies and synergies. It is anticipated that integration would improve both the operational and financial performance of both the South African Express and SAA.

Denel

Denel is the largest manufacturer of defence equipment in South Africa and operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment. Incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the South African Companies Act, 1973 (Act 62 of 1973), Denel's sole shareholder is the South African Government. Denel is a national security asset, with the primary purpose of designing, developing, manufacturing and supporting defence materiel. Denel is also assigned to retain and maintain strategic and sovereign defence industrial capabilities. Denel sources about 60% of its revenue from exports and 40% from the local market mainly the Department of Defence.

The Denel Board was appointed in May 2018. By the end of July 2018, the company had finalised a turnaround strategy that is focused on restructuring it to reduce costs, improving programme management, disposing of non-core and non-strategic assets as well as partnering with the private sector to grow the business. This plan was refined when finalising the 2019 Corporate Plan.

The 2017/18 and 2018/19 financial years have been the most difficult years in over a decade for the SOC. The entity experienced crippling liquidity challenges that affected operations and delivery of key projects. As a result, the positive trend of growing revenue and improving profitability was reversed. Denel had to request not only the rollover of existing guarantees, but additional guarantees (bringing the total facility to R3.43 billion) to enable the company to raise funding. The board is mandated to drive the turnaround of the business and to improve the stakeholder environment which is key to the sustainability of Denel.

Denel has an order book of R18 billion and has a strong pipeline of opportunities in excess of R30 billion. Government continues to provide support to Denel. The company's guaranteed facility was increased by R1 billion, which took the total guarantee facility to R3.43 billion and the term of the guarantees was extended for a period of five years expiring in 2023.

The department will be giving consideration to the option of bringing in Strategic Equity Partners into some of the businesses. The main aim is to open new sources of capital, develop new technologies and processes, provide market access, safeguard the sovereign and strategic defence capabilities and support other national objectives.

Transnet

Transnet is the largest freight transport company in the continent and most crucial part of the freight logistics chain that delivers goods in South Africa.

Transnet's mandate is to contribute to lowering the cost of doing business in South Africa, enable economic growth, and ensure security of supply through providing appropriate port, rail and pipeline infrastructure in a cost-effective and efficient manner.

This is in line with Outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) of government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF.

A new Interim board was appointed in May 2018, which has been acting decisively on the forensic report findings and improving governance in the Transnet business.

The company is focusing on improving its operational performance to reduce the cost of freight handling and transportation. The department continues to work with Transnet to develop, implement and monitor concrete plans for improving efficiency; reducing administered prices; and achieving a shift of rail addressable commodities from road to rail.

Over the medium-term, Transnet was able to increase the tonnage moved on rail to above 226 metric tons per annum and average crane moves per hour ranged between 28 and 30 moves. The anchorage waiting time has decreased significantly to 30 hours, contributing to improved productivity and efficiency across the eight commercial ports.

Transnet, with its responsibility of providing and operating rail, ports and pipelines infrastructure has continued to create adequate capacity ahead of demand. However, considering the economic climate, the company is reviewing its investment programme. This is to ensure alignment of capacity with demand so as to avoid the freight transportation system having to bear unnecessary overhead costs. There may be a need to extend the planned capital programme from seven to 10 years, due to slower growth in the economy and a decrease in export demand for mining commodities.

Over the medium term and beyond, Transnet will continue with a number of key infrastructure and equipment projects. These include the rollout of the manganese expansion project, the berth-deepening and reconstruction of Durban Container Terminal (Pier 2), the doubling in size of the Overvaal tunnel, the delivery of the new locomotives, and delivery on Operation Phakisa initiatives, which relate to the oceans economy.

Transnet made substantial investments in South Africa's national transport economic infrastructure. These include R107 billion in the country's rail freight network, R18 billion in the commercial ports infrastructure and R17 billion in the national pipeline network. Overall, approximately R168 billion has been

invested over the previous six years of the Market Demand Strategy, and Transnet intends to invest a further R153 billion in capital over the next five years to 2022/23.

South African Forestry Company

SAFCOL was established as a SOC in 1992 under the Management of State Forests Act of 1992 for the management of and control over State commercial plantation forests. The company's activities include forestry management, and timber harvesting and processing.

SAFCOL plays a critical role in the sector as a grower of sawlogs for supply in the forestry value chain, ranging from the sawmilling, furniture manufacturing, mining and pulp and paper industries mainly in Mpumalanga, KwaZulu Natal and Limpopo. Komatiland Forests, a subsidiary of SAFCOL, owns and operates one processing plant in Limpopo and has two in Mpumalanga, with one mothballed and operating on one rented facility.

SAFCOL's operating land is under land claims, posing a huge threat in the future of SAFCOL. While awaiting settlement of land claims, SAFCOL is investing in neighbouring communities. Furthermore, SAFCOL, through Komatiland Forest, has 80% shareholding in IFLOMA – a state-owned forestry company in Mozambique. This ownership will enable the growth of SAFCOL into African countries.

Eskom

Eskom generates 95% of the electricity used in South Africa and 45% of the electricity used in Africa. It is governed by the Eskom Conversion Act, 2001 (Act 13 of 2001), and is mandated to generate, transmit and distribute electricity to industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential customers and redistributors.

Eskom has concluded a turn-around plan to deal with its short term recovery and long term sustainability. The turn-around strategy is premised on driving efficiencies and containment of operational costs, ensuring clean governance, driving operational excellence and operational performance improvements.

In the 2019 State of the Nation Address, President Cyril

Ramaphosa announced major reforms that government will undertake to restructure the electricity sector so that it is appropriately positioned to respond to the changes taking place in the sector. These will start with the separation of the three Eskom divisions (Generation, Transmission and Distribution) into separate entities under Eskom Holdings. The government has approved R23 billion for the next three financial years to assist with the re-organisation of Eskom.

The deterioration of generation plant performance over the past months has resulted in insufficient capacity to meet the country's electricity demand in November and December 2018 and again in February and March 2019. This meant that rotational load shedding had to be implemented to protect the integrity of the National Grid. Energy availability moved from 78% in the 2017/18 financial year to 70.4% in March 2019. The Generation Recovery Programme is a consolidation of the critical "pain points" requiring added support and focus. This will allow Eskom to fast-track improvement in generation performance and, ultimately, improve availability of plants in the long run.

Over 7.4 million households have been connected to the grid and over 160 307 connected by non-grid technology since 1994. As at 31 December 2018, 108 467 households were connected during the 2018/19 financial year. Three units at Medupi Power Station are currently producing 2 382 MW to the national grid. Medupi Power Station is expected to be completed during the 2020/21 financial year. Kusile Power Station is currently producing 800 MW to the grid. Kusile Power Station's remaining five units are expected to be complete during the 2022/23 financial year. As at 31 January 2017, all four units of Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme were providing power to the grid. As at 31 December 2018, 334 km of transmission lines were installed and 540 MVA transmission transformer capacity installed and commissioned. As at 31 December 2018, a total of 31 176 jobs were created across the capital expansion programme (Medupi, Kusile, Ingula and Power Delivery Projects).

Alexkor

Alexkor mines diamonds in the Alexander Bay area, including marine mining and land mining. Alexkor was established in

terms of the Alexkor Limited Act, 1992 (Act 116 of 1992) to mine marine and land diamonds in Alexander Bay.

The land-mining rights and 49% of the mining operations were ceded to the Richtersveld community following the conclusion of the land restitution agreement with government in 2007. Alexkor remains the owner of the sea-mining rights and 51% of the mining operations.

The mining operations with the land and sea-mining rights have been pooled into an unincorporated entity called the Alexkor Pooling and Sharing Joint Venture. The mining operations employ 250 people.

The settlement agreement included, among other things, the restoration of land and mineral rights, the formation of the pooling and sharing joint venture, environmental rehabilitation, and the establishment and development of the town at Alexander Bay.

As a result, since November 2013, the town has been made official and now forms part of the Richtersveld Municipality. Progress to date includes the upgrade of residential properties' electrical and water reticulation systems, and the transfer of the mine operations restored with the land mining rights to the Richtersveld Mining Company. The implementation of the plan to rehabilitate mining areas has also begun.

The company has also undertaken an initial study to explore alternative revenue streams to improve its financial position. Alexkor will continue to work towards improved sustainability over the medium term.

Alexkor Richtersveld Mining Company Pooling and Sharing Joint Venture (Alexkor RMC PSJV) commenced with the exploration of new shallow water channels which were previously unexplored. Over 6 000 carats were produced against a target of 5 000 carats at the shallow water operations.

Despite the introduction of new diamond mining operations, Alexkor RMC PSJV did not achieve its targeted annual production of 57 000 carats. The diamond operations achieved 48 434 carats. The decline in revenue was further exacerbated by the disruption of the deep sea mining operations. The deep sea mining vessel caught fire in April 2017 which resulted in extensive damages. The deep sea operations were expected to resume in the second quarter of 2018/19.

Department of Small Business Development (DSBD)

The mission of the DSBD is to create a conducive environment for the development and growth of small businesses and co-operatives through the provision of enhanced financial and non-financial support services.

The DSBD creates a conducive environment for the development and growth of small businesses and co-operatives through the provision of:

- enhanced financial and non-financial support services
- competitiveness, market access
- promotion of entrepreneurship, advancing localisation
- leveraging on public and private procurement.

The department leads an integrated approach on the promotion and development of small businesses and co-operatives, focusing on the economic and legislative drivers that would stimulate entrepreneurship to contribute to radical economic transformation.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on: developing, evaluating and reviewing strategies and legislation for small enterprises and cooperatives; increasing support for small enterprises; and developing and supporting cooperatives.

Budget

The department has a total budget of R8.1 billion over the medium term, 72.8% (R5.9 billion) of which is for transfers to the Small Enterprise Development Agency for its operations, and the Small Enterprise Finance Agency for administering the small business and innovation fund. The department's expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 24.4%, from R1.5 billion in 2018/19 to R2.9 billion in 2021/22. This is mainly due to allocations amounting to R3.2 billion over the Medium term to operationalise the small business and innovation fund.

For the 2018/18 financial year, department was allocated R1.48 billion.

Developing, evaluating and reviewing strategies and legislation for small enterprises and cooperatives

In seeking to fulfil its mandate to provide strategic and

legislative drivers that stimulate entrepreneurship and economic transformation, the department plans to undertake various legislative and policy reviews and amendments, which are expected to be completed by 2020. Key among these are drafting the National Small Business Amendment Bill, which seeks to standardise the definition of SMMEs to allow for the development of more appropriate policy and support interventions; and reviewing the integrated strategy on the promotion of entrepreneurship and small enterprises to enable it to be responsive to current economic conditions and business life cycles.

Over the medium term, the department plans to conduct research focused on examining barriers to entry and other impediments to small businesses that result in increases to the cost of doing business in South Africa. Research findings will assist the department, in partnership with other stakeholders, to develop strategies related to reducing red tape, accessing markets and conducting business rescue. These activities will be carried out in the Sector Policy and Research programme which has a budget of R117.3 million over the Medium term. Expenditure in the programme is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 12.3% from R29.9 million in 2018/19 to R42.3 million in 2021/22.

Increasing support for small enterprises

The department provides support for small enterprises directly and indirectly through the SEDA and the SEFA. However, the black business supplier development programme and the national informal business upliftment scheme are implemented directly by the department.

The black business supplier development programme offers a cost-sharing grant for small enterprises to acquire tools, machinery, equipment and training to a maximum of R1 million per applicant, while the national informal business upliftment scheme aims to develop and grow informal businesses by providing financial, non-financial and infrastructure support services.

Over the medium term, 2 360 small enterprises are expected to benefit from the black business supplier development programme, which is allocated R906.5 million. Over the same

period, 5 612 informal businesses are expected to benefit from the national informal business upliftment scheme and 45 informal business structures are expected to be supported through the scheme's infrastructure facility, which provides a 50-50 cost-sharing grant for public and private sector investments in economic infrastructure.

Developing and supporting cooperatives

The department will continue providing financial support to cooperatives through the cooperatives incentive scheme. The scheme provides a 100% grant to the maximum of R350 000 per registered primary cooperative and R11 million per registered clustered cooperatives. In doing so, the scheme intends to improve the viability and competitiveness of cooperatives by lowering the cost of doing business. Over the Medium term, the scheme aims to support 890 cooperatives with a total allocation of R278.7 million.

Department of Public Works (DPW)

The DPW is mandated to be the custodian and portfolio manager of national government's immovable assets.

Following the operationalisation of the Property Management Trading Entity in 2015/16, the DPW's role will now be policy formulation, coordination, regulation and oversight relating to the provision of accommodation and expert built environment services to client departments at the national government level; as well as, through the Property Management Trading Entity, the planning, acquiring, managing and disposing of immovable assets in the department's custody.

The DPW is further mandated to coordinate and provide strategic leadership in job creation initiatives through the implementation of the Expanded Public Work Programme (EPWP). The DPW is constitutionally designated as a concurrent function exercised by both the national and provincial spheres of government.

As articulated in government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF and the NDP, slow economic growth and the associated unemployment are expected to characterise South Africa's economic performance over the medium term.

Against this background, the DPW is expected to contribute

to providing labour-intensive work opportunities and income support to low-skilled or unskilled unemployed people by coordinating the EPWP.

The DPW enables participating government and non-government bodies to identify and bring into the programme labour-intensive projects with a significant capacity to absorb low-skilled work seekers.

Over the medium term, the DPW will continue to focus on: creating employment opportunities; providing better oversight, better cooperation and better service delivery; facilitating skills development in the construction and property sectors; reviewing and developing policy; and improving governance and mitigating risk. These objectives contribute towards the realisation of outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth), outcome 6 (an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network) and outcome 12 (an efficient, effective and development-orientated public service) of government's 2014-2019 medium-term strategic framework.

Legislation and policies

The DPW is governed by the following legislation:

- The State Land Disposal Act, 1961 (Act 48 of 1961).
- The Occupational Health and Safety (OHS) Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), compels the DPW to prepare health and safety specifications for any intended construction project and contractors making a bid, or appointed to perform construction work with the specifications.

Responsibility for OHS and workers' compensation in South Africa resides in three government departments:

- The Department of Labour is responsible for workers' compensation, in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), and for OHS, in terms of the OHS Act of 1993.
- The Department of Mineral Resources is responsible for OHS in mines and mining areas, in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996).
- The Department of Health is responsible for compensating mine workers, in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1993 (Act 208 of 1993).

Budget

Over the medium term, 86.6% (R21.6 billion) of the department's total budget is allocated to transfers and subsidies for the operations of the department's entities, and conditional grants to provinces and municipalities for the implementation of the expanded public works programme. An estimated 7.1% (R1.8 billion) of the department's total budget over the period ahead is allocated to spending on compensation of employees.

For the 2018/19 financial year, the department's budget allocation was R7.5 billion.

Role players

Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB)

The CIDB provides leadership to stakeholders; stimulates the growth, reform and improvement of the construction sector; and enhances the industry's role in the South African economy. The board's total budget for 2018/19 was R174.4 million.

Council for the Built Environment (CBE)

The CBE is an overarching body that coordinates the six built-environment professional councils – architecture, engineering, landscape architecture, project and construction management, property valuation and quantity surveying – to promote good conduct within the professions, transform them and advise government on built-environment related issues.

The CBE is also an appeal body to ensure protection of the public interest. As such, the CBE and the six councils for the professions maintain, and apply, standards for built-environment professionals' conduct and practice to effectively protect the interests of the public. The council's total budget for 2018/19 was R53.7 million.

Agrément South Africa

The board is mandated to certify non-standardised or unconventional built environment construction products, materials and systems through technical assessments that verify whether such products, materials and systems are fit for purpose. The board's total budget for 2018/19 was R34.8 million.

Independent Development Trust

The Independent Development Trust has evolved from a grant-making organisation into a responsive development agency with a well-established footprint across South Africa. The trust's total budget for 2018/19 was R349.2 million.

Programmes and projects

Expanded Public Works Programme

The department leads and coordinates the expanded public works programme, which provides an important avenue for labour absorption and income transfers to poor households in the short to medium term.

The EPWP is a nationwide programme covering all spheres of government and SOEs.

The programme provides an important avenue for labour absorption and income transfers to poor households, in the short to medium term.

EPWP projects employ workers on a temporary or ongoing basis with government, contractors, or other non-governmental organisations under the Ministerial Conditions of Employment for the EPWP or learnership employment conditions.

The EPWP creates work opportunities in four sectors, namely infrastructure, non-state, environment and culture and social, by:

- increasing the labour intensity of government-funded infrastructure projects
- creating work opportunities through the Non-Profit Organisation programme and Community Work Programme
- creating work opportunities in public environment and culture programmes
- creating work opportunities in public social programmes.

The EPWP also provides training and enterprise development support, at a subprogramme level.

To date, the programme has created a total of 3.5 million work opportunities in the infrastructure, social, environment and culture sectors, in line with the demand for labour. The department aims to create a further 4.4 million work opportunities through the programme over the Medium term through transfers and subsidies to public bodies, such as provinces, municipalities and non-profit organisations, amounting to an estimated R7.7 billion.

As the coordinator of the programme, the DPW will monitor the quality of the programme's delivery of infrastructure and services to the poor (including training), and it will encourage greater participation in the programme and community ownership of it.

The department will continue to provide technical support, particularly through data capturing and verification, to public bodies implementing the programme. The department expects to spend R1.1 billion for the management of the programme in the EPWP, of which: R573.3 million is for compensation of employees for the administration of the programme; and R507.4 million for goods and services, with R241.2 million of the R507.4 million earmarked for data capturing and verification.

Better oversight, better cooperation, better service delivery

The department is mandated to provide office accommodation to client departments, and ensure that its buildings are maintained to an acceptable standard and that property rates are paid to municipalities. The department leads and coordinates policies and legislative frameworks that guide the implementation of the public works function at provincial and municipal level, and oversees and manages the performance of provinces. It manages its portfolio of immovable assets through the Property Management Trading Entity. The department will continue to monitor programmes in the sector and provide support on processes related to planning and performance management. Accordingly, over the medium term, the department aims to sign 45 cooperation and protocol agreements for joint service delivery with provinces and municipalities, and establish non-punitive mechanisms, such as interdepartmental forums, to address negative audit outcomes. To carry out its oversight role, R105 million over the medium term is allocated in the Intergovernmental Coordination programme, with spending on compensation of employees accounting for 77.7% (R81.6 million) of this amount.

Skills development in the construction and property sectors

To improve the delivery of infrastructure in the public works sector, the department plans to support skills development

and transformation in the built environment sector. As part of its efforts to increase the throughput of built environment graduates and invest in young built environment professionals, the department's skills pipeline strategy makes provision for technical bursary schemes, internships, learnerships, property management training and artisan development, with structured workplace training to expedite professional development and registration.

In giving expression to this strategy, the department will ensure the participation of an estimated 1 100 beneficiaries over the medium term in the department and Property Management Trading Entity's skills development programme. Skills development activities will be carried out in the Professional Services subprogramme in the Intergovernmental Coordination programme through an allocation of R89.4 million over the medium term.

Reviewing and developing policy

The department is responsible for regulating the construction and property sectors, and ensuring that they transform in line with the vision articulated in the NDP. Towards the development of a public works act that will provide an overarching legislative framework for the sector, over the medium term, the department will continue its review of the Construction Industry Development Board Act, 2000 (Act 38 of 2000), the Council for the Built Environment Act, 2000 (Act 43 of 2000) and the founding acts for the six built environment professional councils. It will also continue finalising its reviews of the 1997 and 1999 white papers on public works. These reviews are expected to culminate in a draft document in 2019/20 that will take into account comments from key stakeholders in the public works sector and construction industry, and establish mechanisms to ensure the transformation of the construction and built environment sectors.

Expenditure for activities related to the regulation and transformation of the construction and built environment sectors is expected to amount to R111 million over the medium term.

Improving governance and mitigating risk

To bring about greater efficiencies in the delivery of services

and contribute towards good governance and ethical practices, the department aims to improve various internal policies, processes and systems. This includes the implementation of a holistic strategy aimed at preventing fraud, which emphasises the application of proactive measures to enhance operational efficiency.

The strategy seeks to put in place key controls that address the risk of fraud by aligning financial and business internal control systems with the department's fraud risk management plan to increase awareness about the risk of fraud. Through these measures, the department aims to limit fraud and corruption, ensure the efficient use of State resources, and improve service delivery and stakeholder confidence. An estimated R142.2 million over the medium term is allocated in the Administration programme to carry out governance, risk and compliance activities.

Department of Labour

The mandate of the Department of Labour is to regulate the labour market through policies and programmes developed in consultation with social partners, which are aimed at:

- improving economic efficiency and productivity,
- facilitating decent employment creation,
- promoting labour standards and fundamental rights at work,
- providing adequate social safety nets to protect vulnerable workers,
- promoting and enforcing sound labour relations,
- eliminating inequality and discrimination in the workplace,
- enhancing occupational health and safety awareness and compliance in the workplace, and
- giving value to social dialogue in the formulation of sound and responsive legislation and policies to attain labour market flexibility for competitiveness of enterprises that is balanced with the promotion of decent employment.

The Department of Labour supports efforts towards realising the goals of the NDP in terms of resolving workplace disputes and improving labour relations, enhancing occupational health and safety, and facilitating job creation.

Outcome 4 (decent employment through inclusive growth) of government's 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework

gives overall strategic direction to the department's work. Over the medium term, the department will focus on increasing workplace inspections, supporting work seekers, and regulating the workplace to establish minimum working conditions and fair labour practices.

Legislation and policy

The department administers the following legislation:

- The Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995), applies to all workers and employers, and aims to advance economic development, social justice, labour peace and the democracy of the workplace.
- The Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), applies to all employers and workers and protects workers and job seekers from unfair discrimination, and also provides a framework for implementing affirmative action.
- The Unemployment Insurance Act, 1996 (Act 30 of 1996), provides security to workers, when they become unemployed.
- The OHS Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993) provides and regulates health and safety at the workplace for all workers.
- The National Economic Development and Labour Council (NEDLAC) Act, 1994 (Act 35 of 1994).
- Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998 as amended), develops and improves the skills of the South African workforce.
- The Employment Services Act, 2014 (Act 4 of 2014), promotes employment, growth and workplace productivity.

Budget

Cabinet approved budget reductions amounting to R103.2 million over the Medium term have been effected across all programmes on goods and services (R35 million); compensation of employees (R49.5 million); and transfers to departmental entities (R18.7 million) for a freeze on salary increases for senior management staff earning more than R1.5 million per year and a 2.8% increase for senior managers earning between R1 million and R1.49 million per year. The reduction in spending on compensation of employees is expected to result in a decrease of 202 funded posts and a net decrease in total headcount, from 3 346 in 2018/19 to 3 337 in 2021/22.

Cabinet-approved budget increases amounting to R151.6 million over the medium term have been effected on transfers to public entities. The Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration receives an additional R107.6 million over the Medium term to address increasing caseloads, and provide training to commissioners and assessors to preside over advisory arbitration processes and conduct balloting and certification processes. The transfer to the National Economic Development and Labour Council is expected to increase by R44 million over the medium term to: fund the council's contribution for a staff pension plan and medical aid, cover shortfalls in cost of living adjustments, fund the next presidential jobs summit, and address other operational costs arising from the council's increasing workload.

Key to achieving this is the inspection of workplaces for compliance with employment law. In pursuit of creating healthy and safe workplaces and responding to persistent non-compliance by employers, the department has amended the OHS Act of 1993 to introduce compulsory provisions, such as permitting inspectors to administer fines and allowing employees to leave the workplace if conditions are unhealthy or unsafe.

The amended act, which is targeted for implementation in 2020/21, makes provision for health and safety representatives in the service of employers to check for compliance through routine inspections.

Over the medium term, the department will collaborate with the Compensation Fund to increase the number of occupational health and safety inspectors. This is intended to provide improved services to employees and employers, and ensure that the most vulnerable employees are protected. In this regard, R1.6 billion is allocated over the medium term in the Compliance, Monitoring and Enforcement subprogramme in the Inspection and Enforcement Services programme for the inspection and enforcement of employment law. The Compensation Fund has budgeted R172.6 million in 2019/20 for 500 additional inspectors. The number of inspections for compliance is expected to increase from 218 732 in 2018/19 to 220 692 in 2021/22.

For the 2018/19 Financial, the department was allocated R3.29 billion.

Supporting work seekers

Through the Employment Services South Africa system, the department provides a free service, including employment counselling, to recruit and place work seekers in various work and learning opportunities. Over the medium term, the department plans to introduce new measures to accelerate the placement of registered work seekers. These include: improving the quality of information on work seekers and employment opportunities to accurately match work seekers with work opportunities, reviewing workflow processes to respond promptly to requests from employers, subjecting matched candidates to rigorous counselling services to provide employers with shortlists, and signing partnership agreements.

The department also aims to facilitate greater access to the labour market for work seekers with matric and post-school qualifications, as well as those affected by barriers to entry such as low literacy levels, poor skills, and a lack of funds to undertake job searches. Accordingly, the department has self-service stations at 62 of its 126 labour centres to encourage work seekers to register and seek employment. 64 additional self-service stations are expected to be rolled out in 2019/20, as work seekers registered on the Employment Services South Africa system are expected to increase from 700 000 in 2019/20 to 800 000 in 2021/22. In 2019/20, the department expects to roll out the situation-specific evaluation expert assessment tool, which will be used to profile work seekers registered on the Employment Services South Africa system to assist with their placement.

As part of the department's efforts to improve and modernise its counselling services, it has deployed one principal psychologist in each province and 128 career counsellors across all labour centres, and introduced an electronic interest and competency self-assessment system for work seekers. Over the Medium term, activities in the Public Employment Services programme will also involve work with the European Union on a project aimed at assessing the impact of counselling services. This will include tracking the placement of counselled work seekers in self-employment, cooperatives and further learning institutions.

The department anticipates the number of counselled work seekers to increase from 210 000 in 2019/20 to 230 000 in 2021/22. Over the medium term, the Public Employment

Services programme will work with the Employment Services Board and the International Labour Organisation to develop national and labour migration policies, and provide advice on the implementation of employment schemes to the Minister of Labour.

The number of employment opportunities registered through the Employer Services subprogramme in the Public Employment Services programme is expected to increase from 90 000 in 2019/20 to 100 000 in 2021/22, at an estimated cost of R23.2 million over the same period. R402.1 million over the Medium term has also been allocated in the subprogramme for counselling, placement and advocacy campaigns and to pilot free registration opportunities on the Employment Services South Africa system with partner organisations by means of a memorandum of agreement. Training will be provided to employment services practitioners and strict quality control measures will be introduced to verify all work opportunities registered with the department.

To carry out all the department's activities related to supporting work seekers, R588.1 million is allocated over the medium term in the Work Seeker Services subprogramme.

Regulating the workplace to establish minimum working conditions and fair labour practices

To reduce income inequality in South Africa, the department, with social partners at the National Economic Development and Labour Council, will continue to set standards, institute minimum wages for vulnerable workers and monitor compliance with the Employment Equity Act of 1998.

The National Minimum Wage Bill came into effect on 1 January 2019. The department plans to establish a national minimum wage commission and secretariat in 2019/20, as per the bill, which will be responsible for reviewing, making adjustments to and monitoring the social and economic impact of the national minimum wage, which is set at R20 per hour. As such, activities over the medium term in the Labour Policy and Industrial Relations programme will involve performing the secretariat function and housing the national minimum wage commission, for which R114.1 million is budgeted over the Medium term for operations.

The Employment Equity Amendment Bill, with its corresponding draft regulations, were published for public comment on 21 September 2018, to be tabled in Parliament for discussion and finalisation in 2019. Amendments to the Employment Equity Act of 1998 and regulations are primarily aimed at empowering the minister to regulate the setting of sector-specific employment equity numerical targets; and the promulgation of section 53 of the Act, which deals with the issuing of an employment equity compliance certificate as a prerequisite for accessing state contracts.

South Africa co-chairs the International Labour Organisation's (ILO) global commission on the future of work, a first for the country and for Africa. The conference committee, chaired by South Africa, offers a platform for robust discussions on the future of the organisation's development cooperation in supporting constituents to achieve sustainable development and decent work for all. These discussions are expected to culminate in the formal adoption of a global report in 2019. To this end, R200 000 is allocated in the Labour Policy and Industrial Relations programme in 2019/20.

Labour Policy and Industrial Relations

The Labour Policy and Industrial Relations Branch supervises policy research, labour market information and statistical services.

This includes regulation of labour and employer organisations and bargaining councils, dealing with all the Department of Labour's responsibilities and obligations in relation to the ILO and other international and regional bodies with which the South African Government has formal relations, as well as the effective functioning of the Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA) and NEDLAC.

The CCMA is an independent dispute-resolution body created in 1996, in terms of the Labour Relations Act of 1995.

It does not belong to, nor is it controlled by, any political party, trade union or business.

The CCMA was established to provide South Africans with an accessible, user-friendly and affordable labour-dispute resolution system.

Workers who have allegedly been unfairly dismissed, or

are the victims of various unfair labour practices, are able to approach the CCMA alone or with certain categories of recognised representatives to seek redress for workplace wrongs.

Role players

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The UIF is a public entity of the Department of Labour that contributes to alleviating poverty in South Africa by providing effective short-term unemployment insurance to all workers who qualify for unemployment and related benefits.

The Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 32 of 2003) deals with the administration of the fund and the payment of benefits.

It also provides for the commissioner to maintain a database to pay benefits to beneficiaries.

The South African Revenue Service (SARS) continues to administer the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002 (Act 4 of 2002).

The fund is financed through contributions from employees and employers, as legislated in the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act of 2002, as well as return on investments.

SARS collects contributions from all employers whose workers pay employees' tax. The collection of contributions from all other employers is delegated to the Unemployment Insurance Commissioner.

The fund's mandate and job-creation initiatives contribute to three core elements identified in the NDP (social protection through the provision of unemployment insurance to all workers in the country; employment through investment in job creation projects; and quality education and skills development through training initiatives) that aim to provide unemployed beneficiaries with various artisan skills.

In addition to improving benefits, the fund aims to improve its efficiency by improving the rate at which claims are processed and paid from five weeks to three weeks in 2018/19.

The fund also aimed to save an estimated 35 000 jobs over the medium term by assisting distressed companies through an allocation of R229.1 million to Productivity South Africa's turnaround solutions programme.

The training lay-off scheme is an alternative to retrenchment for companies in distress. Participation in this scheme will ensure that beneficiaries of the fund do not lose their jobs, and are reskilled to remain active in the labour market.

Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration

The CCMA aims to promote social justice and economic development in the world of work, and to be the best dispute management and dispute resolution organisation. The commission's total budget for 2018/19 was R988.2 million.

National Economic Development and Labour Council

The council requires organised labour, organised business, community-based organisations and government to work as a collective to promote the goals of economic growth, and social and economic equity. The council's total budget for 2018/19 was R34.4 million.

Productivity South Africa

Productivity South Africa aims to improve the productive capacity of the economy through interventions that encourage social dialogue and collaboration between government, labour and business. The entity's total budget for 2018/19 was R287.6 million.

Employment figures

According to the Quarterly Labour Force Survey, Quarter 2: 2019, the working-age population increased by 150 000 or 0.4% in the second quarter of 2019 compared to the first quarter of the same year. Compared to the second quarter of 2018, the working-age population increased by 601 000 or 1.6%. The number of employed persons increased by 21 000 to 16.3 million in the second quarter of 2019, and the number of unemployed persons also increased by 455 000 to 6.7 million compared to the first quarter, resulting in an increase of 476 000 (up by 2.1%) in the number of people in the labour force. The absorption rate decreased by 0.2 of a percentage point to 42.4% and the unemployment rate increased by 1.4 percentage points to 29.0% compared to the first quarter of 2019. Employment increased in two of the four sectors with the informal sector

recording the largest employment gains of 114 000 followed by the Agriculture sector with 5 000.

The formal sector and private households declined by 49 000 each, resulting in the net increase of 21 000 in total employment. The number of discouraged work-seekers and the number of people who were not economically active for reasons other than discouragement decreased by 248 000 and 77 000, respectively, between the first and the second quarters of 2019, resulting in a net decrease of 326 000 in the not economically active population. Compared to a year ago, employment increased by 0.2% (25 000), unemployment increased by 9.4% (573 000) and the number of persons who were not economically active increased by 3 000.

Employment increased for the first time in quarter two since 2015, after experiencing declines in the past consecutive second quarters of 2016, 2017 and 2018.

The number of employed persons increased in six of the ten industries, with the largest increases recorded in Trade (84 000), Community and social services (48 000), Construction (24 000) and Manufacturing (9 000). However, employment losses were recorded in Private households (49 000), Transport (42 000), Mining (36 000) and Finance and other business services (21 000).

Compared to the same period last year, employment gains of 25 000 persons were largely driven by Trade (210 000), Finance and other business services (96 000) and Manufacturing (45 000). Meanwhile, construction had the largest losses of 113 000 during the same period.

Following a decrease in the formal sector employment in the first quarter of 2019 (126 000), employment declined by 49 000 in this sector.

Compared to the same period in 2018, a loss of 14 8000 jobs in the formal sector employment was mainly driven by Construction (116 000), Transport (65 000), Community and social services (62 000), Mining (51 000) and Utilities (8 000). The percentage of young persons aged 15 – 24 years who were not in employment, education or training decreased by 0.9 of a percentage point to 32.3% (3.3 million) compared to the first quarter. Of the 20.4 million young people aged 15 – 34 years, 40.3% were not in employment, education or

training – a decrease of 0.3 percentage points compared to Q1:2019.

Youth Employment Service

In 2018, President Cyril Ramaphosa launched the Youth Employment Service (YES). The initiative aims to see more than one million young South Africans being offered paid work experience over the next three years, as part of placing the needs of and opportunities for young people at the

The initiative is a collaborative effort between government, business, labour and civil society. The initiative is informed by research, which has shown that one year of work experience, coupled with a curriculum vitae and reference letter, increases a young person's chances of finding employment by three times.

The programme has three channels through which employment opportunities can occur:

- Corporate work experiences: businesses that participate in the programme create one-year paid positions for youth aged between 18 and 35, in addition to these organisations' current employment numbers, YES is an additive
- SMME host placements: businesses that do not have the capacity to place more people in their organisations, have the option of sponsoring the salary for a one-year placement in small and medium enterprises (In year one for seven to 10 months)
- SMME development: young people are empowered to start and grow their own businesses, with support from YES in the form of training, seed funding and value-chain integration.

Compensation Fund (CF)

The Department of Labour administers the CF, which compensates workers who are victims of occupational disability, occupational disease and fatal work incidents.

The services of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993) were extended and are rendered at provincial level.

To further strengthen social protection, the fund is working on amendments to the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act of 1993 to include domestic workers as beneficiaries; develop a rehabilitation, reintegration and return

to work policy for injured and diseased workers; and increase benefits.

The CF will work towards the continual enhancement and improvement of its claims registration, payments and automated adjudication systems to improve service delivery, and the marketing and promotion of its online claims registration portal.

These initiatives are expected to lead to an increase in spending over the medium term in the administration programme reaching R1.1 billion in 2018/19.

The Umehluko integrated claims management enables employers and medical service providers to report accidents and submit medical reports online. Using this system, the fund's clients can track the status of their claims at any time, and it is set to improve the percentage of medical claims finalised per year within a three-month period from 60% or 199 476 in 2015/16 to 80% or 313 783 in 2018/19.

In an effort to strengthen social protection and alleviate poverty, the fund's board reviewed the existing compensation and pension benefits, and increased the minimum payout by 7% from R3 878 to R4 151 per month. The fund also planned to increase the number of employers registered with the fund from 592 972 in 2015/16 to 719 126 in 2018/19 to increase the number of workers covered.

The fund's main source of revenue is the levies payable by employers based on a determined percentage of the annual earnings of their employees and the risk category of the employer.

Total revenue collected is estimated to grow to R20.3 billion in 2018/19. It is being used to pay benefits and cover the cost of administering the fund.

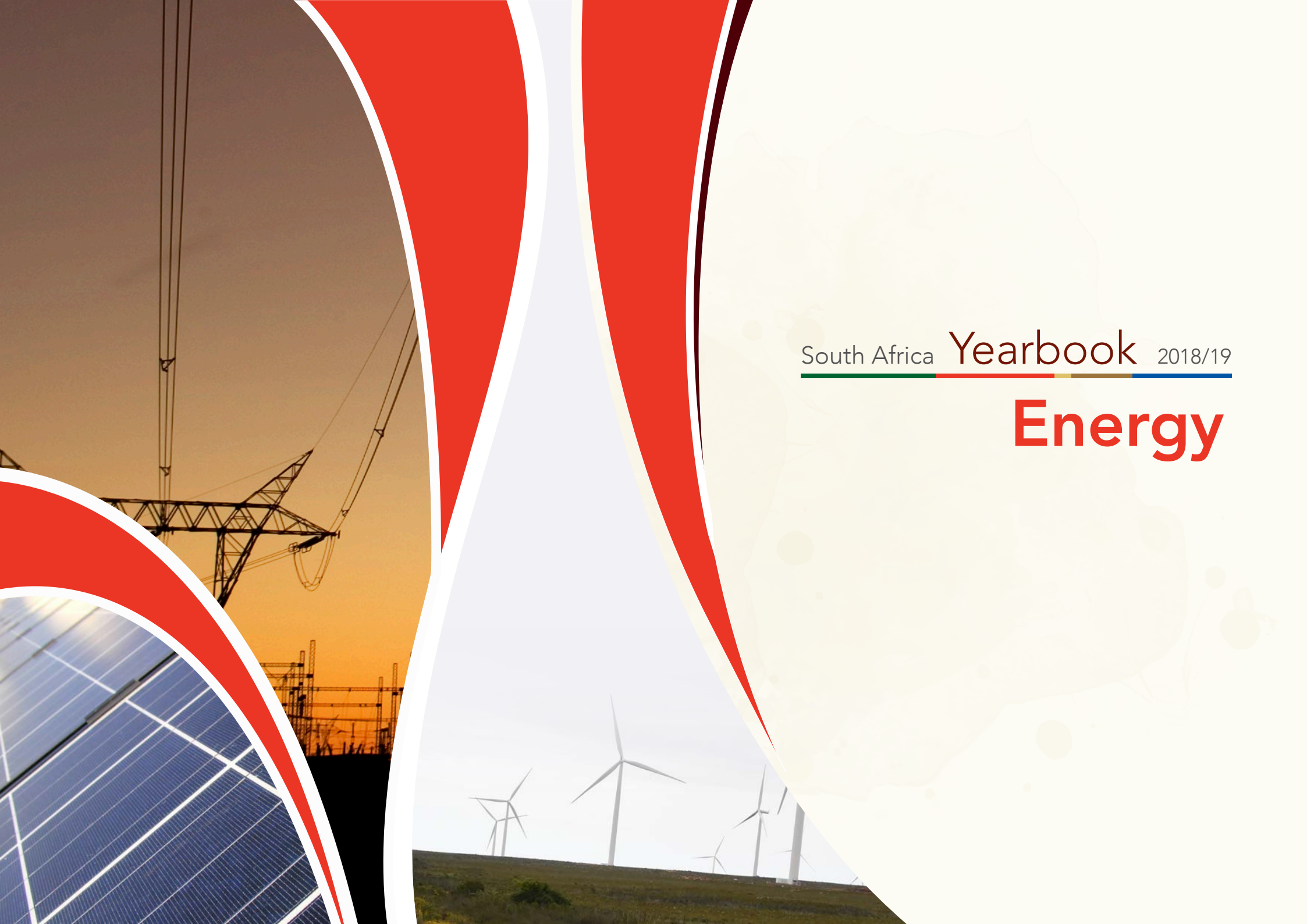
National Economic Development and Labour Council

NEDLAC requires organised labour, organised business, community-based organisations and government to work as a collective to promote the goals of economic growth, and social and economic equity.

Organised business is represented by Business Unity South Africa, which brings together the Black Business Council and Business South Africa.

Organised labour is represented by the three main labour federations in South Africa: the Congress of South African

Trade Unions, the Federation of Unions of South Africa and the National Council of Trade Unions.

The cover features a collage of energy-related images: a high-voltage power line tower against a sunset sky in the top left, a close-up of solar panels in the bottom left, and a wind farm on a grassy hill in the bottom center. A large, stylized map of South Africa is positioned on the right side, rendered in a light beige color with a subtle pattern. The map is partially overlaid by a large, flowing red and white graphic element that sweeps across the top and left portions of the cover.

South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

Energy

The Department of Energy (DoE) is mandated to ensure the secure and sustainable provision of energy in support of socioeconomic development. It aims to achieve this by developing an integrated energy plan for the entire energy sector and regulating energy industries, as well as promoting investment in accordance with the integrated resource plan for electricity. A number of acts regulate the energy sector and reflect the legislative measures the department has instituted to govern the energy sector.

The National Energy Act, 2008 (Act 34 of 2008) sets out the core aspects of the department's mandate and is the enabling legislation that empowers the Minister of Energy to:

- ensure that diverse energy resources are available in sustainable quantities and at affordable prices in the South African economy to support economic growth and poverty alleviation, while taking into account environmental considerations;
- plan for the increased generation and consumption of renewable energy, a contingency energy supply, the holding of strategic energy feedstock and carriers, adequate investment in appropriate upkeep, and access to energy infrastructure;
- collect data and information regarding energy demand, supply and generation promote electricity regulation, energy research, and the efficient generation and consumption of energy.

The department is also mandated to regulate the petroleum industry at the manufacturing, wholesale and retail levels through the implementation of the Petroleum Products Act, 1977 (Act 120 of 1977). The petroleum and liquid fuels charter is annexed to the Petroleum Products Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 58 of 2003), and outlines the department's strategy to effect transformation in the industry.

Legislation and policies

The DoE derives its mandate from the *White Paper on Energy Policy, 1998*, the *White Paper on Renewable Energy, 2003*, and the National Energy Efficiency Strategy.

The following legislation regulates the energy sector:

- The National Energy Act, 2008 (Act 34 of 2008) ensures that diverse energy resources are available in sustainable

quantities and at affordable prices in South Africa. In addition, the Act provides for the increased use of renewable energies, contingency energy supplies, the holding of strategic energy feedstock and carriers, and adequate investment in energy infrastructure.

- The Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006) establishes a national regulatory framework for the electricity supply industry to be enforced by the National Energy Regulator of South Africa (NERSA). The Minister of Energy is empowered to make determinations for the establishment of independent power producers (IPPs) to increase the supply of electricity.
- The Petroleum Products Act of 1977, as amended, provides for measures to save petroleum products and the economy in distribution costs, the maintenance and control of price, the furnishing of certain information regarding petroleum products and the rendering of service. It further provides for the licensing of people involved in the manufacturing, wholesale and retailing of prescribed petroleum products.
- The Central Energy Fund (CEF) Act, 1977 (Act 38 of 1977), as amended, provides for the determination of State levies.
- The Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999) provides for the establishment of the National Energy Corporation of South Africa (Necsa) and defines its functions, powers, financial and operational accountability, governance and management. It also regulates the acquisition and possession of nuclear fuel, nuclear and related material and equipment, and the import and export thereof.

Other relevant legislation:

- The National Nuclear Regulator (NNR) Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999).
- The National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act, 2008 (Act 53 of 2008).
- The Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003).
- The Petroleum Pipelines Levies Act, 2004 (Act 28 of 2004).
- The Gas Act, 2001 (Act 48 of 2001).
- The Gas Regulator Levies Act, 2002 (Act 75 of 2002).
- The National Energy Regulator Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004).
- The Electricity Act, 1987 (Act 41 of 1987), as amended.
- The National Environmental Management Act, 1999 (Act 107 of 1999).

- The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 (Act 28 of 2002).
- The Electricity Regulation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 28 of 2007).

Budget and funding

The National Development Plan (NDP) envisages that, by 2030, South Africa will have an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to maintain economic activity and prevent economic disruptions. In giving expression to this vision over the medium term, the department intends to focus on extending access to electricity and enhancing energy efficiency, managing nuclear energy in terms of international commitments, and diversifying the energy generation mix.

The department's total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.7%, from R7.1 billion in 2018/19 to R8.4 billion in 2021/22, mainly as a result of Cabinet-approved additional funding of R597.5 million over the medium term. This includes R17.1 million reprioritised for the department's operational expenditure; R24 million reprioritised to the National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute for operational expenditure; and R539.2 million reprioritised to the South African Nuclear Energy Corporation for the decommissioning and decontamination of old nuclear facilities.

However, Cabinet has approved reductions of R58.4 million in 2019/20 and R558.8 million in 2020/21, mainly in the Electrification and Energy Programme and Project Management programme, the department's largest programme, accounting to R17.2 billion of total projected expenditure over the medium term. A realignment of capital funding within this programme to supplement funding for metropolitan cities results in a shift of R814.5 million to the urban settlements development grant in the Department of Human Settlements from the integrated national electrification programme (municipal) grant.

Compensation of employees is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 6.5%, from R360.5 million in 2018/19 to R435.9 million in 2021/22. However, to remain within government's expenditure ceiling for compensation of employees, the number of personnel in the department is expected to decrease from 569 in 2018/19 to 559 in 2021/22.

This decrease is effected on lower-level and intern posts.

Expenditure on goods and services is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 9%, from R422.6 million in 2018/19 to R318.4 million in 2021/22. This is mainly due to a reduction in the Clean Energy programme's baseline budget for payments related to the storage of solar water heater units, from R166.5 million in 2018/19 to R4.5 million in 2021/22, as the units are expected to be installed in households before the end of the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. Expenditure on goods and services mainly comprises servicing operating leases as the department's regional offices are relocated; and costs related to the inspection of 4 500 petroleum retail sites, the solar water heater programme, and the monitoring and verification of grid and non-grid connections in the integrated national electrification programme over the medium term.

The department was allocated R7.2 billion for the 2018/19 financial year.

Extending access to electricity and enhancing energy efficiency

As part of the integrated national electrification programme, which aims to extend access to electricity to all households across South Africa, 590 000 households are expected to be connected to the electricity grid over the medium term. The department anticipates that a further 20 000 households per year over the same period will be provided with non-grid (mainly solar) electrification systems. six substations are expected to be built and 9 upgraded over the medium term. Transfers to municipalities for the direct component of the integrated national electrification programme are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 3.8%, from R1.9 billion in 2018/19 to R2.1 billion in 2021/22.

This relatively low average annual increase is due to a shift of funds to the urban settlements development grant, which is managed by the Department of Human Settlements, for the delivery of services to households in informal settlements in metropolitan municipalities.

Transfers to Eskom for the indirect component of the integrated national electrification programme are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 5.4%, from R3.3 billion

in 2018/19 to R3.8 billion in 2021/22. A significant portion of households yet to be electrified are in sparsely populated rural areas, mostly in KwaZulu-Natal, Eastern Cape and Limpopo. As such, the cost of connections is expected to be higher over the medium term than in previous years. Spending in the Energy Efficiency subprogramme in the Clean Energy programme is expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 2.9 per cent, from R400.2 million in 2018/19 to R366.1 million in 2021/22.

Over the medium term, the department plans to develop an electrification master plan, which is intended to inform the roll-out of electrification connections for universal access. Once developed, the master plan will be used to set rules and timeframes for the rollout of electrification, accompanied by clear guidelines for selecting particular technologies. To develop the electrification master plan, R17.2 million over the medium term is allocated in the Integrated National Electrification Programme subprogramme in the Electrification and Energy Programme and Project Management programme.

To realise a targeted 1.5 terawatt hours of energy savings over the medium term, allocations to the energy efficiency and demand-side management grant increase from R215 million in 2018/19 to R252.7 million in 2021/22. This will enable municipalities to undertake initiatives such as replacing street and traffic lights with energy efficient technology, and to retrofit and replace municipal infrastructure that is energy inefficient.

An additional R120 million over the MTEF period is allocated through funds received from international donors to effect energy efficiencies, including achieving net-zero energy usage at wastewater treatment plants and improving the energy performance of municipal government buildings. In this regard, the department will develop project plans and procedures, and coordinate the implementation of project activities; and the South African National Energy Development Institute will lead the monitoring and evaluation of project achievements.

Improving food security and safety

Over the medium term, the allocation for the Ilima/Letsema projects grant will be used to promote the Fetsa Tlala food production initiative, which forms part of national policy on food and nutrition. Accordingly, the department plans to make

R1.9 billion available through the grant to support 145 000 subsistence and smallholder producers each year of the medium term; and, by 2030, as per the NDP, ensure that one million hectares are used to produce crops including fruit and livestock, and provide superiorbreeding animals to targeted smallholder and subsistence farmers. In 2019/20, the department plans to finalise a register of farmers and agriculture statistics at a projected cost of R51 million. The project, which is conducted in collaboration with Statistics South Africa, is aimed at improving the accuracy of agricultural statistics, including information on smallholder farmers across South Africa.

One of the outcomes of Operation Phakisa is to provide support to 435 000 subsistence farmers over the medium term. This entails facilitating access to markets for targeted smallholder farmers, repairing infrastructure damaged by floods, providing drought relief, and revitalising provincial agricultural colleges. A projected R5 billion over the medium term is earmarked for these initiatives through the comprehensive agriculture support programme grant. This funding will also provide for the recruitment and training of extension officers to enhance their technical capacity/expertise to support farmers, and the placement of 1 000 unemployed agricultural graduates on commercial farms across South Africa over the period ahead.

Aquaculture is expected to contribute significantly to food production, with production in the sector expected to increase from 4 000 tons of fish in 2018/19 to 20 000 tons per year over the medium term. To derive the most value from South Africa's coastal and inland aquaculture, a projected R137.9 million has been budgeted in the aquaculture subprogramme in the Fisheries programme.

To increase animal health care services, a targeted 150 veterinary graduates are expected to be deployed per year to rural areas over the medium term as part of their compulsory community service. To this effect, R456 million is allocated over the same period in the Agricultural Production, Health and Food Safety programme for the deployment of newly qualified veterinarians and other veterinarians registering for the first time with the South African Veterinary Council.

Informed by the agricultural policy action plan, animal improvement schemes are aimed at increasing the quality and

yield of livestock. Over the medium term, the department plans to monitor two animal improvement schemes that produce commodities in prioritised value chains: the Kaonafatso ya Dikgomo national animal recording and improvement scheme, which focuses on beef production; and the poultry production improvement scheme.

These monitoring activities are carried out in the Animal Production and Health subprogramme in the Agricultural Production, Health and Food Safety programme at an expected cost of R842.3 million over the MTEF period.

Role players

National Energy Regulator of South Africa

NERSA was established in terms of Section 3 of the National Energy Regulator Act of 2004. NERSA's mandate is to regulate the electricity, piped-gas and petroleum pipelines industries in terms of the Electricity Regulation Act of 2006, the Gas Act of 2001 and the Petroleum Pipelines Act of 2003.

Revenue is generated from levies paid by the regulated industries. All costs of NERSA are shared between the electricity, piped-gas and petroleum pipelines industries using a ringfencing methodology.

NERSA has formulated the following five strategic outcome-oriented goals to support sustainable socio-economic development in South Africa:

- facilitate investment in infrastructure in the energy industry
- promote competitive and efficient functioning of the energy industry
- facilitate affordability and accessibility in the energy industry to balance the socio-economic interests of all stakeholders
- facilitate security of supply of energy resources
- position and establish NERSA as a credible and reliable regulator to create regulatory certainty.

National Nuclear Regulator

The NNR is responsible for safety standards and regulatory practices for the protection of people, property and the environment against nuclear damage.

Nuclear Energy Corporation of South Africa

The Nuclear Energy Act of 1999 provides for the establishment of the South African Nuclear Energy Corporation (Necsa) and defines its functions, powers, financial and operational accountabilities, governance and management. Necsa is a wholly SOE reporting to the DoE.

Necsa is mandated to conduct R&D in nuclear energy and radiation sciences, acquire and process nuclear materials, perform decommissioning and decontamination as well as manage radioactive waste. On behalf of the South African government, Necsa discharges South Africa's international nuclear obligations such as the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty and the Comprehensive Safeguards Agreement under the auspices of the International Atomic Energy Agency.

Necsa undertakes the commercialisation of nuclear related products and services while cooperating with other institutions, locally and abroad. The company's Pelchem subsidiary produces fluorochemicals while, NTP Radioisotopes markets a range of medical and industrial radiochemicals. Through its NTP subsidiary, the corporation contributes to the national health priority as its medical radioisotopes are used to diagnose diseases such as cancer.

Ongoing research focuses mainly on applications in radiopharmaceuticals, waste management, neutron beamlines as well as uranium and fluorine chemistry.

The centrepiece of Necsa's Pelindaba facility in the scenic landscape of the Magaliesberg is the SAFARI-1 research reactor. Since 1965 this reactor has been the premier nuclear research installation in Africa welcoming researchers from all over the world. In addition, it is intensively used for providing irradiation services in the production of medical radioisotopes. It is also used to:

- undertake and promote research into nuclear energy and radiation sciences and technology
- process source, special nuclear and restricted material including uranium enrichment
- collaborate with other entities.

The Nuclear Energy Act of 1999 provides for the commercialisation of nuclear and related products and services, and delegates specific responsibilities to Necsa, including the

implementation and execution of national safeguards and other international obligations.

The Nuclear Energy Policy of 2008 elaborated on Necsa's mandate relating to research and development and nuclear fuel-cycle responsibilities.

Necsa is responsible for research on nuclear energy and radiation science, the development and innovation of nuclear-related products in South Africa, and the execution of nuclear fuel cycle activities. Subsidiaries include Pelchem and Nuclear Technology Products (NTP) Radioisotopes.

Necsa's main function is to serve as the anchor for nuclear energy research and development, as well as innovation in South Africa. The research focuses mainly on nuclear technology applications such as:

- the production of medical isotopes
- applied chemistry with an emphasis on uranium chemistry
- the application of radiation and nuclear technologies
- aspects of the nuclear fuel cycle, including waste.

The corporation is also responsible for:

- operating the SAFARI-1 research reactor to undertake nuclear science research and development
- providing irradiation services for the production of medical radioisotopes
- decommissioning and decontaminating nuclear facilities
- implementing the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty and the Comprehensive Safeguards Agreement with the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA); the Africa Regional Cooperative Agreement for Research, Development and Training related to Nuclear Science and Technology; and the Pelindaba Treaty. The corporation contributes to the health component of the NDP's priorities through NTP Radioisotopes, which produces medical radioisotopes, some of which are used in South Africa's health system for diagnostic studies and cancer treatments. This accounts for the largest proportion of spending within the corporation, with the radiation products and services programme expected to grow from R1.2 billion in 2015/16 to R1.5 billion in 2018/19 at an average annual rate of 7%. This will allow the SAFARI-1 reactor to be operationally available for 287 days per year, and will allow the corporation to

maintain performance safeguards and radiation doses within acceptable limits.

In the medium term, Necsa will focus on:

- radiation research, products and services
- nuclear fuel research and development in relation to low-enriched uranium research-reactor production facilities
- nuclear component manufacturing to support future nuclear programmes and future power reactors
- contributing to higher industrial manufacturing standards and sustainable job creation.

International Nuclear Cooperation

South Africa has been a member of the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA) and permanent member of its Board of Governors for decades and has been both a recipient and provider of services emanating from the agency. Through its active participation in nuclear energy, safety, technology, security and disarmament, South Africa has contributed to efforts of ensuring that nuclear energy is used only for peaceful purposes like power generation as well as medical, industrial and agricultural initiatives.

National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute (NRWDI)

The National Radioactive Waste Disposal Institute Act of 2008 provides for the establishment of the NRWDI to manage radioactive waste disposal on a national basis.

In addition to radioactive waste management and disposal, one of the NRWDI's major activities is to plan, design, construct, operate, manage and monitor any new radioactive waste disposal facilities.

South African National Energy Development Institute

Sanedi is mandated to stimulate innovation in energy research and development, transform the gender and race profile of researchers in the sector, and improve South Africa's competitiveness in energy research internationally.

Operations includes:

- undertaking measures to promote energy efficiency

throughout the economy

- ensuring uninterrupted supply of energy to the country
- promoting diversity of supply of energy sources
- facilitating effective management of energy demand and its conservation
- promoting energy research
- promoting appropriate standards and specifications for the equipment, system and processes used to produce, consume and supply energy
- providing for certain safety, health and environmental matters that pertain to energy
- facilitating energy access to improve the quality of life of the South African people
- commercialising energy-related technologies
- ensuring effective planning of energy, supply, transportation and consumption, and contributing to the sustainability of development of the South African economy.

Central Energy Fund

The CEF is listed in the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999) and is governed by the CEF Act of 1977 and the Companies Act, 2008 (Act 71 of 2008). Its mandate is to research, finance, develop and exploit appropriate energy solutions across the spectrum of energy sources to meet South Africa's future energy needs.

Through its eight operating subsidiaries, the fund is also mandated to finance and promote the acquisition of coal; exploit coal deposits; manufacture liquid fuel, oil and other products from coal; and market these products. It is also mandated to acquire, generate, manufacture, market, distribute or research any other form of energy.

The CEF's subsidiaries are: the Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa, the South African Gas Development Company, the Petroleum Agency of South Africa, Oil Pollution Control South Africa, the Strategic Fuel Fund Association, African Exploration, ETA Energy and CCE Solutions.

In line with the Presidential Review Commission on SOEs, the CEF has been working towards the review of the composition of the CEF Group of companies. Work in this area includes the strengthening of the entities in the oil and

gas sector and the stated policy objective of the creation of a stand-alone National Oil Company, using PetroSA as a nucleus. This was expected to be finalised by October 2016.

The fund's Vision 2025 strategy was completed in 2014 with the aim of restructuring the organisation.

The stabilisation phase included the following, among other things:

- PetroSA's turnaround project, which aims to steady its financial and operating environment
- tank refurbishment at Milnerton and Saldanha to enable the Strategic Fuel Fund to increase the storage of crude oil in line with government policy
- the consideration of a gas to power project to divert tail gas to Eskom's Gourikwa power station
- and a condensate project (a process of extracting raw gas and turning it into a liquid state), which seeks to address feedstock challenges.

The lead phase seeks to achieve the long-term objective of making the fund a market leader in the security of energy supply, and to generate investment income from the refinery, gas infrastructure and renewable energy projects.

In particular, the Strategic Fuel Fund, the Petroleum Agency South Africa (PASA), iGas and PetroSA will be involved in increasing storage capacities, holding increased volumes of strategic stocks, and distributing petroleum products.

iGas will be positioned to become an active infrastructure partner for increased gas supply into South Africa, as market indications showed that global demand for gas would grow at about 2.5% per year until 2018. The CEF also aims to comply with the ministerial directive of maintaining 10.3 million barrels of crude oil per year, and to supply the South African market with 4.8 million barrels of liquid fuel per year over the medium term, made possible by the increased coal production at Vlakfontein in Mpumalanga.

Integrated energy centres (IECs)

The DoE, in collaboration with oil companies, have since 2002 been establishing the IECs in poverty nodal areas around the country as part of its mandate to promote access to energy services, such as petroleum products in rural areas where the

volumes of sales are too low for a normal commercial operation to be established.

An IEC is a one-stop energy shop owned and operated by a community co-operative and organised as a community project.

The objectives of the IEC Programme are to:

- provide access to safe and affordable energy resources to poor households
- provide information regarding the safe, efficient and environmentally sustainable use of energy sources and available energy options such as renewable and non-grid energy
- provide information on how to handle and use energy resources, including illuminating paraffin and LPGas
- enable a strong social responsibility aimed at poverty alleviation, job creation and capacity-building
- stimulate the rural economy.

To date there are nine operational IECs across four provinces: The Eastern Cape, Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal, North West and the Northern Cape.

The DoE has aligned the IEC programme to the Comprehensive Rural Development Programme, which is aimed at improving socio-economic conditions of rural communities.

Sasol

Sasol is a leader in various energy fields, including the Sasol Slurry Phase Distillate Process (SPD process). Through this process, natural gas is transformed into energy and chemical products, including transport fuels, base oils, waxes, paraffin and naphtha.

Sasol is listed on the JSE Limited in South Africa and on the New York Stock Exchange in the United States of America (USA).

The company is one of the world's largest producers of synthetic fuels. It mines coal in South Africa and produces natural gas and condensate in Mozambique, oil in Gabon and shale gas in Canada.

Sasol continues to advance its upstream oil and gas activities in West and southern Africa, the Asia Pacific region and Canada. In South Africa, Sasol refines imported crude oil and sells retail liquid fuels through its network of some 400 service stations

and supplies gas to industrial customers. It also supplies fuels to other licensed wholesalers in the region.

Through Sasol Synfuels International, Sasol is pursuing international opportunities to commercialise its gas-to-liquids (GTL) and coal-to-liquids (CTL) technology.

Sasol's energy cluster focuses on the manufacturing, refining and marketing of automotive and industrial fuels, oils and gas.

End products include petrol; diesel; jet fuel; fuel oil; illuminating paraffin; liquefied petroleum gas; pipeline gas; lubricants and greases; bitumen and naphtha.

Sasol's local energy cluster comprises the following:

- Sasol Oil, which handles crude oil refining activities as well as the blending and marketing of liquid fuels and lubricants
- Sasol Gas, which supplies pipeline gas to industrial and commercial customers
- Sasol Mining, which produces about 40 million tons (Mt) of saleable coal a year
- Sasol Synfuels, which operates the coal-based synfuels manufacturing facility at Secunda, Mpumalanga.

Eskom

South Africa's electricity utility generates around 90% of the electricity used in the country, and approximately 45% of the electricity in Africa. The balance is produced by independent power producers and municipalities. Eskom directly provides electricity to about 45% of all end-users in South Africa. The other 55% is resold by redistributors, including municipalities. Eskom generates, transmits and distributes electricity to about 6.2 million direct customers in the industrial, mining, commercial, agricultural and residential sectors, and to redistributors.

Eskom sells electricity directly to about 3 000 industrial customers, 1 000 mining customers, 50 000 commercial customers, 82 000 agricultural customers and more than 5.5 million residential customers (of whom the majority are prepaid customers). Most of the sales are in South Africa, with other southern African countries accounting for a small percentage.

Eskom supplies electricity to both South Africa and the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region. The Southern African Power Pool (SAPP) is connected through an integrated grid, and comprises South Africa, Botswana, Lesotho,

Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland, Zambia and Zimbabwe. Through the Southern African Energy Unit, Eskom imports electricity from Lesotho, Mozambique, Zambia and Zimbabwe, and sells electricity to Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, Namibia, Eswatini, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The power utility operates 30 power stations with a nominal generating capacity of 45 561 MW. This includes the only nuclear power station in Africa. The power utility is also building new power stations and high-voltage power lines to meet South Africa's growing energy demand. The capacity expansion programme is expected to be completed in 2022. Recent successes have been the commercialisation of Medupi Units 3 and 2 on 8 April and 7 October 2018, adding 1 440MW to the grid. During the past year, 585.4km of high-voltage transmission lines were installed and substation capacity of 2 300MVA were installed and commissioned under the new build programme, bringing the total since inception of the capacity expansion programme to 6 747km transmission lines and 34 390MVA substation capacity. It maintains approximately 381 594km of power lines and substations with a cumulative capacity of about 244 637 MVA.

Eskom's corporate social investment is principally channeled through the Eskom Development Foundation, a wholly owned subsidiary of Eskom Holdings and a section 21 company. Eskom Enterprises (Pty) Limited, and its subsidiaries provide lifecycle support and plant maintenance, network protection as well as support for the capacity expansion programme for all Eskom Holdings Limited divisions.

Through its vertically integrated business model of generation, transmission and distribution, Eskom significantly plays a role as an employer, job creator and skills developer. The company provides direct employment to over 47 000 employees.

As a state-owned enterprise Eskom has a developmental role to play in South Africa. These developmental activities include the following:

- 207 189 households were electrified, bringing the percentage of South Africans with access to electricity to 90%. More than five million households within Eskom's licensed areas of supply have been electrified since 1990.
- Procurement from B-BBEE compliant suppliers was 98%,

compared to 82% the previous year

- Spend with black owned suppliers increased from 34% to 41%
- Increase in local content contracted from 75% to 86%
- Local content contracted from the new build program was 87%
- Procurement from black women-owned suppliers was 15%, exceeding the target of 12%.

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP was created in August 1995 at the SADC summit held in Kempton Park, South Africa, when member governments of SADC (excluding Mauritius) signed an Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) for the formation of an electricity power pool in the region under the name of the Southern African Power Pool. The Ministers responsible for energy in the SADC region signed the Revised Intergovernmental MoU on 23 February 2006.

The SAPP is governed by four agreements: the Intergovernmental MoU which enabled the establishment of SAPP; the Inter-Utility MoU, which established SAPP's basic management and operating principles; the Agreement Between Operating Members which established the specific rules of operation and pricing; and the Operating Guidelines, which provide standards and operating guidelines. The SAPP Agreement Between Operating Members and the Operating Guidelines are under review.

The SAPP has 12 member countries represented by their respective electric power utilities organised through SADC. It has four working committees: the Environmental Sub-Committee, the Markets Sub-Committee, the Operating Sub-Committee and the Planning Sub-Committee under a Management Committee which in turn reports to the Executive Committee. The Markets Sub-Committee is a new sub-committee that was created in April 2007 following the signing of the Revised Inter-Utility MoU by the SAPP Executive Committee on 25 April 2007. Also created in April 2007 is the Coordination Centre Board to govern the activities of the SAPP Coordination Centre.

The SAPP coordinate the planning and operation of the electric power system among member utilities. The SAPP provide a

forum for regional solutions to electric energy problems. The SAPP established the Short-Term Energy Market in April 2001. From January 2004, the SAPP started the development of a competitive electricity market for the SADC region. The day-ahead market was established in December 2009. In 2015, the SAPP trading Platform was upgraded with Forward Physical Markets and the Intra Day Market.

Other role players

- iGas is the official state agency for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry in southern Africa.
- PetroSA is a government-owned oil and gas company mandated by Cabinet to lead developments in gas infrastructure in the Western Cape.
- The Petroleum Agency of South Africa promotes the exploration and exploitation of natural oil and gas, both onshore and offshore, in South Africa and undertakes the necessary marketing, promotion and monitoring of operations.
- Petronet owns, operates, manages and maintains a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum and gas pipelines, on behalf of the government.

Energy resources

South Africa produces about 5% of its fuel needs from gas, about 35% from coal and about 50% from local crude oil refineries. About 10% is imported from refineries elsewhere in the world. The country has a sizeable capital stock and management capacity to produce fuel from gas. The DoE's Hydrocarbons and Energy Planning Branch is responsible for coal, gas, liquid fuels, energy efficiency, renewable energy and energy planning, including the energy database.

To meet the country's future energy requirements, government is implementing an energy mix which comprises coal, solar, wind, hydro, gas and nuclear energy. In future, biomass, wind power, solar power and hydro-power will contribute 11.4 GW of renewable energy to the grid.

Biomass for energy is restricted due to water availability in South Africa, but energy from waste, using the estimated 60 million m³ to 70 million m³ of waste generated annually, is more readily available and exploitable.

The DoE is developing a gas utilisation master plan, which will take a 30-year view of the gas industry from a regulatory, economic and social perspective.

The integrated resource plan targets new gas-fired power generation capacity, plus the supply of gas for converting gas to liquid petroleum products at the plant of the state-owned company, the Mossel Bay Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa.

Liquid fuels

The recommendations made in the Energy, Security Master Plan for Liquid Fuels, approved by Cabinet in 2007, continue to be implemented, with the focus primarily on addressing short to medium-term infrastructural constraints within the liquid fuels sector.

South Africa faces a number of specific challenges in the liquid fuels sector:

- Gas stocks for the existing gas-to-liquids plant from offshore fields are declining.
- Refining capacity has run out and South Africa now has to import a share of its refined fuel needs. There are five options to deal with this, namely:
 - building a new oil-to-liquid refinery (such as the proposed Mthombo Project in Coega)
 - building a new CTL refinery
 - upgrading the existing refineries; allowing significant expansion of one or more of the existing refineries
 - importing refined products
 - building a refinery in Angola or Nigeria and buying a share of the product of that refinery.

Other issues related to liquid fuels include:

- clean fuel standards
- vehicle carbon tax
- electric vehicles
- use of public transport.

Oil and natural gas

South Africa has very limited oil reserves. About 60% of its crude oil requirements are met by imports from the Middle East and Africa.

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, LPG and refinery gas are produced by the following methods:

- crude oil refining (oil refineries)
- CTL and GTL fuels (Sasol)
- natural GTL (PetroSA).

Government regulates wholesale margins and controls the retail price of petrol. The industry has entered into product-exchange agreements to serve different markets.

Together, these controls provide for access to fuel throughout the country and protect consumers, while rendering a reasonable return on investment to the oil industry and enhancing opportunities for employment.

Refineries and Sasol produce LPG and illuminating paraffin (kerosene). Most LPG is consumed in the country and the rest is used in refineries as fuel and/or exported regionally.

The DoE views natural gas as an evolving energy source, despite the country's limited gas reserves. There are projects underway to explore the potential of importing natural gas, both as liquid natural gas and compressed natural gas.

To this end, the Integrated Resources Plan (IRP) was developed, which incorporates gas among alternative energy sources for electricity generation. The IRP presents a 20-year view on South Africa's energy mix that seeks to balance growth in demand with South Africa's commitments to reduce its dependence on coal and to lower climate-changing emissions.

The IRP aims to:

- improve the country's global competitiveness
- support job creation
- improve the management of natural resources
- reduce and mitigate greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions in line with reduction targets.

The IRP's development and update processes aim to balance security of supply, cost of electricity, job creation and localisation, minimal negative environmental impact, minimal water usage, to diversity of supply sources (energy mix) and promotion of energy access.

Against these objectives, the DoE set four key milestones:

- settling the key assumptions
- developing a base-case

- modelling and analysing the scenarios and sensitivities
- developing the final plan taking into account the various scenarios and policy positions.

Alternative gas resources

Experiments are underway to assess the potential for mining coal-bed methane gas.

Underground coal gassification technology is also being developed.

According to the USA Energy Information Administration, technically recoverable shale-gas resources in South Africa form the fifth-largest reserve globally.

Since the publication of draft regulations on shale gas development, substantive inputs have been received from interested and affected stakeholders.

The Department of Mineral Resources first halted new applications for exploration rights in 2011 to investigate the impact that the process would have on the environment, and an interdepartmental task team was set up to head this process.

Government is clear that shale gas will form a part of the energy mix going forward.

Following the gazetting of Regulations for Petroleum Exploration and Production, the Department of Mineral Resources has instituted research on shale gas. Research will be carried out with the objective to enhance current knowledge on shale gas as well as identify other unknown shale gas occurrences.

The sensitive nature of the process, possible negative environmental impacts associated with the process and lack of information and knowledge on technical aspects of the hydraulic fracturing process in South Africa will be taken into consideration.

This plan will see the Department of Mineral Resources in partnership with its SOEs, namely the Council for Geoscience (CGS) and the PASA undertaking a research programme on petroleum exploration and exploitation of shale gas resources during the MTEF period.

A shale gas workshop was held with both the CGS and PASA to finalise a shale gas development plan considering the budget allocation sitting under the Department of Mineral Resources and the CGS.

Electricity

Electricity demand is expected to double over the next 20 years as government implements its Programme of Action, including the Infrastructure Development Programme, to put the country's economy onto a higher growth path.

To this end, more than R340 billion will be spent on Eskom's New Build Programme. This will bring on line a further 11 641 MW of new capacity in the short term, adding to Eskom's existing 40 000 MW of capacity.

The DoE has procured private peaker stations to the capacity of nearly 1 000 MW that can be used when there is a larger demand than what the Eskom generators can produce.

Coal

South Africa's indigenous energy resource base is dominated by coal.

Internationally, coal is the most widely used primary fuel, accounting for about 36% of the total fuel consumption of the world's electricity production.

About 77% of South Africa's primary energy needs are provided by coal. This is unlikely to change significantly in the next two decades owing to the relative lack of suitable alternatives to coal as an energy source.

Many of the deposits can be exploited at extremely favourable costs and, as a result, a large coal-mining industry has developed.

In addition to the extensive use of coal in the domestic economy, about 28% of South Africa's production is exported, mainly through the Richards Bay Coal Terminal, making South Africa the fourth-largest coal exporting country in the world.

South Africa's coal is obtained from collieries that range from among the largest in the world to small-scale producers.

About 51% of South African coal mining is done underground and about 49% is produced by open-cast methods. The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with five companies accounting for 85% saleable coal production.

These companies are:

- Ingwe Collieries Limited, a BHP Billiton subsidiary
- Anglo Coal
- Sasol

- Eyesizwe
- Kumba Resources Limited, accounting for 85% of the saleable coal production.

Production is concentrated in large mines, with 11 mines accounting for 70% of the output.

South African coal for local electricity production is among the cheapest in the world. The beneficiation of coal, particularly for export, results in more than 65 Mt of coal discards being produced every year.

About 21% of the run-of-mine coal produced is exported, and 21% is used locally (excluding power-station coal). The rest is not saleable and is discarded.

The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries:

- 62% is used for electricity generation
- 23% for petrochemical industries (Sasol)
- 8% for general industry
- 4% for the metallurgical industry (Mittal)
- 4% is purchased by merchants and sold locally or exported.

The key role played by South Africa's coal reserves in the economy is illustrated by the fact that Eskom ranks first in the world as a steam coal user and seventh as an electricity generator. Sasol is the largest coal-to-chemicals producer.

By international standards, South Africa's coal deposits are relatively shallow with thick seams, which make them easier and, usually, cheaper to mine. At the present production rate, there should be more than 50 years of coal supply left.

An additional 3 750 MW of power will be generated using coal technology, through cross border projects that will augment the local coal IPP procurement programme. The rationale behind the cross-border coal programme is that it facilitates the construction of the transmission interconnectors between South Africa and its neighbours. Transmission interconnectors are critical if the country is to import power from the hydropower projects in the DRC, the Grand Inga, and in Zambia and Mozambique such as Cahora Bassa North Bank and Mpanda Nkuwa.

This also gives the respective transit countries the necessary comfort that the interconnections are in their national interest and not just for the benefit of South Africa.

Renewable and alternative fuels

South Africa's NDP has stressed the importance of a greater mix of energy sources and a greater diversity of IPPs in South Africa's energy mix.

This has been made a reality through the DoE's Renewable Independent Power Producer Programme (REIPP).

The renewables programme, which is seen as an example for other African countries, has resulted in over 6 000 MW of generation capacity being allocated to bidders across a variety of technologies, principally in wind and solar.

REIPP is aimed at bringing additional megawatts onto the country's electricity system through private sector investment in wind, biomass and small hydro, among others.

The Eastern Cape's renewable energy projects has created 18 132 jobs since its inception. The province was awarded 16 wind farms and one solar energy farm, with a total investment value of R33.7 billion.

The province has been able to reduce loadshedding because it received an additional boost for its energy security when the R3.5 billion, 342 MW DEDISA peaking power station achieved commercial operation in October 2015.

Work is underway to procure the remaining megawatts in line with the IRP 2010. About 2 500 MW has been allocated for coal programme procurement from IPPs.

Work on the Grand Inga Project to secure 2 500 MW is continuing, while an energy agreement between South Africa and the DRC has been signed.

The 2014 agreement provides a legal framework for cooperation between the two countries.

Biofuel

The South African Cabinet approved the national Biofuels Industrial Strategy in December 2007. The regulations for mandatory blending of biofuels with petrol and diesel were promulgated in August 2012 and came into effect in October 2016.

The Biofuels Regulatory Framework outlines how the nascent biofuels industry will be financially supported and how the projects would be selected and supported.

The blending of biofuels reduces the impact of fuel emissions.

In addition, the benefits arising from biofuels include:

- the potential for a biofuels manufacturing industry to create a captive market for the agricultural sector, especially for new black or small farmers
- the opportunity of a biofuels industry to create jobs in rural areas
- the reduction in imports of refined liquid transport fuel, which is good for the country's balance of payments savings.

The production of 460 million litres of biofuels can create 15 000 new permanent direct jobs in the biofuels manufacturing plants and agriculture; plus over 3 000 temporary jobs during the 24 months of construction.

A 460 million litres a year, the biofuels industry can immediately improve the country's annual balance of payments by over R2,5 billion at the current crude oil prices and exchange rate.

The Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries played a key role in designing the biofuels feedstock protocol for mitigating the possible impact of biofuels production on food security. This will prevent the use of staple food crops and land currently used for these crops from being used for biofuels production other than as a result of crop rotation.

Hydropower

Energy from water can be generated from waves, tides, waterfalls and rivers and will never be depleted as long as water is available. South Africa has a mix of small hydroelectricity stations and pumped-water storage schemes.

Pumping uses some electricity, but this is done in off-peak periods. During peak hours, when extra electricity is needed, the water is released through a turbine that drives an electric generator. Peak hours are usually from 06:00 to 08:00 and 18:00 to 20:00.

South Africa used to import electricity from the Cahora Bassa hydropower station in Mozambique and will do so again once the transmission line is repaired.

Irrespective of the size of its installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act 1998, (Act 36 of 1998).

The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are endowed with the best potential for the development of small, i.e. less than 1 MW,

hydropower plants. These plants can either be stand-alones or in a hybrid combination with other renewable energy sources. Advantage can be derived from the association with other uses of water – such as water supply, irrigation and flood control – which are critical to the future economic and socio-economic development of South Africa.

Ocean energy could potentially be derived from the various characteristics of the sea.

Eskom is continuing resource surveys of the Agulhas Current on the east coast of South Africa and of wave energy, in partnership with the DEA and the Bayworld Centre for Research and Education.

Results have proved the technical feasibility of extracting significant large-scale renewable energy from the current.

According to the IRP's 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand, about 6% of electricity generated in the country will be required to come from hydro resources.

Solar power

South Africa boasts one of the best solar regimes in the world. Most areas in the country average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4.5 kWh/m² and 6.5 kWh/m² in one day. The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, is well endowed with sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m² for South Africa. The solar resource is the most readily accessible in South Africa. It lends itself to a number of potential uses.

The 96 MW photovoltaic (PV) Jasper Solar Power Project located in the Northern Cape became fully operational in 2014, helping South Africa meet its electricity needs.

Jasper is located in a solar park that also includes the 75 MW Lesedi Solar Power Project.

The power generated through the project is enough to power up to 80 000 households through a 20-year power purchase agreement with Eskom.

The project also marked Google's first renewable energy investment in Africa – the Internet search invested US\$12 million in the solar project.

To boost renewable energy development in South Africa, the DoE, in partnership with the NERSA, aims to generate 1 500 MW from new solar technologies in a Northern Cape Solar Park.

The Solar Park will stimulate investment in new and expanding industrial and manufacturing facilities, the development of local supply chains and entrepreneurial and employment opportunities for South Africans in general and for the people of the Northern Cape in particular.

The Solar Park will be developed in a clustered fashion, sharing common infrastructure and services such as access to land, water supply, feeder lines to electricity transmission system, roads and support industries. The area has been included in one of the newly promulgated Renewable Energy Development Zones.

Another priority for the DoE is to address defective installations from the initial solar water heater rollout programme to ensure continued operation of the installed systems and service delivery to the recipients.

This corrective Solar Water Heater Programme has been identified to serve as incubator for suitably skilled and experienced solar water heater installers and installation businesses. It provides a platform for technical training at different skills levels and an opportunity for work-based experience with respect to all aspects of solar water heater installation; from identifying installation and system defects, to repairs and doing new, replacement installations.

Targets for installing solar water heaters had not been met due to delays in finalising the implementing contract with Eskom and the local content verification outcomes projected by the South African Bureau of Standards.

The Solar Water Heater Programme will now be managed by the DoE. Spending of R1.2 billion over the medium term on 131 146 solar water heaters is projected. The budget for solar water heater service providers is in the Energy Efficiency subprogramme of the Clean Energy programme and is expected to grow at an average annual rate of 49.8% over the medium term.

Hybrid systems

Hybrid energy systems are a combination of two or more renewable energy sources such as photovoltaic, wind, micro-hydro, storage batteries and fuel-powered generator sets to provide a reliable off-grid supply.

There are two pilot hybrid systems in the Eastern Cape at the Hluleka Nature Reserve on the Wild Coast and at the neighbouring Lucingweni community.

Tradable renewables

The *White Paper on Renewable Energy Policy* proposed that tradable renewable energy certificates be investigated to find out whether these could be one of the funding streams to support the implementation of the renewable energy programme in South Africa. This would be in addition to other funding options, i.e. sale of physical electrical power through a power purchase agreement into the electrical grid at prevailing electricity market prices and certified emission reductions trading through the clean development mechanism, a UN framework mechanism that encourages developing countries to implement emission-reduction projects to earn certified emission reductions.

A tradable renewable energy certificate is an electronic record that verifies the origin of energy by a registered renewable energy entity. It is also referred to as a green certificate or green tag. Tradable renewable energy certificates are based on separating the various attributes of renewable resource-based energy provision from the physical energy carrier, electric or otherwise. It is another revenue stream for renewable energy IPPs and its major advantage is that, apart from potential extra income, certificates can be traded worldwide and separately from the electricity grid infrastructure.

Nuclear

South Africa's vision for nuclear power is based on the Nuclear Energy Policy of 2008 that provides a framework within which the following is to take place: prospecting, milling, mining, the use of nuclear materials, and the development and use of nuclear energy for peaceful purposes.

Government has committed itself, by means of its Nuclear Energy Policy and Integrated Resource Plan, to an energy mix consisting of coal, gas, hydro, nuclear, solar and wind in order to meet the country's future electricity needs and reduce its carbon dioxide emissions.

Government remains firmly committed to an open, fair and transparent procurement process with due regard to implementing the programme at a scale and pace that South Africa can afford.

The national electricity utility company, Eskom, operates the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station near Cape Town, the only

nuclear power station in South Africa and the entire African continent, which supplies power to the national grid. By March 2018, the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station was supplying approximately 4,1% of the power (1940 MW) used in South Africa, while adding diversification to the energy mix.

The nuclear power station was expected to add R27 billion to the Western Cape provincial GDP and an additional R22 billion to the South African economy between 2016/17 and 2019/20.

Programmes and projects

National Energy Efficiency Strategy

The NDP envisages that by 2030 South Africa will have an adequate supply of electricity and liquid fuels to ensure that economic activity and welfare are not disrupted, and that at least 95% of the population will have access to grid or off-grid electricity.

The NDP proposes that gas and other renewable resources such as wind, solar and hydro-electricity will be viable alternatives to coal and will supply at least 20 000 MW of the additional 29 000 MW of electricity needed by 2030.

Other recommendations in the NDP include diversifying power sources and ownership in the electricity sector, supporting cleaner coal technologies, and investing in human and physical capital in the 12 largest electricity distributors.

The DoE will continue to address these proposals through a combination of new and existing programmes.

Funds will continue to be allocated to the Sanedi for research and development into a carbon capture and storage project, and for a hydraulic fracturing pilot to assess the potential for shale gas.

The DoE will also continue implementing the pilot approach to the distribution asset management programme, by providing capital subsidies to nine municipalities to address maintenance, refurbishment and backlog concerns to improve the quality of electricity supply.

The objectives of the revised energy efficiency strategy are to:

- promote and develop energy efficiency practices, norms and standards in different energy sectors, including industries, commercial buildings, households, transport and agriculture

- develop energy efficiency policies and guidelines
- facilitate information awareness and capacity-building campaigns concerning energy efficiency and environmental issues
- promote energy for sustainable development
- mitigate negative impacts of energy use on the environment
- promote energy efficiency technologies and clean energy technologies, including environmentally sound energy technologies
- promote and facilitate international collaboration and cooperation
- ensure the DoE's participation at international forums on energy efficiency and the environment, including the United Nations (UN) Commission on Sustainable Development, the Kyoto Protocol and the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change.

The strategy includes Eskom's demand-side management.

Municipalities are also implementing their own energy efficiency strategies. In addition, 32 large companies have joined forces with the DoE and Eskom by signing an energy efficiency accord, committing themselves to targets contained in the strategy.

To assist households in becoming more energy efficient, the DoE initiated an appliance-labelling campaign. Labels on household appliances inform consumers of the energy efficiency of the appliances.

National building standards

Energy-efficient regulations for new buildings form part of the deliverables of South Africa's National Energy Strategy to strengthen standards and regulations for energy efficiency.

The energy-efficient regulations apply to residential and commercial buildings, places of learning and worship, certain medical clinics and other categories of building.

The regulations make it compulsory for all new buildings to be designed and constructed to a standard that makes it possible for the user to minimise the energy required to meet the functional requirements. This will save energy significantly, which will relieve pressure on the electricity supply grid.

In addition to temperature regulations, all buildings will also

have to be fitted with renewable-energy water-heating systems such as solar systems, which also have to comply with South African national standards.

An excellent example of the power of energy-efficient buildings and the power-savings they can effect can be found in Bayside Mall in Cape Town.

Bayside Mall is saving 2 200 units of electricity each day due to the installation of renewable energy systems.

As part of its Going Green project, Bayside Mall harvests rainwater and generates solar electricity. Through this system, the mall is reducing the electricity it needs from Eskom by about 2 200 units each day.

The mall had reported significant cost-savings since the installation of its rooftop photovoltaic (PV) system two years ago. The mall's rooftop PV system includes 2 000 solar panels.

Bayside Mall has saved R1 million through its reduced energy savings initiatives and used around 800 000 less kilowatts of energy over the same period. These figures show that energy efficiency is the responsible and moneywise way to operate.

Integrated Energy Plan

The IEP represents the DoE's overarching energy policy and strategy statement that has been under development since 2012, when Cabinet approved the commencement of the public consultation process. The following strategies and programmes all form part of this greater scheme towards energy self-sufficiency and environmentally friendly energy resources.

Integrated Resource Plan (IRP) and the Gas Infrastructure Plan

The IRP 2010 – 2030 envisages 9 600 MW additional nuclear capacity by 2030. The IRP is a 20-year projection on electricity supply and demand. It aimed to reduce South Africa's primary reliance on fossil fuels such as coal and diesel, and diversify the national energy mix to produce 41.8% from renewable energy sources and a further 6.1% from hydroelectricity within two decades.

Similarly, the Gas Infrastructure Plan will take its lead from the IEP regarding gas pipelines, storage and other infrastructure that is necessary for meeting the energy demand through gas supply.

Going forward, it is becoming more and more apparent that future energy demand will be a mix of electricity, gas and liquid fuels and, depending on the relative cost competitiveness

of each of these, an equilibrium between the three will be established.

National Liquid Petroleum Gas (LPG) Strategy

LPG is commonly used in mines to power smelting furnaces that are processing materials, such as platinum and vanadium, as well as domestically for cooking.

The LPG strategy's main objectives are to provide access to safe, cleaner, efficient, portable, environmentally friendly and affordable thermal fuel for all households, and to switch low-income households away from the use of coal, paraffin and biomass to LPG.

The strategy highlights strategic options that could be adopted for the orderly development of the LPG industry in South Africa to make LPG an energy carrier of choice for thermal applications.

The domestic LPG price is regulated through the DoE by the Minister of Energy.

Wind Resource Map

The DoE launched the country's first Large Scale High Resolution (250 m) Wind Resource Map in July 2013. The data is based on the Verified Numerical Wind Atlas for South Africa (WASA).

It includes important information such as ground surface terrain effects that determine the local wind climate and, in turn, can be used to identify high-yielding wind development zones; and the estimation of available wind energy and capacity which can be used by prospective wind farm developers of all sizes in their planning process.

The Wind Resource Map offers important benefits for planners, policy makers and industry. These benefits include cost and timing savings as the viability, in terms of wind speed, of a potential site can be predicted with known and traceable accuracy, while it also levels the playing field between small or large industry players to identify and develop project sites for wind farms.

It will also assist government in calculating the potential yield of wind energy resources, among other things.

The Large Scale High Resolution Wind Resource Map is available to the public from the WASA's online portal <http://wasadata.csir.co.za/wasa1/WASAData>.

The purpose of the WASA is to improve knowledge and the quality of resource assessment methods and tools, to make available this knowledge and tools free of charge for planning and development of wind farms and off-grid electrification, and to build capacity of local institutions to do wind resource measurements.

The country has a reasonable wind energy resource (an average of 8 m/s measured at 80 m) is available in geographically dispersed locations, allowing for security of supply.

Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Procurement Programme

The REIPPPP is a flagship programme of the DoE and falls under the mandate of the Electricity Regulation Act of 2006.

The DoE, National Treasury and the Development Bank of Southern Africa established the independent power producer procurement programme at the end of 2010 to secure electrical energy generated from renewable and non-renewable sources from the private sector. The programme is designed to be self-funding through revenue derived from development fees paid by bidders and investors.

The programme also seeks to procure energy from small-scale independent power producers, with projects that generate between 1 MW and 5 MW of energy from solar, wind, biomass and landfill gas projects.

The DoE remains on track to meet its national commitment to transition to a low-carbon economy with the target of 17 800 MW of renewable energy power by 2030.

In March 2018, the DoE signed project agreements of 27 Renewable Energy Independent Power Producer Projects (REIPPP), including the power purchase agreements with Eskom. The initiative reconfirms government's commitment to renewable energy and a solid partnership with the private sector in pursuing energy transition objectives in the future. It also creates policy and regulatory certainty, and maintain South Africa's position as an energy investment destination of choice.

The agreements will also will enable R56 billion of new investment in the economy over the next two to three years. It will also have a significant contribution in job creation across the energy value chain including the re-establishment of industrial

development and support to the technical training of young people to be absorbed in the labour market.

The usage of different types of energy supply, which includes renewable forms of power generation, is in line with the energy policy. It will also ensure the reduction of carbon emissions, whilst complying with the South African environmental standards.

These programmes will contribute towards competitive market pricing of electricity, both for the household consumer as well as for industrial usage. Lower electricity will assist indigent households to cope with the rising cost of living.

The projects will also provide 61 600 full time jobs of which 95% is for SA citizens, with a focus on youth employment. Northern Cape will have 59% of the jobs created, followed by Eastern Cape with 15% and North West 13% of jobs created.

The Renewable Energy Programme has empowered South Africans to own on average 48% of the equity in all of the Independent Power Producers (IPPs) projects. About 25% of the project equity is owned by foreign investors acting as a catalyst by providing investment and skills transfer to the establishment of the new green economy while enhancing opportunities for economic transformation.

The Renewable Energy Programme is embracing local community development as well as socio-economic and enterprise development. Through the geographic spread of the projects, opportunities are created across the country – mostly in rural areas.

Local community shareholding (equity share) in the 27 projects amounts to 7.1% (R1,6 billion). The local community shareholders for the 27 projects will receive R5.9 billion net dividends over the 20 year lifetime of the projects.

Communities through Community Trusts have full control over how the money will be spent in their areas. The department through the IPP Office will monitor participation by these communities and measure the impact thereof. In addition, the IPPs will enable local communities to further benefit directly from the investments attracted to the areas through the R9.8 billion to be spent on socio-economic development initiatives and R3.4 billion to enterprise development over the 20 year.

Integrated National Electrification Programme

INEP and its implementing agencies – Eskom, municipalities and non-grid service providers – have made remarkable progress in increasing access to electricity in South Africa.

The Non-Grid Electrification Programme has progressed well in the last financial year and has overachieved its target by achieving 25 076 connections. Since the inception of Non-Grid Electrification Programme, INEP achieved more than 123 379 installations of non-grid systems mainly in the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Northern Cape and Limpopo.

Non-grid systems consisting of solar cells converting sun energy into electrical energy are now also being considered for implementation in urban areas of the country with a view of increasing the basic electricity services in the informal settlements.

The European Union (EU) is also assisting the DoE to develop a sustainable delivery model and sustainable non-grid entities around the country. In addition, INEP has developed the first draft of the Electrification Master Plan to ensure better cooperation between the different implementing entities, as well as different technologies, and grid and non-grid roll-out in unserved areas, to ensure that universal access is reached by 2025/26.

Over the MTEF, an estimated amount of R17.6 billion will be appropriated.

New Build Programme

Eskom's New Build Programme was launched in 2005 with the aim of adding more than 17 000 MW to the national electricity grid by 2018. Two new coal power stations are the 4 800-MW Medupi Power Station near Lephalale in Limpopo and Kusile in Emalahleni, Mpumalanga, which is also expected to have an output of 4 800 MW.

Carbon capture and storage roadmap

Although South Africa has a programme to increase the use of renewable energy and energy efficiency, coal is likely to provide most of the country's primary energy for the next few decades.

The displacement of fossil fuels by renewable and nuclear energy is seen as a gradual task. Carbon capture and storage

(CCS) is a transition measure from fossil fuel to nuclear and renewable energy. To this end, the South African Centre for Carbon Capture and Storage was established in March 2009.

The mandate of SACCCS is to develop and implement a roadmap for the commercial application of CCS in South Africa. The first and second phases of the roadmap have been completed and now the preparation for the Pilot Carbon Dioxide Storage Project (PCSP) is the focus for the centre.

SACCCS's role in the South African CCS Roadmap is as follows:

- 2004: Assessment of the potential for CCS in South Africa (completed)
- 2010: Development of a South African Carbon Dioxide Geological Storage Atlas (complete)
- 2017: Commencement of a Pilot Carbon Dioxide Storage Project storing about 10 000t to 50 000t carbon dioxide (underway)
- 2020: Facilitate the commencement of a CCS demonstration plant (in the order of 100 000 t carbon dioxide per year)
- 2025: Inform the implementation of commercial CCS deployment (over 1 000 000 t carbon dioxide per year).

Working for Energy Programme

The Working for Energy Programme is a social programme mainly intended to provide energy services derived from renewable resources to rural and urban low-income houses. In this manner it facilitates job creation, skills development, community-based enterprise development and the emancipation of youths, women and people with disabilities.

The major focus area is the provision of sustainable energy solutions (supply side) with special emphasis on the youth, women and people with disabilities in rural areas and low-income urban communities in terms of:

- labour-intensive options, targeting short-term employment opportunities
- sustainable employment opportunities, and enhancing stimulated local economic activity
- community development initiatives and cross-cutting human capital development.

The 20-Year Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Plan

The 20-Year Liquid Fuels Infrastructure Plan forms the basis for the implementation of the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Commission Strategic Implementation Project regarding refinery upgrades and development, and make recommendations on the future of the refinery infrastructure in the country.

As a further response to the global situation and domestic development imperatives, the department decided to strengthen the Strategic Fuels Fund, a subsidiary of the CEF. The DoE will position the Strategic Fuels Fund to improve the country's strategic petroleum reserves and enable the country to better respond to catastrophic global events that impact on the petroleum trade.

Renewable energy programmes from Eskom

Eskom has an active research programme investigating ways to harness South Africa's renewable energy sources for power generation. Eskom is looking to increase the renewables component of its supply mix.

The long-term strategic energy plan includes a mix of all viable sources, including renewables, to be implemented where commercially viable. The two most advanced areas under investigation are wind-generated and concentrated solar thermal power.

Eskom's renewable energy journey has been affected by several factors, including the changing nature of power generation, environmental concerns and procuring loans that will fund solar and wind-electricity generation.

Underground coal gassification

Eskom also has an underground coal gassification project in the pilot stage, with a test plant next to the Majuba Power Station in Mpumalanga. The gas produced is co-fired with coal in Majuba's Unit Four, and contributes 3 MW to the station's output.

The process entails using coal seams that cannot be mined for various reasons – they may be too deep, fractured, or of poor quality – and turns the coal into clean gas on site. With the region's substantial coal reserves, there is potential in this source of power. Eskom has developed a 10-year

transmission development plan which includes renewable energy integration.

Sere Wind Farm

Eskom's Sere Wind Farm, which was completed in 2015, is delivering 100 MW to the national grid.

Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme

The Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme near Van Reenen in KwaZulu-Natal, consists of an upper and a lower dam; both with the capacity to hold about 22 million m² of water capacity.

The dams, 4.6 km apart, are connected by underground waterways, through an underground powerhouse accommodating 4 x 333-MW pump turbines.

During times of peak energy consumption, water will be released from the upper dam through the pump turbines to the lower dam to generate electricity.

During times of low-energy demand, the pump turbines are used to pump the water from the lower dam back up to the upper dam.

Concentrated solar power

A solar park is a concentrated zone of solar plants that are built in clusters, sharing common transmission and infrastructure.

Together, these clusters generate thousands of megawatts of electricity. The types of technology used are solar PV and concentrated PV, which operate with semiconductors and solar panels; as well as concentrated solar power, which uses mirrors to reflect the sun's rays.

PV systems make a direct conversion into electricity, and are ideal to use at peak load times. However, there is no cost-effective way to store this power.

Concentrated solar power, on the other hand, captures the sun as heat and turns it into steam to power turbines, which in turn generate electricity – much like coal-fired plants. Its advantage is that it is cheap and efficient to store heat, so power can be supplied around the clock.

Skills development and job creation

The challenges of technical skills required in the Energy Sector

have continued to be of concern to the DoE. In response to these challenges; the DoE has developed a Workplace Skills Development Plan (WSP), based on the training needs of individual employees and their managers.

As part of the implementation of the WSP, a number of training and development interventions have been identified. The DoE has also offered 32 new bursaries to serving employees of the department.

In addition, the department will contribute with the implementation of youth development intervention programmes such as the provision of bursaries to external applicants. Eleven external applicants within the youth programme were offered bursaries sponsored by the Chemical Industries Education and Training Authority, including four integrated learners, 32 interns and 15 people on learnership programmes.

In preparation for the rollout the nuclear build programme, the Nuclear Skills Development and Training programme is underway with various countries including China, the Russian Federation and South Korea.

International cooperation

South Africa is a member of the International Energy Forum (IEF), which aims to foster greater mutual understanding and awareness of common energy interests among its members.

The 74 member countries of the forum are signatories to the IEF Charter, which outlines the framework of the global energy dialogue through this intergovernmental arrangement.

South Africa is a member state of the International Renewable Energy Agency which seeks to make an impact in the world of renewable energy by maintaining a clear and independent position, providing a range of reliable and well-understood services that complement those already offered by the renewable energy community and gather existing, but scattered, activities around a central hub.

The country has been a member of the IAEA for decades and has been both a recipient and provider of services emanating from the agency.

As a member state of the IAEA, permanent member of the board of directors and actively participating in nuclear energy, safety, technology, security and disarmament, South Africa has

contributed to efforts of ensuring that nuclear energy is used for peaceful purposes like power generation as well as medical, industrial and agricultural initiatives.

Sustainable development in Africa

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) MoU on the Western Power Corridor Project was signed in October 2004.

It is a flagship programme for the New Partnership for Africa's Development. It intends to pilot the use of hydro-electric energy obtained from the Inga rapids site in the DRC to ensure the security of supply in the SADC.

The participating utilities are those of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental MoU signed between the utilities of Angola, Botswana, the DRC, Namibia and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River, will be the first of these projects.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources would constitute a significant infusion of renewable-energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term.

The Lesotho Highlands Water Project could contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term.

Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale.

Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act of 1998.

The Joint Meeting of SADC Ministers of Energy and Water

In June 2018, south Africa hosted The Joint Meeting of SADC Ministers Responsible for Energy and Water at Sandton Convention Centre in Johannesburg.

The main objectives of the meeting were, among others, to review progress in the implementation of the decisions of Ministers at their last meetings, consider progress in the implementation of the energy and water programmes and projects; and deliberate on and give guidance on the security of energy and water supply to ensure food security and economic and industrial development in the SADC Region.

Emerging issues in the Energy sector such as the promotion of natural gas and its contribution in the regional energy mix also formed part of the discussions. The meeting also discussed the signing of Intergovernmental Memoranda of Understanding for regional interconnector projects that are important for enhancing regional integration.

The Ministers held a workshop on Regional Gas Infrastructure and Market Development, in the margins of this meeting, and deliberated on several issues related to gas exploitation in the Region. The workshop provided a perspective on the potential of gas in the Region.

The Ministers signed a statement of intent on cooperation in the development of regional gas market and infrastructure in which they among others, reaffirm their shared commitment to:

- improve access to reliable, affordable and safe energy to alleviate poverty, encourage economic development and improve quality of life in the SADC region,
- establish a region wide gas master plan in line with the principles of the Energy Protocol, as well as the overarching objectives of SADC Industrialization Strategy Framework.

The meeting was attended by Angola, Botswana, Kingdom of Eswatini, Kingdom of Lesotho, Malawi, Madagascar, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, United Republic of Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The Third BRICS Meeting of Energy Ministers

The Third BRICS Meeting of Energy Ministers was held in Sandton on June 28 2018. It was held under the theme:

BRICS in Africa: Collaboration for Inclusive Growth and Shared Prosperity in the 4th Industrial Revolution. The theme encapsulates the importance of energy as an area for BRICS cooperation as the 4th Industrial Revolution transforms member states' collective economic, developmental, and social, energy and electricity landscapes.

Cross-border gas trade agreement

To facilitate the movement of gas across international borders, cross-border gas trade agreements have been signed with Mozambique and Namibia. Since the arrival of natural gas from Mozambique in 2004, the contribution of natural gas to the primary energy supply has risen from 1.5% to 3.3% (2005).

This figure is expected to rise to 4.3% when the new Mozambique-South Africa gas-transmission pipeline reaches maximum capacity.

The Tete-Maputo Power Transmission Line, also known as the Centre-South Project (Cesul), in Mozambique, will improve the ability to evacuate power from the projects in the northern Mozambique complex, particularly releasing the hydropower potential relating to Mpanda Nkuwa and Cahora Bassa.

The South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission addresses harnessing the natural gas reserves in the Kudu Gas Field.

In March 2017, Eskom signed a five-year electricity sales agreement with Namibia's national electricity utility, NamPower.

Eskom will supplement generation capacity for South Africa's neighbour with its surplus electricity, providing Namibia with energy security and allowing for economic development and growth.

NamPower has also concluded a number of projects to establish renewable energy projects in Namibia and to enhance its local production.

Eskom and Botswana Power Corporation signed a three-year firm power supply agreement in April 2017.

This is in line with Eskom's plan to increase its electricity exports to South Africa's neighbouring states. Eskom currently has excess capacity of about 4 000 MW, excluding an operating margin.

Import and export of fuel products

The import of refined products is restricted to special cases

where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to state control to promote local refinery usage.

When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met. More diesel than petrol is exported, due to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations.

Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland.

Energy and the global environment

South Africa is classified as a developing country or a non-Annex 1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions.

South Africa is among the top 20 emitters of GHGs in the world and the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. It emits more than 400 Mt of carbon dioxide per year.

The National Climate Change Strategy, developed by the former Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a coordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus.

The South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption, and is subsequently a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emission intensity and emissions per capita.

Therefore, South Africa is proactively moving the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the DoE playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the clean development mechanism of the Kyoto Protocol. It developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

The Grand I MoU signed with the DRC is an important

milestone in working towards sustainable African partnerships aimed at developing strategies for low-carbon economies and interconnected energy systems.

The South African Renewables Initiative secures international financing partnerships in investment in deploying renewable energy and develops renewable supply chains through securing a critical mass of renewable energy, without imposing undue burden on the fiscus or the South African consumer.

In line with this objective, the DoE has signed a Declaration of Intent with Germany, the United Kingdom, Denmark, Norway and the European Investment Bank. This agreement will lead to the establishment of a fund to assist in the deployment of renewable energy.

Further, the department participates in structures such as the:

- International Renewable Energy Agency
- International Energy Forum
- International Partnership for Energy Efficiency Cooperation
- UN Industrial Development Organisation
- Clean Energy Ministerial
- African Union-EU Energy Partnership.





South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

Human Settlements



Chapter 8 of the National Development Plan (NDP) envisages that, by 2030, South Africa should have spatially transformed and integrated human settlements. Outcome 8 (sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life) of government's 2014 – 2019 Medium-Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) gives expression to this vision by guiding the work of the Department of Human Settlements. In working towards the realisation of this vision, over the medium term, the department will focus on facilitating the provision of integrated human settlements, upgrading informal settlements, and facilitating affordable housing finance.

Over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period, the department intends to focus on ensuring that poor households have access to adequate housing in better living environments, and creating a functional housing market. It will invest in catalytic projects that deliver integrated communities; upgrade informal settlements; and provide affordable rental housing, outstanding title deeds to beneficiaries of state subsidised housing, and temporary shelter to people affected by housing emergencies such as fires.

Legislation and policies

The DHS derives its core mandate and responsibilities from section 26 of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and section 3 of the Housing Act, 1997 (Act 107 of 1997)). This allows the department, in collaboration with provinces and municipalities, to establish and facilitate a sustainable housing development process.

The department does this by: determining national policy and national norms and standards for housing and human settlements development, setting broad national housing delivery goals, providing funding to provinces and metropolitan municipalities, and monitoring the financial and non-financial performance of provinces and municipalities against these goals.

In executing these roles and responsibilities, the department also builds capacity for provinces and municipalities, and promotes consultation with all stakeholders in the housing delivery chain, including other sector departments, civil society and the private sector.

Further legislation guiding the mandate of the DHS include:

- The Sectional Titles Schemes Management Act, 2011 (Act 8 of 2011), which provides for the establishment of bodies corporate to manage and regulate common property in sectional title schemes and the establishment of an advisory council to advise the Minister.
- The Community Schemes Ombud Service (CSOS) Act, 2011 (Act 9 of 2011), which could fundamentally change the lives of people living in high-rise flats, inner-city buildings, townhouse complexes and other gated communities. The Act establishes an ombud service to resolve disputes emanating from within community schemes. The Act is aimed at addressing any problems and disputes among participants involving the control and administration of finances, facilities and behaviour.
- The Estate Agency Affairs Act, 1976 (Act 112 of 1976), the Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme (FLISP) and the Mortgage Default Insurance are expected to address challenges associated with the upgrading of slums, access to basic services, accreditation of key municipalities and land acquisition for human settlements. The programme of improving property markets remains a major challenge.
- The Housing Act of 1997 provides for, among other things, facilitating a sustainable housing development process. For this purpose, it lays down general principles applicable to housing development in all spheres of government; defines the functions of national, provincial and local government in respect of housing development; and provides for the financing of national housing programmes.
- The Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999), defines the responsibility of government in respect of the rental housing market. It creates mechanisms to advance the provision of rental housing property and promotes access to adequate housing by working to ensure the proper functioning of the rental housing market. It furthermore provides for the establishment of rental housing tribunals. The Act gives tribunals the power to make rulings, which are deemed to be rulings of a magistrates' court in terms of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1993 (Act 120 of 1993), and which are enforced in terms of the Act. The Act provides for the facilitation of sound relations between tenants and landlords and for this purpose

lays down general requirements relating to leases. Among other things, the Act prescribes that: leases may be oral or in writing; tenants can demand a written lease; the landlord must give the tenant a written receipt for all payments received by the landlord from the tenant; the landlord may require that the tenant pay a deposit before moving in; the balance of the deposit and interest must be refunded to the tenant by the landlord not later than 21 days after the expiry of the lease.

- The Rental Housing Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 43 of 2007), among other things, provides for rulings by rental housing tribunals to expand the provisions pertaining to leases and to extend the period allowed for the filling of vacancies in rental housing tribunals.
- The Social Housing Act, 2008 (Act 16 of 2008), aims to establish and promote a sustainable social housing environment. It defines the functions of the national, provincial and local spheres of government in respect of social housing. It provides for the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA) to regulate all social housing institutions obtaining or having obtained public funds, and it allows for the undertaking of approved projects by other delivery agents with the benefit of public money. The DHS has taken steps to assist governance and regulatory processes through the promulgation of the Social Housing Act of 2008 and the establishment of the SHRA. The Act provides for the recognition and accreditation of social housing institutions. Provincial governments are given responsibilities to approve, allocate and administer capital grants, as well as administer the Social Housing Programme. Local governments are required to ensure access to land, municipal infrastructure and services for approved projects in designated restructuring zones. Local governments are also responsible for initiating the identification of these restructuring zones. The Act's major purpose is the establishment of the SHRA.

Human Settlements Vision 2030

Human Settlements Vision 2030: On the Road to 2050 aims to provide houses and services in rural and urban areas. It focuses on the total eradication of backlogs of more than 2.1 million housing units, which translates to about 12.5 million people.

Under Vision 2030's framework, most South Africans will have affordable access to services and a quality environment; instead of living in isolation on the periphery of cities.

The DHS is a key player in the property market. A recent study found that of the six million registered residential properties in the Deeds Registry, 1.44 million were government-subsidised houses. This represents just less than a quarter of registered residential properties and could increase to 35% if the backlog in issuing title deeds is overcome.

The value of a title deed provides the following:

- protection of rights to a property
- asset security
- facilitation of entry of ordinary South Africans as players in both the property as well as the financial markets.

What is least understood yet nevertheless a major contribution to asset formation by beneficiaries is that each time the government facilitates the acquisition of a house, it comes with its own land.

Nationally, the acquisition of houses were financially assisted by the National Housing Finance Corporation through FLISP, which gives all qualifying beneficiaries the certainty of being granted loans, bonds or mortgages by banks and other financial institutions.

The DHS has also been buying high-rise buildings in inner cities and refurbishing and transforming them from office space to rented family units. This form of social housing has become popular with young couples, students and single mothers.

Areas close to townships, known as "no man's land" that were used as buffer zones to separate black townships from white areas, are being eradicated. The land is being used for housing with occupants being moved closer to cities.

New non-racial towns and cities are constantly being developed to fulfil the principle of a united people in non-racial residential areas.

Towards integrated human settlements

The department's ongoing policy review seeks to reinforce the shift from housing to human settlements, as envisaged in the Breaking New Ground strategy and chapter 8 of the NDP. The emphasis is on creating integrated, mixed-use, mixed-income

developments that support densification and the development of transport-oriented corridors, and provide access to housing, and social and economic amenities. The department's operational activities, which largely enable it to develop policy and oversee programme implementation, will be funded from an operational budget that is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 9.4%, from R766.4 million in 2018/19 to R1 billion in 2021/22.

Providing integrated human settlements also entails increasing access to and delivering adequate housing and housing services in high quality living environments, providing affordable rental housing and state-subsidised units, delivering title deeds, and providing temporary shelter for housing-related emergencies, among other interventions.

Integrated Urban Development Framework (IUDF)

South Africa's grand plan to change the face of urban development is set to create vibrant spaces that are geared towards inclusive living and growth in the country's towns and cities.

South Africa adopted the IUDF to steer urban growth towards a sustainable model of "compact, connected and coordinated towns and cities".

The IUDF provides a roadmap to implement the NDP vision for spatial transformation.

It addresses issues such as densification, the delivery of basic services, infrastructure development and rural-urban linkages. Through the plan, government aims to promote urban resilience, create safe urban spaces and ensure that the needs of the most vulnerable groups are addressed. The objective is to transform urban spaces by:

- reducing travel costs and distances
- preventing further development of housing in marginal places
- increasing urban density to reduce sprawling
- improving public transport and the coordination between transport modes
- shifting jobs and investment towards dense peripheral townships
- rapid urbanisation in Africa.

According to the United Nations (UN), 54% of the world's

population lives in urban areas and this will increase to 66% by 2050.

Continuing population growth and urbanisation will add two-and-a-half billion people to the world's urban population by 2050.

The UN states that Africa is expected to be one of the fastest urbanising regions between 2020 and 2050.

Upgrading informal settlements

The upgrading of informal settlements is intended to provide households with secure tenure and access to basic services such as water and sanitation. Activities related to this are funded through the human settlements development grant to provinces and the urban settlements development grant to metropolitan cities. The target set in government's 2014 – 2019 MTSF is that 750 000 poor households have adequate housing in better living environments by 2019.

To strengthen the department's policy response to informal settlements, a dedicated Informal Settlements Upgrading Partnership Grant for provinces and metropolitan municipalities is expected to be introduced in 2020/21. The aim of the grant will be to incentivise a programmatic approach to the upgrading of informal settlements at municipal level. Funding for the grant, of R14.7 billion in 2020/21 and 2021/22, will be reprioritised from the Human Settlements Development Grant and the Urban Settlements Development Grant. These funds are expected to enable the upgrading of 231 000 households in informal settlements over the medium term. For 2019/20, funds are earmarked for informal settlements within the existing grant frameworks.

To provide an estimated 117 municipalities with technical assistance for the development of 766 settlement upgrading plans over the medium term, R150 million is allocated to the National Upgrading Support Programme in the Human Settlements Delivery Support programme. As a rapid response mechanism for the provision of temporary shelters in emergencies such as fires and floods, R1.4 billion over the medium term is allocated to the provincial and municipal emergency housing grants.

Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery

The Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery was conceptualised to support the implementation of government's Breaking New Ground strategy, which was launched in 2004 with the aim to accelerate the delivery of housing as a key strategy for poverty alleviation.

In 2014, the DHS together with private sector partners and stakeholders recommitted and signed a Social Contract for the Development of Sustainable Human Developments and Improved Quality of Household Life.

Through the contract, the partners set an ambitious target to deliver 1.5 million housing opportunities over the following five years.

The partners, including the private sector, mining sector, banking sector; as well as national, provincial and local spheres of government, signed the contract during the National Human Settlements Indaba held in Johannesburg.

The signatories of the social contract jointly undertook to work together to deliver 110 000 affordable housing opportunities for the gap market, 70 000 affordable rental opportunities, undertake 50 catalytic projects and install basic services and infrastructure in 2 000 informal settlements.

This formed part of their plan to ensure that by 2030 all South Africans live in adequate housing

Inclusionary Housing Policy

The New Economic Growth Path identified energy, transport, roads, water, communication and housing as key areas in its strategy to fast-track sustainable growth, employment and equity creation.

This was given a boost by the Presidential Infrastructure Coordinating Committee (PICC) and was a breakthrough in the effort to reverse the system of apartheid infrastructure and its spatial planning. The introduction of the PICC means the beginning of the end for government operating in silos.

Sanitation, which provides the most basic protection to the private dignity of citizens, is an internationalised programme through the UN Millennium Development Goals (MDGs) as agreed to by all UN member states. In the PICC, this programme has been made a national priority. This is also one of the key

recommendations of the Ministerial Sanitation Task Team's preliminary findings.

Private-sector developers, in collaboration with financial institutions, have undertaken several inclusionary housing initiatives.

These included housing projects in areas such as Bertrams and Cosmo City, Johannesburg; Olievenhoutbosch, Pretoria; Hlanganani, Springs; and Blythedale outside Durban. Multiple housing projects such as these that are designed as mixed-income housing developments ensure cross-subsidisation and achieve inclusive housing objectives.

Human Settlements Development Bank

The Human Settlements Development Bank supports effective transformation of the human settlements sector. This will be enabled by the provision of equity finance especially for emerging black entrants in the property industry, in line with government's transformation objectives. This would require a fundamental shift from the ordinary banking mindset.

The bank will facilitate the scaled-up delivery of FLISP to qualifying beneficiaries in the so-called gap market (an as yet unmet consumer need or a group of potential customers who are not yet purchasing a good or service, in this case buying property), including the Government Employees Housing Scheme (GEHS).

The strategic focus of the Human Settlements Development Bank will be to facilitate the increased provision of finance across the human settlements value chain, and the specific priority for the bank in this respect is the mobilisation of and the provision of finance for all planned catalytic projects.

National Housing Needs Register

The National Housing Needs Register is a database that links transparent processes of applying for a housing opportunity. It has 2.22 million records, with each record representing a household that has registered a housing need over the last seven years. This places the DHS in a stronger position to address people's needs.

The department has established a single national housing needs register (or database) that will be a single central

reference platform and assist in monitoring all housing programme planning and housing allocations. It is possible to know and prioritise all people based on which type of housing they need, in which area and what they are able to contribute.

The DHS is working together with Statistics South Africa and the Department of Science and Technology to build and govern the housing needs register.

Budget

The department's budget allocation for the 2018/19 financial year was R32.5 billion. The budget is set to increase at an average annual rate of 4.4%, from R32.2 billion in 2018/19 to R36.7 billion in 2021/22. Transfers and subsidies to grants and entities are the department's largest cost drivers, accounting for 97.3% (R102.8 billion) of its total budget over the MTEF period.

Major transfers and subsidies over the medium term include: the human settlements development grant to provinces, which funds the low-income housing programme, amounting to R50.1 billion; the urban settlements development grant to metropolitan municipalities, which is a supplementary capital grant that supports infrastructure provision for broader urban development, amounting to R31.1 billion; and transfers to entities, amounting to R4.3 billion. This spending is in the Housing Development Finance programme and is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 4.3%, from R31.5 billion in 2018/19 to R35.7 billion in 2021/22.

Through these transfers and subsidies, the department aims to support the delivery of 261 917 subsidy housing units and 27 500 self-build subsidies; and issue 891 401 title deeds, of which 412 340 form part of the historical backlog and 479 061 are for new developments.

Cabinet has approved budget reductions of R3.4 billion to the Human Settlements Development Grant and R200 million to the Urban Settlements Development Grant over the medium term. Despite these cuts, an additional R814.5 million over the medium term is allocated to the urban settlements development grant to provide electricity to households in metropolitan cities; and additional allocations to the human settlements development grant of R247 million in 2019/20 and R400 million in 2021/22 are earmarked for post-disaster relief in KwaZulu-Natal.

Subsidies and funding

Finance-Linked Individual Subsidy Programme

The South African Constitution enshrines the right of everyone to have access to adequate housing and makes it incumbent upon government to take reasonable measures to achieve this.

Among government's many programmes, FLISP is specifically intended for the market segment whose income is inadequate to qualify for a home loan, but exceeds the maximum limit applicable to access government's "free basic house" subsidy scheme. This market segment, generally known as the "affordable/gap" market, earns between R3 501 and R15 000 per month.

Households in this segment, if buying a home for the first time, may apply for a FLISP subsidy.

The subsidy attaches to the beneficiary and not to the property. This is used to decrease the mortgage bond and applies only to people who have never been assisted by government. It is disbursed as a once-off subsidy.

An estimated 70 000 finance-linked subsidies are expected to be disbursed to qualifying beneficiaries by 2019 through funding provided in the Human Settlements Development Grant.

FLISP's allocations made to provinces by the Human Settlements Development Grant was R71.6 million.

Catalytic projects

Over the medium term, the department intends to lead the delivery of housing and human settlements through the planning and implementation of 31 catalytic projects across South Africa. These projects involve mixed use, mixed income, integrated human settlement developments, and are aimed at providing spatially, socially and economically integrated communities. The department will facilitate the delivery of various state subsidised housing units within catalytic projects through implementing agents such as provinces, metropolitan municipalities and related departmental entities. Funding for these implementing agents is provided through the Housing Development Finance programme in the form of conditional grants and transfers, which are set to increase from R32.5 billion in 2017/18 to R34.8 billion in 2020/21.

The transfer of the provincial human settlements development grant, which is expected to fund housing and human settlements programmes as stipulated in the National Housing Code, increases at an average annual rate of 0.2%, from R20 billion in 2017/18 to R20.1 billion in 2020/21. This relatively low increase is largely due to Cabinet's approved reduction in allocations to the grant of R7.2 billion over the MTEF period.

The urban settlements development grant to metropolitan municipalities supports the broader development of the built environment, with a strong emphasis on upgrading informal settlements. Grant transfers increase at an average annual rate of 3.3%, from R11.4 billion in 2017/18 to R12.5 billion in 2020/21. The below inflationary increase is due to Cabinet's approved reductions of R2.2 billion over the medium term.

Significant private partnerships and investment are also expected in catalytic projects in the form of rental units, affordable housing units and the development of economic infrastructure such as shopping centres and other commercial developments.

Affordable rental housing

Social housing provides medium density rental housing to low income households. It contributes to transforming urban spatial patterns as it promotes integration and densification in close proximity to economic and social amenities. The department's social housing programme is largely funded through the consolidated capital grant, which is transferred to the Social Housing Regulatory Authority. The grant has been augmented with an institutional subsidy, which was initially part of the human settlements development grant, to streamline the funding of social housing developments. Transfers to the authority for the consolidated capital grant are expected to decrease at an average annual rate of 2.9% over the medium term after

Cabinet approved a reduction of R1.4 billion over the same period. Despite the reduction, R2.3 billion is allocated for social housing over the MTEF period, which is expected to fund the delivery of 62 489 social housing units.

Emergency Housing

The emergency housing grant, which was expected to take effect in 2018/19, was created to respond proactively to emergencies related to housing and human settlements. This includes providing temporary shelter in emergencies such as fires in informal settlements. The grant will be funded through allocations amounting to R1.3 billion over the medium term in the Housing Development Finance programme.

The main objective of this programme is to provide temporary housing relief to people in urban and rural areas who find themselves in emergency situations, such as when:

- their existing shelters have been destroyed or damaged
- their prevailing situation poses an immediate threat to their lives, health and safety
- they have been evicted or face the threat of eviction.

Assistance involves prioritising funds from the provincial housing allocations to municipalities to accelerate land development, as well as the provision of basic municipal engineering services and temporary shelter.

Housing subsidies

A housing subsidy is a grant by government to qualifying beneficiaries to be used for housing purposes. The subsidy is either paid to a seller of a house or, in new developments, it is used to finance the construction of a house that complies with the ministerial minimum norms and standards. The house is then transferred to the qualifying beneficiary.

One of the DHS areas of responsibility in the delivery of human settlements relates to the bottom-most end of the market, where it provides housing subsidies to the poor.

This is where the bulk of the housing backlog exists, affecting mainly those who earn below R3 500 a month.

A total of 563 000 fully subsidised housing units were expected to be built by 2019.

Affordable housing finance

There is not sufficient provision of housing finance for individuals who earn too much to qualify for a fully subsidised house but too little to qualify for a home loan. To reduce the cost of mortgage finance, and streamline administration and the interaction

between subsidy beneficiaries and banks, the administration and funding of the FLISP will be shifted from provinces to the National Housing Finance Corporation.

In providing a targeted 18 185 households with subsidies to access mortgages over the medium term, the allocation to the programme is expected to increase from R100 million in 2019/20 to R500 million in 2021/22. To address the undersupply of affordable rental housing, the Social Housing Regulatory Authority is expected to spend R2.3 billion over the medium term to finance and regulate 30 000 affordable rental units through accredited social housing institutions.

To achieve improved efficiencies, economies of scale and a more sustainable housing finance model, the Rural Housing Loan Fund and the National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency merged with the National Housing Finance Corporation in October 2018. This was the first step towards establishing a new, consolidated finance institution for the development of human settlements. The institution is expected to be formally established over the medium term period, and is expected to support broader funding in the human settlements value chain.

Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of improved residential properties (a stand or house) or to finance the acquisition of a serviced site linked to a house-building contract that is not part of an approved housing-subsidy project.

The latter option is only available to beneficiaries with access to housing credit. The subsidy amount of R84 000 comprises R6 000 for the raw land cost, R22 162 for internal municipal engineering services and R55 706 for the cost of constructing the top structure.

Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism gives former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

Housing Development Finance Programme

The grant funds the delivery of housing and human settlements programmes, and manage all matters related to improving access to housing finance and developing partnerships with the financial sector. Its objectives are to:

- manage the performance of provinces and municipalities by monitoring the expenditure and non-financial performance of human settlements development and housing programmes on a monthly and quarterly basis.
- accelerate the delivery of housing and human settlements by providing funding from the human settlements development grant, the urban settlements development grant and transfers to public entities on a scheduled ongoing basis.
- improve access to housing finance by collaborating with the private sector and related entities to develop mechanisms to increase market penetration and provide loans to low and middle income households on an ongoing basis.
- ensure equal access to housing finance through monitoring the lending practices of the financial sector by publishing an annual report on mortgage finance.

Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying housing institutions.

The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options.

This is done on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy. Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

Subsidies for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy receive additional amounts to improve their houses with special additions such as paving and ramps to their doors, grab rails in bathrooms, and visible door bells for the deaf.

Enhanced Extended Discount Benefit Scheme

The scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of state-financed rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites.

The scheme is only available to beneficiaries who took occupation of such rented houses before 15 March 1991.

Rural subsidies

These housing subsidies are available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. This land belongs to the State and is governed by traditional authorities.

These subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents. Beneficiaries also have the right to decide how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, for the building of houses, or for a combination of these.

Farm resident subsidies

The housing subsidy programme for farm residents addresses the wide variety of housing needs of people working and residing on farms by providing a flexible package of housing models to suit the local context.

In most instances, the programme is applied where farm residents are required to reside close to their employment obligations and where the farm land is distant from the nearest town, rendering the settlement of the farm residents in town impracticable.

Farm residents play an important role in all aspects of their housing solutions regarding the selection of options, the design and implementation phase, as well as the ongoing management of the housing stock.

Human Settlements Development Grant

This grant reflects the conditional allocation transferred to all provinces for the delivery of housing projects, as per the National Housing Code.

National Housing Finance Corporation

The corporation broadens and deepens access to affordable housing finance for low to middle income households by facilitating private sector lending for housing purposes. The entity's total budget for 2018/19 was R227.2 million.

Rural Housing Loan Fund

The Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF) is a wholesale lending institution. It is mandated to facilitate access to housing credit to low-income rural households by providing wholesale finance through a network of retail intermediaries and community-based organisations.

Role players

Enhanced People's Housing Process

The Enhanced People's Housing Process aims to support household who wish to enhance their housing subsidies by building their own homes. The Enhanced People's Housing process can be accessed through the Integrated Residential Development Programme, Project Linked Consolidation, Institutional or Rural Subsidies as well as technical and other forms of assistance in the house building process.

This subsidy is given to people who want to build or manage the building of their own homes. Unlike the Project Linked Subsidy where a contractor builds houses for a number of people, the Enhanced People's Housing Process allows people or beneficiaries to build or organise the building of their homes. People are in charge of their own house construction process in this programme and are supported by a support organisation. Additional funds are available to pay for the support functions.

Housing institutions

The DHS's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, and making housing more accessible to all South Africans.

The institutions also facilitate the specific housing and housing-related needs of the market, in addition to the role that provincial governments and municipalities play. These institutions are accountable to the Executive Authority of the DHS.

These institutions are the National Home Builders Registration Council (NHBRC), the National Housing Finance Corporation, the National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (NURCHA), the Social Housing Regulatory Authority (SHRA), RHLF, the Housing Development Agency, the Estate

Agency Affairs Board (EAAB), and the Community Scheme Ombud Service (CSOS).

Stakeholder management

Increased operations through new partnerships would address the challenges of rapid urbanisation. The DHS has been at the forefront of addressing this challenge in South Africa.

The Chief Directorate: Stakeholder Management's primary objective is to mobilise sector stakeholders to partner with government to fast-track housing delivery.

The unit facilitates stakeholder engagement through various dialogue forums, which has led to collaboration in the implementation of the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery and Rural Housing Contract, Stakeholder Engagement, Youth Build, Women's Build and the Govan Mbeki Housing Awards.

Women in housing

The DHS is working on a range of measures that are geared to support women in human settlements and emerging contractors in the housing sector.

These measures will look at addressing issues such as access to bridging finance, credit, lack of skills and lack of supportive institutional arrangements within human settlements value chain.

The NHBRC Women Empowerment Programme, which was formed in partnership with the Gordon Institute of Business Science, comprises a developed and customised programme for women entrepreneurs in the construction industry.

As part of the initiative, one hundred women who own construction-related businesses are taken through a 10-month programme that includes business skills training, mentorship, coaching, access to finance and new markets, as well as peer-learning opportunities.

Training and modules are customised based on the particular challenges and requirements of the industry. They also include practical support that facilitates application of the lessons learned throughout the programme.

National Home Builders Registration Council

The NHBRC was established in terms of the amended Housing

Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998) to represent the interests of housing consumers by providing warranty protection against defined defects in new homes, and to regulate the home building industry. The council provides training to promote and ensure compliance with technical standards in the home building environment.

In keeping with its core function of regulating quality standards in the home building industry, the council will focus on increasing home inspections and enrolments over the medium term.

The council is committed to ensuring that all housing units subsidised by government are enrolled with the council. In working towards this goal, the council is expected to enrol 409 716 subsidy homes and 167 059 non-subsidy homes over the medium term. These enrolments are expected to drive an increase in total expenditure from R843.9 million in 2017/18 to R1 billion in 2020/21, at an average annual rate of 6.5%.

To strengthen its regulatory function over the medium term, the council plans to conduct almost 1.7 million inspections in the subsidy sector and 683 831 inspections in the non-subsidy sector, and train 6 000 youth, women, disabled people and military veterans, at a projected cost of R648 million.

As the council's work is labour intensive, spending on compensation of employees is projected to increase from R470.6 million in 2017/18 to R563.3 million in 2020/21, at an average annual rate of 6.2%. The council aims to maintain its staff complement at 663 over the medium term.

The council generates revenue mainly from a combination of home enrolment fees, registration and renewal fees for homebuilders, technical services, and interest and dividends earned on the warranty fund. Total revenue is expected to increase from R1.3 billion in 2017/18 to R1.5 billion in 2020/21, at an average annual rate of 6.4%.

Rural Housing Loan Fund

The RHLF facilitates access to housing credit to low income rural households by providing wholesale finance through a network of retail intermediaries and community-based organisations. The entity's total budget for 2018/19 was R48.6 million.

National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency

NURCHA provides bridging finance to contractors building low to moderate income housing, infrastructure and community facilities; and provides account administration and support services. The entity's total budget for 2018/19 was R75.9 million.

Social Housing Regulatory Authority

The SHRA regulates the social housing sector, and ensures a sustainable and regulated flow of investment into the social housing sector to support the restructuring of urban spaces through capital grant provisions to accredited social housing institutions. The entity's total budget for 2018/19 was R825.8 million.

Housing Development Agency

The agency identifies, acquires, holds, develops and releases state-owned and privately owned land for residential and community purposes; and project manages housing developments for the creation of sustainable human settlements. The entity's total budget for 2018/19 was R581.5 million.

The Community Schemes Ombud Service

The CSOS provides a dispute resolution service for community schemes; monitors and controls the quality of all governance documentation relating to sectional title schemes; and takes custody of, preserves and provides public access to scheme governance documentation. The entity's total budget for 2018/19 was R144.2 million.

The CSOS is mandated to:

- provide a dispute resolution service for community schemes
- regulate, monitor and control the quality of all sectional title schemes' governance documentation; and
- take custody of, preserve and provide public access to scheme governance documentation.

In terms of the CSOS Act of 2011, any person in a community scheme may apply to the CSOS, if such a person is a party to or is materially affected by a dispute, for mediation and adjudication.

The National Human Settlements Land Inventory (NaHSLI)

The NaHSLI and the Land and Property Spatial Information System are fully developed and operational.

NaHSLI is a comprehensive, multidimensional catalogue of habitable land. NaHSLI presents a national tool based on the geospatial analysis of the natural, regulatory, structural and social environment context within which a habitable land profile for South Africa is being developed.

It facilitates the identification of suitable, available, accessible land that can be used to earn a livelihood, thereby demarcating non-habitable land and risk-prone areas and informing potential users where human settlements could be located best.

NaHSLI also provides insight into the development potential of habitable land and lends itself to the functions of choice, governance and sustainability.

In total, seven implementation protocols have been signed and further agreements are under negotiation with a number of municipalities and provinces.

The Estate Agency Affairs Board

The EAAB regulates, maintains and promotes the conduct of estate agents, issue certificates from the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund, prescribes the standard of education and training for estate agents, investigates complaints lodged against estate agents, and manages and controls the Estate Agents Fidelity Fund. The entity's total budget for 2018/19 was R139.6 million.

Resources

One of the major constraints in housing delivery is the lack of capacity in terms of an efficient workforce and the installation of appropriate technology, equipment and systems for monitoring, evaluation and reporting purposes.

The DHS continues to assist provinces in ensuring effective and efficient implementation of the National Housing Programme. The strategy and guidelines for capacity building, and guidelines for provincial housing-capacity business plans, have been developed.

The DHS undertook several initiatives to support small enterprises within housing and to promote Black Economic

Empowerment and gender mainstreaming.

Based on extensive consultation with stakeholders in the construction and housing industry, the DHS developed a framework for emerging contractor support that resulted in a support programme that focuses on training emerging contractors.

Programmes and projects

Sustainable human settlements

Sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life are defined by:

- access to adequate accommodation that is suitable, relevant, appropriately located, affordable and fiscally sustainable
- access to basic services such as water, sanitation, refuse removal and electricity,
- security of tenure irrespective of ownership or rental, formal or informal structures, and
- access to social services and economic opportunities within reasonable distance.

Strategic Integrated Project 7 (SIP7)

The SIP7 is part of the 18 SIPs contained in the Presidential Infrastructure Plan. They incorporate a range of economic and social infrastructure projects and cover all nine provinces with the emphasis on poorer regions.

Investment in rail, water pipelines, energy generation and transmission infrastructure have been identified for Limpopo.

SIP7 focuses on 12 of the country's major cities in Gauteng, the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, North West and the Western Cape.

The cities include major metropolitan municipalities such as Johannesburg, Ekurhuleni and Tshwane in Gauteng, Buffalo City and Nelson Mandela Metro in the Eastern Cape, eThekweni in KwaZulu-Natal, Cape Town in the Western Cape and Mangaung in the Free State.

The cities were chosen because of their demographic and economic significance. They will be given implementation powers, with the PICC expected to exercise an oversight role.

In Gauteng, some of the projects that are in operation include the implementation of the Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) System in

the province's three metropolitan cities. Tshwane is expected to spend more than R1,6 billion on its BRT System.

Johannesburg finalised plans for a major rehabilitation of Diepsloot and Ivory Park townships, including the construction of clinics, schools and community libraries.

About R45 million has been set aside to turn Ekurhuleni into an aerotropolis – a new urban form where cities grow around airports, connecting workers, suppliers, executives and goods to the global marketplace.

An amount of R2 billion has been earmarked for a new rail link connecting Cape Town International Airport and the city centre while in other provinces such as the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, the focus will be on expanding ports and rail services.

Comprehensive Housing Plan (CHP)

The CHP for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements (the Breaking New Ground strategy) is aimed at eradicating informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

It incorporates principles such as:

- integrating subsidised, rental and bonded housing
- providing municipal engineering services at a higher level, applying them consistently throughout townships
- providing ancillary facilities such as schools, clinics and commercial opportunities
- combining different housing densities and types, ranging from single-stand to double-storey units and row houses.

The CHP is being implemented through informal settlement upgrading pilot projects in each province.

These projects provide for phased, area-based development, and emphasise community participation and social and economic development as an integral part of housing projects.

The CHP focuses on:

- accelerating housing delivery as a key strategy for poverty alleviation
- using housing provision as a major job-creation strategy
- ensuring that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- leveraging growth in the economy, combating crime and promoting social cohesion

- using housing development to break down barriers between the first-economy residential property boom and the second-economy slump
- using housing as an instrument for the development of sustainable human settlements in support of spatial restructuring
- diversifying housing products by emphasising rental stock.

The DHS developed and launched a number of instruments to guide the implementation of the comprehensive plan in all three spheres of government. These include the monitoring, evaluation and impact-assessment policy and implementation guidelines, and the operating system for the policy and guidelines.

The department also initiated a project-monitoring process to measure the performance of provincial housing departments against targets set in their business plans, to identify constraints and assist with addressing them swiftly.

Rental housing for the poor

The National Rental Housing Strategy provides for people in the low-income bracket and living under the following conditions:

- provisions made by previous departments
- community residential units (formerly known as hostels) for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock that has not been transferred to the households who inhabit the units, and which will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock to be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Many job seekers in urban areas require rental accommodation. There has been an increase in public hostels owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities including:

- “grey” hostels that have both private and public ownership
- public housing stock that cannot be transferred and has to be managed as rental accommodation
- post-1994 newly developed public residential accommodation owned by provincial housing departments and municipalities

- dilapidated, derelict and dysfunctional buildings.

Units provide secure and stable rental tenure for lower-income earners. Potential tenants are selected according to specific criteria such as: they must be a South African citizen, not an owner of any property in the municipality, earn between R1 600 and R3 500 per month (gross income), not owe the municipality any services money, pass an affordability check, and they must be a major to be able to sign the legal documents.

Government Employees Housing Scheme

The scheme is an employee benefit housing scheme that offers housing access support services to government employees.

The State as employer administers an employee housing assistance scheme to ensure that employees have access to adequate housing on a sustainable basis.

Integrated Residential Development Programme (IRDP)

The IRDP provides for the acquisition of land, servicing of stands for a variety of land uses, including commercial and recreational purposes, schools and clinics, as well as residential stands for low, middle and high-income groups. The land use and income group mix is based on local planning and needs assessment.

International relations

South Africa is party to the UN MDGs, which provide for the significant improvement in the lives of at least 100 million slum dwellers by 2020.

In addition to these conventions, South Africa adheres to the following declarations under the UN Habitat programme: the Vancouver Declaration on Human Settlements of 1976, the Istanbul Declaration on Cities and other Human Settlements of 1996 and the Habitat Agenda of 1996, the focus of which is to address the plight of people without adequate housing.

World Urban Forum

The WUF was established by the UN to ensure that member states and the world responds to ensure proper and sustainable management of urbanisation in towns and cities across the globe. The matters which receive attention include eradicating the ill effects of urbanisation such as poverty, unemployment,

inequality, and managing the negative consequences of climate change on communities.

It brings together government leaders, ministers, mayors, diplomats, members of national, regional and local government, non-governmental and community organisations, professionals, academics, grassroots leadership of women and youth to debate and propose solutions to ensure proper, working, equitable and sustainable livelihoods for households and people living in urban areas.

The forum also advises the Executive Director of UN-Habitat and UN-Habitat's Governing Council on key issues that should inform the work of UN Habitat and all key stakeholders in the field of human settlements and urban development.





South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

Government Systems



South Africa is a constitutional democracy with a three-tier system of government and an independent judiciary.

The national, provincial and local levels of government all have legislative and executive authority in their own spheres, and are defined in the Constitution as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated.

Operating at both national and provincial levels are advisory bodies drawn from South Africa's traditional leaders.

It is a stated intention in the Constitution that the country be run on a system of cooperative governance.

Government is committed to the building of a free, non-racial, non-sexist, democratic, united and successful South Africa.

The Constitution

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996 was approved by the Constitutional Court on 4 December 1996 and took effect on 4 February 1997.

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution.

The signing of the Constitution was a commemorative gesture in remembrance of the people who died during a peaceful demonstration against the pass laws on 21 March 1960.

South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally. Human rights are given clear prominence in the Constitution.

The Preamble

The Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign State in the family of nations.

Founding provisions

South Africa is a sovereign and democratic State founded on the following values:

- human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom
- non-racialism and non-sexism
- supremacy of the Constitution and the rule of law
- universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in Chapter 2 of the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals.

The Constitutional Court guards these rights and determines whether actions by the State are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the law-makers (legislative authorities), government (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country, in accordance with the Constitution.

It consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public.

The role of Parliament, as the representative of the people, is to promote and oversee adherence to the values of human

dignity, equality, non-racialism, non sexism, and all other rights enshrined in the Bill of Rights, and to oversee the implementation of constitutional imperatives. Through legislative and other measures, Parliament also ensures that the independence, impartiality, accessibility and effectiveness of the Judiciary and other State institutions is upheld.

The mandate of Parliament is based on the provisions of chapter 4 of the Constitution, which establishes Parliament and sets out the functions it performs. Parliament is elected to represent the people, ensure government by the people under the Constitution, and represent the interests of provinces in the national sphere of government. Members of Parliament elect the President, provide a national forum for the public consideration of issues, pass legislation, and scrutinise and oversee executive action.

Parliament's policy priorities set out long-term policy and outcomes. These are aligned with the priorities and outcomes of the National Development Plan (NDP). To ensure that these outcomes are met over feasible timeframes, five-year, 10-year and 15-year milestones have been set.

Since 1994, a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process.

The official governmental website www.parliament.gov.za encourages comment and feedback from the public.

Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head, the Deputy President and Ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President, Ministers and Deputy Ministers, assigns their powers and functions, and may dismiss them.

The President may select any number of Ministers from the members of the National Assembly, and may select no more than two ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the leader of government business in the National Assembly.

National Assembly

The National Assembly is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution.

The Presidency, June 2018	
President	Cyril Ramaphosa
Deputy President	David Mabuza

It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation, and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation.

The National Assembly, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the Speaker, assisted by the Deputy Speaker.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP is mandated to represent the provinces to ensure that provincial interests are taken into account in the national sphere of government.

The NCOP consists of 90 provincial delegates (10 delegates for each of the nine provinces). A provincial delegation consists of six permanent delegates and four special delegates. The permanent delegates, who are appointed by the nine provincial legislatures, are based at Parliament in Cape Town.

The four special delegates consist of the Premier of the province and three special delegates, assigned by each province from Members of the Provincial Legislature and rotated depending on the subject matter being considered by the NCOP.

The Premier of a province is the head of the province's delegation but he or she can assign any other delegate to lead the delegation in his or her absence.

Organised local government is also represented in the NCOP through the South African Local Government Association (SALGA). SALGA is entitled to 10 representatives who may participate in the debates and other activities of the NCOP, but may not vote.

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and represents provincial interests in the national sphere of government.

The NCOP must have a mandate from the provinces before it can make certain decisions.

Special calculations of the popular vote in elections make sure that minority interests are represented in each province's delegation to the NCOP.

The NCOP Online links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local government associations. It also provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions.

The NCOP came into existence in February 1997.

Legislative and policy framework

The mandate and functions of Parliament are based on the following core pieces of legislation:

- Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, which sets out the composition, powers and functions of Parliament.
- Powers, Privileges and Immunities of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures Act, 2004 (Act 4 of 2004), which defines and declares certain powers, privileges and immunities of Parliament, Provincial Legislatures, Members of the NA, delegates to the NCOP and Members of Provincial Legislatures.
- Money Bills Amendment Procedure and Related Matters Act, 2009 (Act 9 of 2009), which provides for a procedure to amend money bills before Parliament and for norms and standards for amending Money Bills before Provincial Legislatures.
- Financial Management of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures Act 2009 (FMPPLA) (Act 10 of 2009) as amended by Act 34 of 2014, which regulates the financial management of Parliament in a manner consistent with its status in terms of the Constitution. Its objective is to ensure that all revenue, expenditure, assets and liabilities of Parliament are managed efficiently.

Other legislation relevant to the work of Parliament includes the National Council of Provinces (Permanent Delegates Vacancies) Act, 1997 (Act 17 of 1997); the Determination of Delegates

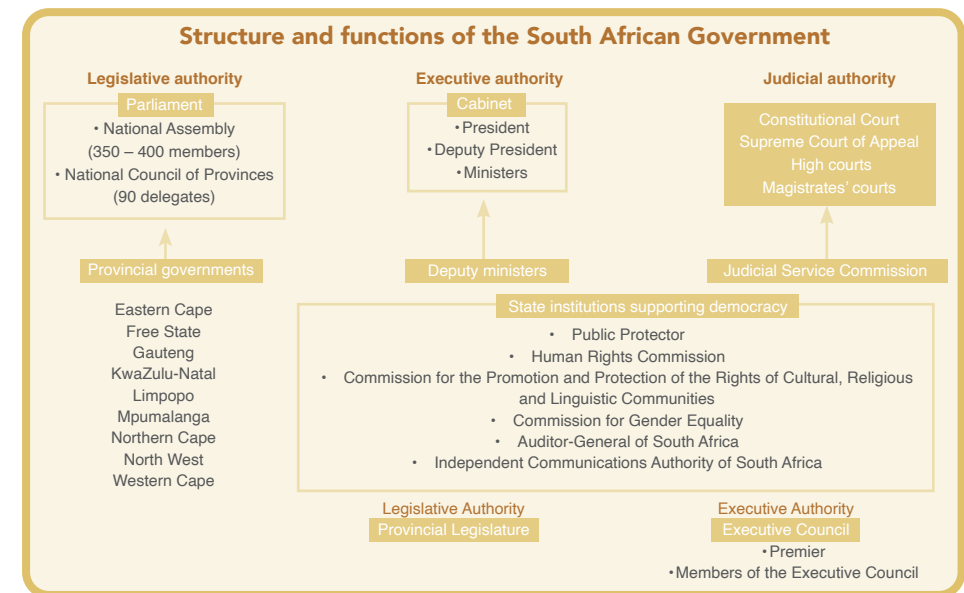
(National Council of Provinces) Act, 1998 (Act 69 of 1998); the Mandating Procedures of Provinces Act, 2008 (Act 52 of 2008); and the Remuneration of Public Office Bearers Act, 1998 (Act 20 of 1998).

The Joint Rules of Parliament, Rules of the NA and Rules of the NCOP augment these Acts, as the Constitution empowers Parliament to make Rules and Orders concerning its business.

Additional frameworks of relevance to the work of Parliament include the United Nations Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs), the African Union (AU) Agenda 2063, The Southern African Development Community (SADC) Regional Indicative Strategic Plan, the NDP 2030 and the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) 2014 – 2019.

Function of Parliament

The core functions of Parliament include making laws, overseeing the work of the Executive and State institutions, facilitating public participation, international participation and cooperative governance.



Law-making

Section 43(a) of the Constitution vests the legislative authority of the national sphere of government in Parliament. This confers on the NA the power to consider, pass, amend or reject any legislation before the Assembly and to initiate or prepare legislation, except money Bills. It also confers on the NCOP the power to consider, pass, amend, propose amendments or reject any legislation before the Council and initiate or prepare legislation falling within a functional area listed in Schedule 4 of the Constitution or other legislation referred to in section 76(3), except money Bills.

The Constitution distinguishes between four categories of Bills:

- Bills amending the Constitution (section 74)
- Ordinary Bills not affecting provinces (section 75)
- Ordinary Bills affecting provinces (section 76)
- Money Bills (section 77).

Whilst any of these categories of Bills may be introduced in the NA, only Bills referred to in section 76(3) of the Constitution may be introduced in the NCOP.

Money Bills, such as the Appropriation Bill and the Division of Revenue Bill, may only be introduced in the NA and not in the NCOP.

The Constitution and the Rules of the NA and NCOP outline the processes that Parliament must follow when passing each category of Bills. Furthermore, section 18(1) of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 41 of 2003), obliges the Secretary to Parliament to refer any parliamentary Bill relating to customary law or customs of traditional communities to the National House of Traditional Leaders (NHTL) for comment before it is passed by the House of Parliament in which it was introduced. The NHTL has 30 days to comment on a Bill so referred.

As the representative of the people of South Africa, Parliament realises the importance of processing

and/or passing quality legislation aimed at improving the quality of life of the people and involving the public in the processing of legislation. To this end, it plans to develop a legislative model to guide members of parliament and staff in the processing of legislation.

The main aim of the model is to enhance the law-making processes and procedures of Parliament to enable the institution to pass quality laws that will improve the quality of life of all.

Oversight

The parliamentary oversight function is one of the cornerstones of democracy. It holds the Executive accountable for its actions and ensures that it implements policies in accordance with the laws and budget passed by Parliament.

The robust monitoring of the Executive by Parliament is an indicator of good governance, as it is through oversight that Parliament can ensure a balance of power and assert its role as the defender and/or the legitimate custodian of the people's interests. The Constitution envisages a specific oversight role for the NA and the NCOP, respectively.

To this end, it places an obligation on the NA to provide for mechanisms to ensure that all Executive organs of state in the national sphere of government are accountable to it and to maintain oversight of the exercise of national executive authority, including the implementation of legislation.

The Constitution requires the NCOP to exercise oversight over national aspects of provincial and local government.

The Oversight and Accountability Model makes provision for various oversight mechanisms, including exercising oversight through committees, oversight visits, the passing of budget votes, questions for executive reply, members' statements, notices of motion, debates on matters of public importance and constituency work. One of the significant features provided for in the Model is the establishment of a

Cabinet Ministers and Deputy Ministers, as at May 2019

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development	Thoko Didiza	Sdumo Dlamini Mcebisi Skwatsha
Basic Education	Angie Motshekga	Regina Mhaule
Communications	Stella Ndabeni-Abrahams	Pinky Kekana
Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs	Nkosazana Dlamini-Zuma	Obed Bapela Parks Tau
Defence and Military Veterans	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Thabang Makwetla
Employment and Labour	Thulas Nxesi	Boitumelo Moloi
Environment, Forestry and Fisheries	Barbara Creecy	Maggie Sotyu
Finance	Tito Mboweni	David Masekela
Health	Zweli Mkhize	Joe Phaahla
Higher Education, Science and Technology	Blade Nzimande	Buti Manamela
Home Affairs	Aaron Motsoaledi	Njabulo Nzuza
Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation	Lindiwe Sisulu	Pam Tshwete David Mahlobo
International Relations and Cooperation	Naledi Pandor	Alvin Botes Candith Mashego-Dlamini
Justice and Correctional Services	Ronald Lamola	John Jeffery Inkosi Phathekile Holomisa
Mineral Resources and Energy	Gwede Mantashe	-
Police	Bheki Cele	Cassel Mathale
The Presidency	Jackson Mthembu	Thembi Siweya
The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities	Maite Nkoana-Mashabane	Hlengiwe Mkhize
Public Enterprises	Pravin Gordhan	Phumulo Masualle
Public Service and Administration	Senzo Mchunu	Sindy Chikunga
Public Works and Infrastructure	Patricia De Lille	Noxolo Kiviet
Small Business Development	Khumbudzo Ntshavheni	Rosemary Capa
Social Development	Lindiwe Zulu	Hendrietta Bogopane-Zulu
Sports, Arts and Culture	Nathi Mthethwa	Nocawe Mafu
State Security	Ayanda Dlodlo	Zizi Kodwa
Tourism	Nkhensani Kubayi-Ngubane	Fish Mahlalela
Trade and Industry	Ebrahim Patel	Fikile Majola Nomalungelo Gina
Transport	Fikile Mbalula	Dikeledi Magadzi

Joint Parliamentary Oversight and Governance Assurance Committee to pursue all assurances, undertakings and commitments given by ministers on the floor of the Houses and the extent to which these assurances have been fulfilled.

Public participation

Participatory democracy is based on the premise that public participation processes strengthen institutions of representative democracy by actively involving the public in the decision-making processes of government. The Constitution requires the NA and the NCOP, respectively, to facilitate public involvement in the legislative and other processes of the houses and its committees by conducting its business in an open manner. Whilst Parliament may take reasonable measures to regulate access, it may only exclude the public from a sitting of a House or Committee if it is reasonable and justifiable to do so in an open and democratic society.

In an effort to streamline public participation processes and make it more effective, the Legislative Sector has developed a Public Participation Framework to guide the public participation activities of Parliament and Provincial Legislatures.

The Framework provides certain minimum norms and standards to ensure alignment in public participation processes and activities. Based on this Framework, Parliament has developed a Public Participation Model, which was adopted by the Joint Rules Committee in November 2017.

The model provides the institution with minimum requirements for public involvement and participation. Specific public participation mechanisms outlined in the model include the People's Assembly, the NCOP Taking Parliament to the People, Oversight visits by parliamentary Committees, Sectoral engagements such as youth and women's parliaments, petitions and other forms of participation in law making and other processes.

International participation

Historically, Parliaments had limited involvement in the international arena, as this was traditionally regarded as the domain of the Executive arm of the State. However, due to changes in the international system, such as a new wave of

participatory democracy, globalisation and developments in global governance structures, the lines between what is regarded as national and international policy areas have become increasingly blurred, resulting in a greater impetus for parliamentary engagement in international relations.

To this end, and in giving effect to the need to democratise international decision-making and subjecting the Executive to the same degree of international oversight as is done over domestic matters, the South African Parliament participates in international relations through the traditional oversight approach and through parliamentary diplomacy.

At national level, Parliament engages in international relations through the work of the Portfolio Committee on International Relations and Cooperation and the Select Committee on Trade and International Relations. The committees oversee the work of the Department of International Relations and Cooperation by monitoring its budget, holding hearings on pertinent international relations matters and engaging in site visits, amongst others. Various parliamentary committees also conduct study tours to different countries.

At the regional and international level, Parliament engages in bilateral and multilateral relations. Bilateral relations are fostered through official visits, courtesy call meetings and the conclusion of formal parliament-to-parliament cooperation agreements.

At the multilateral level, South Africa participates in the regional, continental and international parliamentary fora, such as the Southern African Development Community Parliamentary Forum, the Pan African Parliament, the African, Caribbean and Pacific-European Union Joint Parliamentary Assembly, the Commonwealth Parliamentary Association, the Inter-Parliamentary Union, the BRIGS Parliamentary Forum, and the Global Legislators' Organisation International.

Through these activities, South African parliamentarians actively pursue the country's foreign policy priorities of advancing and promoting the African Agenda, South-South cooperation, North-South dialogue, transforming and strengthening the multilateral system of governance, and promoting global equity and social justice.

Cooperative governance

The Constitution creates three spheres of government at national, provincial and local level as distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. It enjoins all spheres of government to observe and adhere to the principles of cooperative government.

Parliament plays a significant role in facilitating cooperative governance through its work with the other arms and spheres of government. This includes the appointment and dismissal of office bearers of the Institutions Supporting Democracy, various Commissions, Boards and Councils. Parliament also ratifies International Protocols and Conventions, confirms the provisional suspension of magistrates, approves the salaries, allowances and benefits of magistrates and judges.

The NCOP provides a forum for the representation of local government at national level through SALGA. Specific cooperative governance mechanisms spearheaded by the NCOP include the NCOP Oversight Week, Provincial Week and Local Government Week. The NCOP Oversight Week was established to enable members to follow up on matters arising from the Taking Parliament to the People programme to verify information received.

During Provincial Week, permanent delegates return to the provinces to conduct joint oversight with the respective provincial legislatures on a theme decided upon in consultation with the relevant Provincial Legislature.

Local Government Week aims to strengthen the relationship between the NCOP and SALGA by, amongst others, debating matters relating to local government and seeking solutions to challenges facing the local sphere of government within the context of cooperative government and intergovernmental relations.

Government clusters

Government clusters are groupings of government departments with cross-cutting programmes. They foster an integrated approach to governance that is aimed at improving government planning, decision-making and service delivery. The main objective is to ensure proper coordination of all government programmes at national and provincial levels.

The main functions of the clusters are to ensure the alignment of government-wide priorities, facilitate and monitor the implementation of priority programmes and to provide a consultative platform on cross-cutting priorities and matters being taken to Cabinet.

The clusters of the Forum of South African Directors-General (Fosad) mirror the ministerial clusters. The Fosad clusters provide technical support to the ministerial clusters.

The Director-General (DG) in the Presidency is the chairperson of Fosad. Ministers enter into delivery agreements with the President, having to give progress reports on their departments' set targets.

The 12 outcomes identified by the government include:

- improved quality of basic education
- a long and healthy life for all South Africans
- all people in South Africa are and feel safe
- decent employment through inclusive economic growth
- a skilled and capable workforce to support an inclusive growth path
- an efficient, competitive and responsive economic infrastructure network
- vibrant, equitable and sustainable rural communities with food security for all
- sustainable human settlements and improved quality of household life
- a responsive, accountable, effective and efficient local government system
- environmental assets and natural resources that are well protected and continually enhanced
- a better South Africa and contributing to a better and safer Africa and world
- an efficient, effective and development-oriented Public Service and an empowered, fair and inclusive citizenship.

Economic Sectors, Investment, Employment And Infrastructure Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Mineral Resources and Energy (Chair)
- Tourism (Chair)
- Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development

- Communications
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Environment, Forestry and Fisheries
- Employment and Labour
- Finance
- Higher Education, Science and Technology
- Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation
- International Relations and Cooperation
- The Presidency
- The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Police
- Public Enterprises
- Public Works and Infrastructure
- Small Business Development
- State Security
- Trade and Industry
- Transport

Governance, State Capacity and Institutional Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (Chair)
- Public Service and Administration (Chair)
- Finance
- Home Affairs
- Justice and Correctional Services
- The Presidency
- The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Public Enterprise

Social Protection, Community and Human Development Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Health (Chair)
- Basic Education (Chair)
- Agriculture, Land Reform and Rural Development
- Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs
- Environment, Forestry and Fisheries

- Employment and Labour
- Higher Education, Science and Technology
- Human Settlements, Water and Sanitation
- Justice and Correctional Services
- The Presidency
- The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Public Works and Infrastructure
- Small Business Development
- Social Development
- Sports, Arts and Culture
- Transport

International Cooperation, Trade and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Sports, Arts and Culture (Chair)
- Environment, Forestry and Fisheries (Chair)
- Communications
- Defence and Military Veterans
- Finance
- International Relations and Cooperation
- Justice and Correctional Services
- Mineral Resources and Energy
- The Presidency
- State Security
- Tourism
- Trade and Industry

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster

The departments in this cluster are:

- Defence and Military Veterans (Chair)
- Police (Chair)
- Finance
- Home Affairs
- International Relations and Cooperation
- Justice and Correctional Services
- The Presidency
- The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- Social Development

- State Security
- Small Business Development

Izimbizo

The 8th National Imbizo Focus Week was held from 9 to 15 July 2018 under the theme “Together we move South Africa forward”. This was followed by the 9th National Imbizo Fortnight of Activism from 12 to 25 November 2018 held under the same theme.

The Imbizo is an opportunity for government to engage the public on the implementation of its Programme of Action to help improve people's lives.

The event took place during the year in which the country was celebrating the centenaries of two struggle icons: former President Nelson Rholihlahla and Nontsikelelo Albertina Sisulu.

Law-making

Any Bill may be introduced in the National Assembly. A Bill passed by the National Assembly must be referred to the NCOP for consideration.

A Bill affecting the provinces may be introduced in the NCOP. After the council passes it, it must be referred to the National Assembly.

A Bill concerning money must be introduced in the assembly and referred to the NCOP for consideration and approval after being passed.

If the NCOP rejects a Bill or passes it subject to amendments, the assembly must reconsider the Bill and pass it again with or without amendments.

There are special conditions for the approval of laws dealing with provinces.

The Presidency

As the executive manager of government, The Presidency is at the apex of South Africa's government system. It is situated in the Union Buildings in Pretoria, and has a subsidiary office in Tuynhuys, Cape Town.

The Presidency comprises six political principals:

- The President, who is the Head of State and Government
- The Deputy President, who is the Leader of Government

Business (in Parliament)

- The Minister in The Presidency
- The Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- The Deputy Minister in The Presidency for Women, Youth and Persons with Disabilities
- The Deputy Minister in The Presidency

The Presidency has three structures that support governance operations directly. They are:

- Cabinet Office, which provides administrative support to Cabinet. It implements administrative systems and processes to ensure the overall optimal functioning of the Cabinet and its committees. It also facilitates the management of decision-making processes of the Cabinet and its committees.
- Policy Coordination Advisory Services comprises a Deputy DG and five chief directorates, which support policy processes developed by respective clusters of DGs.
- Legal and Executive Services provides legal advice to the President, Deputy President, the Minister, as well as The Presidency as a whole, and is responsible for all litigation involving the political principals.

The President, as the Head of State, leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly from among its members and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly.

The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

National Development Plan 2030

The NDP is South Africa's socio-economic policy blueprint that focuses, among other things, on:

- eliminating poverty by reducing the proportion of households with a monthly income below R419 per person from 39% to zero and the reduction of inequality
- increasing employment from 13 million in 2010 to 24 million by 2030
- broadening the country's ownership of assets by historically

disadvantaged groups

- ensuring that all children have at least two years of pre-school education and that all children can read and write by Grade 3
- providing affordable access to healthcare
- ensuring effective public transport.

Monitoring and evaluation Institutional Performance Monitoring and Evaluation (IPME)

IPME monitors the quality of management practices in government departments through the Management Performance Assessment Tool.

The Frontline Service Delivery Monitoring programme of IPME is responsible for designing and implementing hands-on service delivery monitoring activities with Offices of the Premier and for setting up and supporting the implementation of citizens-based monitoring systems.

The Presidential Hotline is also located in this branch.

Programme of Action

Government's Programme of Action reflects its strategic plan for the 2014 – 2019 MTSF – the first five-year implementation phase of the NDP.

It is structured around 14 priority outcomes which cover the focus areas identified in the NDP and government's electoral mandate: education, health, safety and security, economic growth and employment, skills development, infrastructure, rural development, human settlements, local government, environment, international relations, public sector, social protection, nation-building and social cohesion.

Operation Phakisa was designed to fast-track the implementation of solutions on critical development issues. This is a unique initiative to address issues highlighted in the NDP such as unemployment and poverty.

Elections

National and provincial elections are held once every five years.

All South African citizens aged 18 and over are eligible to vote.

The Constitution places all elections and referendums in the

country in all three spheres of government under the control of the Electoral Commission of South Africa (IEC), established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

The obligations of the IEC are to:

- manage elections of national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies
- ensure that those elections are free and fair
- declare the results of those elections
- compile and maintain a voters' roll.

The duties of the IEC are to:

- compile and maintain a register of parties
- undertake and promote research into electoral matters
- develop and promote the development of electoral expertise and technology in all spheres of government
- continuously review electoral laws and proposed electoral laws, and make recommendations
- promote voter education
- declare the results of elections for national, provincial and municipal legislative bodies within seven days
- appoint appropriate public administrations in any sphere of government to conduct elections when necessary.

The IEC manages an average of approximately 130 by-elections a year. By-elections are held when ward councillors vacate their seats for a variety of reasons including death, resignation or expulsion from the party or the council.

Department of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs (DCoGTA)

The DCoGTA is responsible for facilitating cooperative governance, to support all spheres of government and to assist the institution of traditional leadership with transforming itself into a strategic partner of government in the development of communities.

The department's mission is to ensure that all municipalities perform their basic responsibilities and functions consistently by:

- putting people and their concerns first
- supporting the delivery of municipal services to the right quality and standard

- promoting good governance, transparency and accountability
- ensuring sound financial management and accounting
- building institutional resilience and administrative capability.

Chapter 13 of the NDP outlines a vision for building a capable and developmental state through interdepartmental coordination and strengthening local government. This vision is given expression by outcome 9 (responsive, accountable, effective and efficient developmental local government) of government's 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework, with which the work of the department is closely aligned. Over the medium term the department intends to focus on facilitating access to sustainable basic services through municipal infrastructure, alleviating poverty through the community work programme, providing disaster relief and enhancing proactive disaster planning.

Legislation and policies

The department oversees the implementation of, among other things, the following legislation:

- Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005).
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004).
- Municipal Property Rates Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 19 of 2009).
- Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003).
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002).
- Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2002).
- Municipal Systems Amendment Act, 2011 (Act 7 of 2011).
- Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998).
- Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998).
- National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 2009 (Act 22 of 2009), and Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 49 of 2003), which were consolidated by the National Traditional Affairs Bill to simplify the process. In September 2013, the National Traditional Affairs Bill was published in the *Government Gazette* for public comment. The amendment of the legislation will also ensure, among other things, that traditional affairs, rather than only traditional leaders, will

take centre stage. The Khoisan communities will also be fully represented in the National House of Traditional Leaders.

The Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 29 of 2014) seeks to:

- regulate the categories of property in respect of which rates may be levied
- regulate the time frames of publication of the resolutions levying rates and what must be contained in the promulgated resolution
- provide for the exclusion from the rates of certain categories of Public Service infrastructure
- give powers to a municipality to levy different rates on vacant land
- give power to the MEC of Local Government to extend the period of validity of a valuation roll by additional two years
- amend the dates on which a supplementary valuation takes effect
- address the problems that have been experienced in the implementation of the Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act of 2004
- *White Paper on Local Government (1998).*

Budget

The department has a total budget of R295.8 billion over the medium term. Of this, R278.6 billion is allocated to transfers and subsidies to provinces and municipalities, mainly for the local government equitable share and the municipal infrastructure grant, which amount to R274.1 billion over the MTEF period. A projected R14.1 billion of the department's total budget over the medium term is allocated to goods and services, mainly for the payment of participants in the community work programme. Total expenditure is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 8.8%, from R82.8 billion in 2018/19 to R106.6 billion in 2021/22.

The department anticipates an increase in personnel, from 491 in 2018/19 to 548 in 2021/22, across all programmes to strengthen its capacity for the implementation of the integrated urban development framework, and municipal support and reporting functions. As such, spending on compensation of employees is expected to increase at an annual average rate

of 10.5% from R310 million in 2018/19 to R418.3 million in 2021/22. For the 2018/19 financial year, the department was allocated R85 billion.

Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each province has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members.

The number of members is determined according to a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of MECs. Premiers are appointed by the President. Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet.

Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

A provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution.

According to the Constitution, provinces may have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, excluding university and university of technology education
- environment
- health services
- human settlements
- language policy
- nature conservation
- police services
- provincial public media
- public transport
- regional planning and development
- road traffic regulation
- tourism
- trade and industrial promotion
- traditional authorities
- urban and rural development

- vehicle licensing
- welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas, which include:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning
- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreational activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Coordinating Council (PCC) is a statutory body established in terms of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act of 2005, which brings together the three spheres of government on matters of common interest and national importance, thereby strengthening cooperative government. Among other things, the forum looked at:

- mechanisms for monitoring job creation and implementation of the New Growth Path in all spheres of government
- shared experiences in creating an environment for job creation in provinces
- specific provincial matters
- monitoring and evaluation.

Provincial Spatial Development Framework

The Provincial Spatial Development Framework aims to:

- be the spatial expression of the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
- guide (metropolitan, district and local) municipal IDPs and spatial development frameworks and provincial and municipal framework plans
- help prioritise and align the investment and infrastructure plans of other provincial departments, as well as national departments' and parastatals' plans and programmes in the provinces
- provide clear signals to the private sector about desired

development directions

- increase predictability in the development environment, for example by establishing "no-go", "conditional" and "go" areas for development and redress of the spatial legacy of apartheid.

Local government

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997), up to 10 part-time representatives may be designated to represent municipalities and participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

The DCoGTA aims to build and strengthen the capability and accountability of provinces and municipalities.

This includes:

- continued hands-on support through the established system and capacity-building programme, focusing on critical areas such as integrated development planning, local economic development (LED), financial management, service delivery and public participation;
- evaluating the impact of government programmes in municipal areas, enhancing performance and accountability by improving the quality of reporting on the Local Government Strategic Agenda and improving the monitoring, reporting and evaluation of capacity in local government; and
- coordinating and supporting policy development, implementing the Local Government Strategic Agenda, and monitoring and supporting service delivery.

Municipalities

The Constitution provides for three categories of municipality. There are 278 municipalities in South Africa, comprising eight metropolitan, 44 district and 226 local municipalities. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and service.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities).

The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can

only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems, and single employer bodies.

South Africa has eight metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekweni (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions. However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, or the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils. District councils are primarily responsible for capacity-building and district-wide planning. The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act of 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- prepare, implement and review IDPs
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems
- monitor and review municipalities' performances
- prepare municipalities' budgets
- participate in decisions about the provision of municipal services
- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.

Local Government Turnaround Strategy

The Local Government Turnaround Strategy was introduced as a government programme of action and a blueprint for better service delivery aimed at responsive, accountable, effective

and efficient local government. Five focus areas aimed at fast-tracking implementation of the strategy have been identified.

These are:

- service delivery
- governance
- financial management
- infrastructure development
- fighting corruption.

The department aims to review all pieces of legislation that impede service delivery. In this regard, more than 300 sections of legislation that fall under this category have been identified and reviews undertaken.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG)

The MIG aims to eradicate municipal infrastructure backlogs in poor communities to ensure the provision of basic services such as water, sanitation, roads and community lighting.

The DCoGTA is responsible for managing and transferring the MIG and provides support to provinces and municipalities on implementing MIG projects.

Community Work Programme (CWP)

The CWP is a key government initiative aimed at mobilising communities to provide regular and predictable work opportunities at the local government level.

The purpose of the programme is to provide an employment safety net for those without access to opportunities designed to lift them out of poverty.

The programme recognises that policies to address unemployment and create decent work will take time to reach people living in marginalised areas where few opportunities exist.

The programme has a total budget of R13 billion over the MTEF period. Spending in the programme is set to increase at an average annual rate of 5.8% from R3.9 billion in 2018/19 to R4.6 billion in 2021/22.

Local economic development

LED is an approach towards economic development that allows and encourages local people to work together to achieve sustainable economic growth and development, thereby

bringing economic benefits and improved quality of life to all residents in a local municipal area.

LED is intended to maximise the economic potential of municipal localities and enhance the resilience of macro-economic growth through increased local economic growth, employment creation and development initiatives within the context of sustainable development. The "local" in economic development points to the fact that the political jurisdiction at local level is often the most appropriate place for economic intervention, as it carries alongside it the accountability and legitimacy of a democratically elected body.

LED programmes provide support in the following areas:

- developing and reviewing national policy, strategy and guidelines on LED
- providing direct and hands-on support to provincial and local government
- managing the LED Fund
- managing and providing technical support to nodal economic development planning
- facilitating, coordinating and monitoring donor programmes
- assisting LED capacity-building processes.

Through these interventions and resources, local role players and interest groups are mobilised to achieve economic growth and creating jobs to reduce poverty.

Municipal Demarcation Board (MDB)

The Municipal Demarcation Board is an independent authority responsible for the determination of municipal boundaries. The board's status as an independent authority is also protected by Section 3 of the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act of 1998 and various judgements by the Constitutional Court.

In addition to the determinations and re-determinations of municipal boundaries, the MDB is also mandated by legislation to declare the district management areas; to delimit wards for local elections; and to assess the capacity of municipalities to perform their functions.

South African Local Government Association

SALGA is a listed public entity, established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), and recognised by

the Minister of Cooperative Governance and Traditional Affairs, in terms of the Organised Local Government Act of 1997.

SALGA represents local government on numerous intergovernmental forums such as the PCC, Minister and MECs (MinMec) forum, the Budget Forum, the NCOP and the Financial and Fiscal Commission.

SALGA aims, among other things, to:

- transform local government to enable it to fulfil its developmental role
- enhance the role of provincial local government associations as provincial representatives and consultative bodies on local government
- raise the profile of local government
- ensure full participation of women in local government
- act as the national employers' organisation for municipal and provincial member employers
- provide legal assistance to its members, using its discretion in connection with matters that affect employee relations.

SALGA is funded through a combination of sources, including a national government grant, membership fees from provincial and local government associations that are voluntary members, and donations from the donor community for specific projects.

The Human Resource (HR) Management and Development Strategy aims to turn municipalities into professional and responsive entities.

The strategy is intended to help municipalities make better use of the human capital at their disposal, for them to be able to fulfil their important objective of accelerating service delivery as well as promoting development in local government as a whole.

The strategy emphasises employing individuals who are prepared to extend themselves in serving the needs of people, are professional, and are constantly learning and developing themselves.

One of SALGA's achievements was the establishment of public accounts committees on municipalities, which allowed councils themselves to exercise accountability.

Disaster management

The Disaster Management Act of 2002 was promulgated in 2003. The National Disaster-Management Centre and

functional disaster-management centres and advisory forums were established in eight provinces.

The National Disaster-Management Advisory Forum was recognised by the United Nations (UN) as the national platform for reducing disaster risk.

Through the National Disaster-Management Centre, the DCoGTA registered unit standards for levels three to seven with the South African Qualifications Authority for a national certificate in disaster risk management.

The department also developed regulations for recruiting and using disaster-management volunteers.

The Provincial Disaster Relief Grant and the Municipal Disaster Relief Grant are designed for the immediate release of funds for emergency repairs to infrastructure for basic services, the provision of temporary infrastructure, humanitarian relief, and other immediate essential services after a classified and declared state of disaster.

In 2018/19, the DCoGTA was allocated an additional R1.2 billion to provide immediate drought relief and future mitigation funding to affected sectors such as water, agriculture and environmental affairs. Given this once-off allocation, spending in the National Disaster Management Centre programme is set to decrease at an average annual rate of 31.4%, from R2 billion in 2018/19 to R636.1 million in 2021/22.

Traditional affairs

The Department of Traditional Affairs is mandated to oversee a range of tasks inherent in dealing with issues related to traditional affairs, including KhoiSan leadership, and supporting the development of stable and cohesive interfaith communities.

The *2003 White Paper on Traditional Leadership and Governance* sets out a national framework, and norms and standards that define the role and place of the institution of traditional leadership within the South African system of democratic governance. It seeks to support and transform the institution in accordance with constitutional imperatives and to restore the integrity and legitimacy of traditional leadership in line with the African indigenous law and customs subject to the Constitution.

The NDP envisages creating an inclusive rural economy and transforming society through a unified country. This is

given expression by outcome 14 (nation building and social cohesion) of government's 2014 – 2019 medium-term strategic framework, with which the work of the Department of Traditional Affairs is closely aligned. Over the medium term, the department intends to continue focusing on developing legislation to ensure that traditional leadership institutions are strengthened.

Major activities over the medium term include increasing the number of functional structures of traditional leadership through the implementation of the Traditional and KhoiSan Leadership Bill, once enacted; supporting the establishment of the national KhoiSan council; establishing systems for reducing traditional leadership disputes and claims; and developing and implementing a capacity-building plan for the institution of traditional leadership.

South Africa also has provincial houses of traditional leaders in the following: Eastern Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

National and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government.

Local houses of traditional leaders deepen and cement the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Traditional leadership

Chapter 11 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised.

Government acknowledges the critical role of traditional leadership institutions in South Africa's constitutional democracy and in communities, particularly in relation to the rural-development strategy.

It therefore remains committed to strengthening the institution of traditional leadership.

To this end, numerous pieces of legislation have been passed and various programmes implemented to ensure that traditional leadership makes an important contribution to the development of society.

The department is also working on a range of issues, which include policies on unity and diversity, initiation,

traditional healing, traditional leaders' protocol, family trees, the remuneration and benefits of traditional leaders based on uniform norms and standards, and involving the Khoisan people in the system of governance in South Africa.

Parliament extended the term of the Commission of Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims from 2016 to 2020 – to allow the commission time to finalise outstanding disputes and claims, and deal with the 320 traditional leadership disputes and claims per year that were envisaged.

Traditional councils

Legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy. It states that 40% of members must be elected and that one third of members must be women.

Legislation has also opened up an opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve cooperative governance.

Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with government in all spheres.

The National Khoisan Council aims to unite the Khoisan communities and create a platform through which they can raise issues affecting them as a group of communities. The most important issue is the statutory recognition and inclusion of the Khoisan people in formal government structures.

Houses of traditional leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation.

The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the then National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997).

Its objectives and functions are to promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern

Cape, Free State, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, Mpumalanga and North West.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the cooperative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders deepens and cements the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003.

It is tasked with restoring the dignity of traditional leaders and their communities by investigating and ensuring that the institution of traditional leadership is restored to where it belongs. It also investigates all claims to any position of traditional leadership (king/queen/principal/senior traditional leader, as well as headmen and headwomen), including disputes over the boundaries of traditional councils.

Section 25 of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act of 2003 requires that the commission investigate and make recommendations on cases where there is doubt as to whether a kingship, principal traditional leadership or senior traditional leadership and headmanship was established in accordance with customary law and customs.

Department of Public Service and Administration (DPSA)

The DPSA is at the centre of government. It plays a major policy role in establishing norms and standards for the Public Service, which ensure that service-delivery mechanisms, integrated systems and access, human resources, institutional development and governance initiatives are responsive to the needs of citizens.

This mandate has evolved over the years from transforming and modernising the Public Service through the development and implementation of policies and frameworks, to providing implementation support to ensure compliance, improve service delivery and strengthen monitoring and evaluation.

In terms of the Public Service Act, 1994 (Act 103 of 1994), as amended, the Minister of Public Service and Administration is responsible for establishing norms and standards relating to:

- the functions of the Public Service
- organisational structures and the establishment of departments and other organisational and governance arrangements in the Public Service
- labour relations, conditions of service and other employment practices for employees
- the health and wellness of employees
- information management
- electronic government in the Public Service
- integrity, ethics, conduct and anti-corruption
- transformation, reform, innovation and any other intervention to improve the effectiveness and efficiency of the Public Service and its service delivery to the public.

The DPSA has identified the quintessential focus areas that will form part of the overall work of the Public Service and Administration Portfolio in the medium term. These will serve as the main strategic indicators that will point to whether the Public Service is effective, efficient and development-oriented.

The focus areas are to ensure that the following is done and made available:

- services rendered with speed
- services easily accessible to citizens
- services provided at lower cost
- appropriately skilled public servants to render services
- competitive conditions of service for public servants and the achievement of labour peace
- no corruption
- a positive impact on the lives of people and the economy.

The Minister of Public Service and Administration and union leaders launched the Public Service Charter in August 2013. The Public Service Charter is a commitment between the State as the employer and labour, which seeks to professionalise and encourage excellence in the Public Service and improve service delivery. It also introduces service standards in the Public Service, with a call to public servants to meet and exceed them.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on promoting meaningful delegations of authority and ensuring

accountability in the public service, promoting public service as a career of choice, ensuring efficient and effective management and operations systems in the public service, and increasing the responsiveness of public servants.

The services carried out by other departments within the vote (the National School of Government, the Public Service Commission and the Centre for Public Service Innovation) provide public service employees with access to knowledge and skills, promote the principles of public administration, and foster innovation in the public service.

Accordingly, 50.3% (R1.6 billion) of the DPSA's total budget is allocated to transfers for the operations of these departments over the MTEF period. Transfers and subsidies to departmental agencies and accounts are expected to increase at an average annual rate of 7.9% from R469.5 million in 2018/19 to R589.8 million in 2021/22, mainly due to an additional allocation of R60 million over the medium term to the National School of Government for the introduction of mandatory programmes.

The department was allocated R950.7 million for the year.

Anti-corruption bureau

The Minister of Public Service and Administration launched the anti-corruption bureau to fast-track disciplinary cases in the public sector. The bureau forms part of amendments to the Public Service Act of 1994.

The amendments also include banning all public servants from doing business with the government.

Cabinet and provinces have adopted a manual on procedures for recruiting, and/or retaining officials that resign.

Uniform standards will be applied to all public servants across government.

The bureau will conduct investigations, institute disciplinary proceedings and work with existing law enforcement agencies, such as the Special Investigating Unit and National Prosecuting Authority, and the other related agencies such as the Financial Intelligence Centre and the South African Revenue Service.

Criminal cases will be referred to law enforcement agencies.

The bureau also has to provide technical assistance and advisory support to deal with disciplinary matters in the public

administration, while ensuring that the public sector applies uniform disciplinary standards.

A case management system allows officials to monitor the progress of cases to ensure that they are finalised speedily. By 2014, an agreement was already in place with the National Prosecuting Authority to ensure that whistle-blowers were protected.

The passing of the Public Administration Management Bill in March 2014 was expected to change the face of the State at national, provincial, and local levels. The Bill was a major step forward in the building of an effective, efficient, and ethical Public Service.

An effective, efficient and ethical Public Service is a central element in the building of a democratic developmental state as mandated by the NDP.

Among other things, the Public Administration Management Bill prohibits public administration officials from conducting business with the State and officials in public administration are required to declare the financial and business interests of their immediate family members.

By prohibiting officials from conducting business with the State, the government is eliminating incentives and opportunities for corruption and unethical conduct.

Role players

Community development workers (CDWs)

CDWs link early childhood development centres with programmes of the Department of Social Development. In the area of HIV and AIDS, CDWs disseminate user-friendly information on these conditions and mobilise communities to actively participate in HIV and AIDS-related awareness programmes, including World AIDS Day.

To promote food security, CDWs identify indigent households and mobilise them to benefit from the departments of Agriculture and Rural Development's food security programmes.

To contribute to job creation, CDWs identify and link unemployed youths to Government's Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and Community Works Programme.

CDWs are agents of participatory democracy. Their functions include:

- communicating information from and about Government and other information to communities in an accessible way
- providing feedback to government regarding community experiences of service delivery and governance
- providing early warning to government of any obvious reduction in service standards and performance that could lead to the collapse or significant impairment of overall service functions
- reporting any corruption or irregularity encountered within the sphere of government, government departments, community organisations or the private sector.

Public Service Commission (PSC)

The PSC is tasked and empowered to, amongst others, investigate, monitor, and evaluate the organisation and administration of the Public Service.

This mandate also entails the evaluation of achievements, or lack thereof of government programmes. The PSC also has an obligation to promote measures that would ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service and to promote values and principles of public administration as set out in the Constitution, throughout the Public Service.

The PSC has an obligation to promote measures that will ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service and to promote values and principles of public administration, as set out in the Constitution, throughout the Public Service.

The Constitution mandates the commission to:

- promote the values and principles governing public administration
- investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation, administration and the personnel practices of the Public Service
- propose measures to ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service
- give directions aimed at ensuring that personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals comply with the constitutionally prescribed values and principles

- report its activities and the performance of its functions, including any findings it may make and to provide an evaluation of the extent to which it complies constitutionally with the prescribed values and principles
 - either of its own accord or on receipt of any complaint:
 - investigate and evaluate the application of personnel and public-administration practices, and report to the relevant executive authority and legislature
 - investigate grievances of employees in the Public Service concerning official acts or omissions, and recommend appropriate remedies
 - monitor and investigate adherence to applicable procedures in the Public Service
 - advise national and provincial organs of State regarding personnel practices in the Public Service.
- To be effective, the Public Service has to develop a deeper understanding of the constitutional imperatives and Government mandate of providing a better life for the country's citizens.
- This would make it easier for government to develop the necessary skills in its human capital to deal with the challenges faced by South Africans across the board.

Government Employees Medical Aid Scheme (GEMS)

GEMS was registered on 1 January 2005 specifically to meet the healthcare needs of government employees. Its mission is to provide all Public Service employees with equitable access to affordable and comprehensive healthcare benefits.

As the second largest medical scheme in South Africa, GEMS remains the fastest growing medical scheme.

In terms of accessibility, GEMS has made considerable inroads in covering lower level employees, with 45% of Level 1 to Level 5 employees now covered by the scheme. Approximately R1 in every R5 spent on private healthcare is spent by GEMS, and approximately R1 out of every R10 spent on healthcare (private and public) in South Africa is spent by GEMS.

The scheme's key future priorities include :

- reducing medical scheme costs through strategic sourcing and specialist networks

- promoting member retention
- introducing workplace-based exercise and health programmes for Public Service employees.

Centre for Public Sector Innovation (CPSI)

The CPSI was established to identify, support and nurture innovation in the public sector to improve service delivery.

The CPSI works through partnerships with other departments and state-owned enterprises to, for example, enhance the productive capacity of visually impaired educators by providing data-card devices for them to access teaching material without the use of Braille.

The CPSI runs targeted innovation programmes to support the outcomes of rural development, accelerated service delivery at local government level, as well as human settlement.

National School of Government

The National School of Government offers training and development opportunities to public servants at national, provincial and local level of government.

This includes training of new Public Service employees as part of their probation, re-orientation of senior managers and orientation of unemployed youth graduates, preparing them for Public Service employment opportunities.

The school is intended to educate, train, professionalise and develop a highly capable, skilled and committed Public Service cadre, with a sense of national duty and a common culture and ethos.

It will nurture a culture of professionalism and innovative thinking and serve as a catalyst for reform and modernisation, in pursuit of a performance-oriented Public Service. Core training is not outsourced, but is performed internally.

The school provides everything from adult basic education and training to higher education courses, and is registered to carry out the necessary accreditation.

The school runs like a customer-focused business, with participants having to pay tuition fees. It is funded by the Public Service Sector Education and Training Authority (known as Pseta) and skills development levies are drawn from departments' payrolls.

All new public servants are required to undergo induction training.

Public Service Month

South Africa marks Public Service Month in September each year.

It is a regular national event that requires all the national and provincial departments to participate by putting in place activities and campaigns to improve service delivery. Public Service Month is a follow-up to and mirrors the UN and Africa Public Service Day, which takes place on 23 June every year.

Batho Pele

The Batho Pele Campaign is, aimed at improving service delivery to the public.

Batho Pele is a Sesotho phrase meaning "People First".

From this concept, eight principles were derived and made known in a White Paper as the principles for transforming public service delivery, which are:

- regular consultation with customers
- set service standards
- increased access to services
- higher levels of courtesy
- more and better information about services
- increased openness and transparency about services
- remedying failures and mistakes
- giving the best possible value for money.

Batho Pele Awards

The annual National Batho Pele Excellence Awards serve to recognise public servants who are selfless, dedicated, committed and who go the extra mile in servicing the citizens. Eligible to public servants across the three spheres of Government, the awards seek to entrench the transformation and professionalisation of the Public Service.

The awards reward excellent service delivery and recognise the contribution by public servants across government in their service delivery improvement initiatives.

Department of Public Works (DPW)

The DPW is mandated to be the custodian and portfolio manager of national government's immovable assets.

Following the operationalisation of the Property Management Trading Entity, the department's role will now be policy formulation, coordination, regulation and oversight relating to the provision of accommodation and expert built environment services to client departments at the national government level; as well as, through the Property Management Trading Entity, the planning, acquiring, managing and disposing of immovable assets in the department's custody.

The DPW is further mandated to coordinate and provide strategic leadership in job creation initiatives through the implementation of the EPWP. Public works is constitutionally designated as a concurrent function exercised by both the national and provincial spheres of Government.

Expanded Public Works Programme

The EPWP is a government initiative aimed at alleviating poverty and unemployment within the South African communities through the provision of short term to medium term work opportunities to unskilled and unemployed South Africans.

The EPWP participants' employment period is determined by the project implementation period. Besides, the number of work opportunities created, the programme has successfully made a significant socio-economic impact to the communities through the creation and maintenance of community assets.

The EPWP's training focus, which is in partnership with a number of training providers, remains as one of the most significant parts of the programme.

To date, the programme has created a total of 3.5 million work opportunities in the infrastructure, social, environment and culture sectors, in line with the demand for labour. The department aims to create a further 4.4 million work opportunities through the programme over the MTEF period through transfers and subsidies to public bodies, such as provinces, municipalities and non-profit organisations, amounting to an estimated R7.7 billion.

Department of Home Affairs (DHA)

The DHA is the custodian of the identity of all South African citizens, critical to which is the issuance of birth, marriage and death certificates; identity documents (IDs) and passports; as well as citizenship; naturalisation and permanent residency certificates.

This goes beyond merely issuing documents. It encompasses the safe maintenance and archiving of biometric and demographic records of citizens and residents of the country.

The department is also responsible for the effective, secure and humane management of immigration.

Statutory bodies falling under the department include the following, among others:

- Immigration Advisory Board
- Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs
- Refugee Appeal Board.

A major focus for the DHA is the transformation of the department, so that it can deliver a service that is efficient, accessible and corruption-free. Several closely related strategic drivers are used in this regard.

Mandate of the DHA

The core mandate of the DHA is to be the custodian of citizenship, status and identity; and to manage immigration securely and efficiently in the interest of economic development and national security. The provision of protection to asylum seekers and refugees is a separate mandate because it is an area of international migration that has its own Act and is grounded in international laws that have been ratified by the South African parliament.

It aims to be an enabler of some of the most critical conditions for economic growth and social justice identified in the NDP, including facilitating economic development, facilitating national security, ensuring good governance and administration and providing excellent service delivery to clients.

The Civic Services branch is the custodian of the National Population Register (NPR), which contains the records of all citizens and permanent residents, including changes in civic status, such as marriage and death. Services to citizens include issuing enabling documents after these citizens' status have

been confirmed, such as birth, marriage and death certificates and travel documents. Verification of identity is a service that is rendered to all government institutions, banks and other private sector institutions.

The Immigration Affairs branch determines the status and identity of foreigners; facilitates the movement of people through ports of entry; regulates immigration through permitting and movement control systems; and provides consular services abroad. Immigration officers are present at ports of entry and at offices in provinces. The branch has an inspectorate function that is responsible for enforcing the Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002) and Regulations. Immigration Affairs is also responsible for processing and determining the status of asylum seekers and refugees, and operates refugee reception centres nationally. Furthermore, the branch is responsible for managing a holding facility (Lindela) for illegal immigrants awaiting deportation after due processes have been followed.

With regard to services rendered abroad, the DHA is represented in 32 missions and is assisted by the Department of International Relations and Cooperation where it is not represented. For the collection of visa and permit applications, the DHA sourced the services of Visa Facilitation Services (VFS) Global in some countries abroad, as well as at centres within South Africa.

The Minister of Home Affairs has oversight over three statutory bodies: the Immigration Advisory Board, the Refugee Appeal Board and the Standing Committee on Refugee Affairs. The main responsibility of these bodies is to assist the department in discharging its mandate with regard to the Immigration Act of 2002 and the Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998).

The DHA also receives funds on behalf of the Electoral Commission and for the Represented Political Parties Fund. There are two entities that report to the Ministry, namely: the Electoral Commission and Government Printing Works (GPW).

Budget

During 2018/19, the department received an initial budget allocation of R7.915 billion as voted funds. However, during the adjustment estimates of national expenditure, an additional funding of R1.132 billion was allocated to the department for

self-financing. The self-financing mechanism was created by the National Treasury whereby the department is allocated part of the revenue it collects during the financial year to pay for certain items of expenditure such as smart identity cards for first-time applicants and citizens older than 60 years, infrastructure to implement the Who am I online project, fees for cash in transit and printing costs for enabling documents. The final appropriation was R9.047 billion.

Applicable Legislation

Births, Marriages and Deaths:

- Births and Deaths Registration Act, 1992 (Act 51 of 1992);
- Regulations on the Registration of Births and Deaths, 2014;
- Marriage Act, 1961 (Act 25 of 1961);
- Regulations made under the Marriage Act of 1961;
- Recognition of Customary Marriages Act, 1998 (Act 120 of 1998);
- Regulations made under the Recognition of Customary Marriages Act of 1998;
- Civil Union Act, 2006 (Act No 17 of 2006); and
- Civil Union Regulations, 2006.

Identity documents and identification:

- Identification Act, 1997 (Act 68 of 1997);
- Identification Regulations, 1998; and
- Alteration of Sex Description and Sex Status Act, 2003 (Act 49 of 2003)

Citizenship:

- South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995); and
- Regulations on the South African Citizenship Act of 1995.

Immigration:

- Immigration Act of 2002,
- Immigration Regulations, 2014,
- Refugees Act of 1998, and
- Refugees Regulations, 2000.

Civic Service

It provides secure, efficient and accessible services and documents for citizens and lawful residents. The functions include:

- registrations of births,

- registrations of deaths,
- issuing of identity documents,
- identification of persons using biometrics,
- amending/ rectification of personal particulars,
- handling/ solving duplicate cases, and
- keeping records of births, amendments, marriage and deaths.

Citizenship

South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- birth or descent
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship
- registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South African fathers or mothers
- an application for exemption, in terms of Section 26(4) of the Act.

The South African Citizenship Amendment Act of 2010, among others, ensures that a child:

- born to a South African parent inside or outside the country is a South African by birth, as long as the child is registered according to South African law
- born of non-South African parents, but adopted by South African parents is a citizen by descent
- born of non-South African parents in South Africa, may, at the age of 18 years, apply for naturalisation; while they are minors, such children will retain the citizenship of their parents
- with no claim to any citizenship will be given South African citizenship, in accordance with international law and practice.

Dual citizenship

South Africa allows dual citizenship. It occurs when a person is a citizen of more than one country.

A South African who wishes to obtain the citizenship of another country must first apply to retain his/her South African citizenship and obtain the exemption before acquiring the foreign citizenship. This will allow him/her to hold dual citizenship.

All South African dual citizens must enter and leave South Africa on their South African passports. Their foreign passports must only be used outside South Africa. There is a penalty of

a fine or imprisonment for failure to enter or leave the country using the SA passports.

National Population Register

Early registration of birth is essential to ensure the integrity and credibility of the NPR, which is used to affirm the identity, status and rights of citizens. Furthermore, the optimisation of early birth registration is aligned to the United Nations' Sustainable Development Goal 16, which is aimed at providing access to justice, ending the scandal of invisibility, trafficking of children and providing legal identity for all, including birth registration by 2030.

Various public service institutions depend on the availability of the official birth registration figures for planning purposes. Currently the DHA is registering around 70% of births within 30 calendar days.

Information Communication Technology (ICT) Modernisation Programme

The ICT Modernisation Programme is the foundation of the digital roadmap that DHA has planned to embark on. The digital transformation will be enabled by robust integrated back-end systems and modern network infrastructure, which in turn enable all DHA front-end processes and alignment with all related government systems.

Key elements of the new model will be phased in over a 10-year period leading up to 2028/29. These include digital processes for issuing birth, marriage and death certificates; the use of modified screening procedures at e-gates at high-volume land ports of entry for pre-approved frequent travellers; and a single hub for the adjudication of permits and visas. All of these services will be accessed through a number of channels, often involving partners, such as public and private health systems for birth and death registration. The implementation of the new model will eliminate historical issues in the department such as long queues and fraud.

Digital transformation and continuous innovation will enable DHA to become a provider of "people centric" services and identity data verification for both government and private institutions.

The National Identity System (NIS) – which will replace the NPR – will become the backbone of all DHA functions. It is expected to be operational by March 2024. The system will enable the security and reliability of civic and immigration status linked to identity and biometric data. This in turn will enable economic transformation; efficient service delivery and security of citizens and all known foreign nationals in South Africa.

The DHA is in the process of implementing this single integrated source of biographic and biometric information in order to make digital service delivery a seamless reality. The current disparate civic and immigration systems will produce secure data that will feed into the NIS according to an identity management policy and an updated Identification Act. All processes such as the registration of births, marriages and deaths will be digitised and secured.

The successful implementation of the NIS will lead to a substantial reduction in fraudulent transactions; and enable efficient e-Government and e-Commerce services.

An estimated R1.8 billion is allocated in the Administration programme over the medium term for the department's modernisation programme.

Improving and expanding client interfaces

The rollout of smart identity cards began in 2013 to replace an estimated 38 million green barcoded identity books.

To increase the rollout of smart identity cards and passports over the medium term, the department will aim to expand its public-private partnership with the banking sector to provide services at more branches and other service providers such as the South African Post Office.

The department will also aim to extend its reach by procuring new mobile units and refurbishing its existing fleet, leading to a projected increase in the number of units from 70 in 2018/19 to 78 in 2019/20 at an estimated cost of R90 million over the medium term in the Administration programme

Immigration

The DHA's National Immigration Branch is responsible for control over the admission of foreigners for residence and departure from South Africa. The immigration policy aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for relevant permits to legalise their stay in the country,
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa,
- attract scarce skills required by the economy, in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment,
- temporary and permanent residence permits issue as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures,
- ensure that security considerations are fully satisfied and the State regains control over the immigration of foreigners to South Africa,
- ensure that economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour; foreign investment is facilitated; the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled and academic exchange programmes in the SADC are facilitated,
- ensure that tourism is promoted,
- ensure that the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers,
- ensure that a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens, a
- ensure that a human-rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

The department prioritised the issuance of quota work permits to foreigners who fall within specific occupational classes or specific professional categories.

In this context, details of specific occupational classes and specific professional categories and the applicable quotas are published annually in the government Gazette, after consultation with other stakeholder departments.

The Immigration Amendment Act of 2011 provides for, among other things:

- revising provisions relating to the Immigrating Advisory Board,
- revising provisions relating to the making of regulations,

- the designation of ports of entry,
- revising provisions relating to visas for temporary sojourn in South Africa,
- the mandatory transmission and use of information on advance passenger processing,
- the transmission of passenger name record information,
- revising provisions relating to permanent residence, and
- revising penal provisions.

Visas

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid and acceptable travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits, which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry.

The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreigners at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry; therefore, no additional permit will be issued.

In November 2019, requirements for children travelling to or from South Africa were revised to give effect to the Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005). Under the regulations, children from visa exempt countries only need a passport if they are accompanied by an adult. If unaccompanied, a child should carry the following documents:

- Copy of his /her birth certificate.
- Parental consent letters.
- Copy of the passport(s)/identity document(s) of the parent(s)/ legal guardian(s).
- Contact details of the parent(s)/ legal guardian(s).
- Letter from the person who is to receive the child in the Republic, containing his / her residential address and contact details in the Republic where the child will reside.
- Copy of the identity document / valid passport and visa or permanent residence permit of the person who is to receive the child in the Republic.

Where applicable:

- Copy of an adoption order.
- Copy of a death certificate of the deceased parent/ parents or legal guardian.

- Copy of a court order granting full parental responsibilities and rights or legal guardianship in respect of the child.

The requirements for parental consent and birth certificates remain unchanged in the case of South African children travelling – in view of the requirements of the Children's Act of 2005. Where the department has issued a child passport containing the particulars of the parents, a birth certificate is not required.

In respect of inbound travellers (international visitors) where visas are required, provision of original birth certificates or certified copies of required documents would be continued during the visa application process, as this is in line with practice in many other countries.

The DHA outsourced the handling and processing of visa applications to VFS Global. VFS Global has opened 12 offices in nine provinces and 11 cities within South Africa.

Visa and permit applications will be accepted across these 12 centres and subsequently assessed by the DHA head offices in Pretoria. Non-South Africans with a legal residency permit in South Africa can apply for a visa or permit at these centres.

These could be found at:

- Bloemfontein, Free State
- Bruma (Bedfordview), Gauteng
- Cape Town, Western Cape
- Durban, KwaZulu-Natal
- George, Eastern Cape
- Johannesburg, Gauteng
- Kimberley, Northern Cape
- Nelspruit, Mpumalanga
- Port Elizabeth, Eastern Cape
- Pretoria, Gauteng
- Polokwane, Limpopo
- Rustenburg, North West.

Zimbabwean nationals on the Special Dispensation for Zimbabweans Project, Asylum and Refugee cases will still be directly handled by the DHA. The VFS does not have the authority to grant or refuse visas as that decision still lies with the DHA.

New regulations state that one cannot change from a visitor's visa to another type of visa; these applications for change of

conditions must be made at a mission abroad, i.e. an embassy or consulate, where the applicant is an ordinary resident or holds citizenship. However, exceptional circumstances include if an applicant is in need of life-saving medical treatment or is an accompanying spouse or child of a business or work visa holder who wish to apply for a study or work visa.

Life partners looking to apply for temporary residency in South Africa based on a life partner visa will need to prove that they have been together for two years; those applying for permanent residency will need to prove that they have been together for five years. Spouses looking to apply for temporary residency in South Africa based on a spousal visa will not need to prove that they have been in a previous relationship for a certain number of years. If a partner or spouse was in a previous marriage, it is necessary to provide official documents that prove the dissolution of such marriage either by divorce or the death of the other spouse. Life partners will need to attend separate but simultaneous interviews to determine the authenticity of the existence of their relationship.

The DHA has officially eradicated the exceptional skills and quota permit categories. Current exceptional skills and quota permit holders will not be able to renew their permits going forward.

Those looking to renew their visa while in the country must do so 60 days before the current one expires.

Applications for a general work visa will have to include a certificate from the Department of Labour confirming the following:

- despite a thorough search, the prospective employer could not find a South African employee with the skills and experience equivalent to those of the applicant
- the applicant has proven skills and experience in line with the job offer
- the salary and benefits of the applicant are not inferior to those of citizens or permanent residents
- the contract signed by both the employer and applicant stipulates conditions that are in line the labour laws of South Africa.

The applicant will need a document to prove that their qualifications have been approved by the South African Qualifications Authority. This document must be translated

into one of the official languages of South Africa by a sworn translator. The work visa will be valid for a maximum of five years.

The critical skills work visa is based on a list of occupations that are considered critical (examples include agricultural engineers, land surveyor and forestry technicians) in South Africa. To apply for a visa in this category, the applicant does not need a job offer, but within one year of being granted a visa, will need to prove that he or she is gainfully employed within their field. This visa replaced the exceptional skills and quota visas.

Holders of visitor's visas who wish to change the terms or status of their visa must submit an application no less than 60 days prior to the current visa's date of expiration. It is no longer possible to change from a visitor's visa to another visa category within South Africa.

It is a requirement for businesses to get a recommendation letter from the Department of Trade and Industry for a business visa. The Department of Trade and Industry will conduct a thorough forensic assessment of the feasibility of the business entity as well as the contribution to the national interest of South Africa.

A minimum of R5 million must be invested into South Africa. Any accountant registered with the South African Institute of Professional Accountants or the South African Institute of Chartered Accountants can verify the availability of funds for a business visa.

The business owner's workforce must be 60% South Africans or must be permanent residents employed in various positions. Business visas will be granted for no longer than three years at a time. No business visa will be issued to a foreigner who intends to establish or invest in a business that is listed as an undesirable business undertaking.

To obtain an intra-company visa the employee in question must be employed with the foreign office/business for a minimum of six months before being eligible for transfer to South Africa. This visa will now be available for four years but is non-renewable.

Holders of a study visa may not conduct part-time work exceeding 20 hours of labour a week. Both study and exchange

visas will only be issued for the duration of the study period or exchange programme, respectively.

An exchange visa (for people under 25 years) will not be granted to conduct work pertaining to what is considered an undesirable work as published by the Minister in the gazette, after consultation with the Minister of Trade and Industry.

An asylum transit visa issued at a port of entry will be valid for a period of five days to enable the holder to report at a nearest refugee reception office.

Fines will no longer be charged for overstaying. People who overstay for a prescribed number of times will be declared as undesirable.

The Chinese government consented to increasing the Visa Facilitation Centre footprint in China from four to nine, which is unprecedented given China's strict regulations on foreign visa issuance.

The DHA is committed to contributing to regional integration in Africa and efforts to ease the movement of Africans on the continent.

The department also initiated the first ever community border crossing point between South Africa and Botswana at Tshidilamolomo in the North West, with the aim to roll these out to other border crossings with selected other neighbouring countries.

The DHA has implemented biometric capture at OR Tambo, King Shaka, Cape Town and Lanseria international airports, which has enabled it to abolish the transit visa and allow prospective travellers – mainly from China – to apply for visas through accredited tourism operators.

Establishing a border management authority

In June 2013, Cabinet ruled that a border management authority should be established to provide an integrated approach to border management characterised by a single command-and-control structure. The authority will be aimed at improving security, integrity and efficiency at South Africa's borders, and will incrementally assume responsibility for enforcing border law at ports of entry. The Border Management Authority Bill is set to be finalised by 2019/20.

Functions for the authority's operations will be transferred

from departments and entities such as the South African Police Service and the Department of Health over the medium term.

Streamlining and securing international migration

The *2017 White Paper on International Migration* contends that South Africa needs a progressive vision that inspires the country to maximise the benefits of international migration while minimising associated risks such as sovereignty, peace and security, and that the cost of a lack of investment in managing international migration is far higher than the cost of building the necessary capacity. Following Cabinet's approval of the paper in March 2018, the department is in the process of drafting legislation, which is set to be promulgated in the next medium-term strategic framework cycle (2019-2024). Elements of this policy, such as community border crossings, are being phased in.

The advance passenger processing system enables passengers to be screened at the point of departure rather than at arrival. This streamlines arrivals, as passengers' security and risk profiles are assessed before they reach ports of entry, and minimises security risks.

The department is also in the process of establishing public-private partnerships for the redevelopment and modernisation of six priority land ports of entry (Beitbridge, Maseru Bridge, Kopfontein, Lebombo, Oshoek and Ficksburg), as well as moving refugee reception centres closer to the country's borders.

Control of travellers

People arriving in South Africa by air, sea or land have to pass through customs control, where they may be questioned and their baggage scanned or searched for dutiable, restricted or prohibited goods. Visitors found with undeclared, restricted or prohibited goods could be fined or may face prosecution.

South Africa acceded to the Admission Temporaire/Temporary Admission (ATA) convention in 1975, which means foreign visitors companies and individuals can approach their local chambers of commerce for advice regarding the issuing of an ATA Carnet for the temporary import of certain goods in a simplified method. An example would be broadcasters or

sponsors of international sporting events taking place in South Africa.

Control of sojourn

Foreigners who are in the country illegally and are, therefore, guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, such as holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, people who are in South Africa illegally are prosecuted, removed or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the department are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The DHA is responsible for:

- processing applications for immigration permits for consideration
- admitting people suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa.

The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns, or to establish new concerns in South Africa.

The DHA is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently and, in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits.

The DHA considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. In terms of new regulations, regions will be responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees, in respect of permanent residence. They will also

do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries in this regard may be made to the nearest office of the DHA in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the DG of the DHA for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting, in Pretoria.

The department has prioritised temporary residence permits, as this category of foreigners is at risk of being in the country illegally, if their applications are not finalised in time.

The DHA will prioritise applications for permanent residence permits from holders of quota work permits and exceptional skills work permits, in line with the country's objective of attracting critical skills.

Temporary residence

The Zimbabwean Special Dispensation Permit (ZSP) was announced in March 2014, replacing the Dispensation for Zimbabwe Project (DZP) which officially closed on 31 December 2014.

Under the DZP, Zimbabwean nationals, who were in the country illegally, were granted an opportunity to legalise their stay. The special dispensation was introduced in 2009 to regulate the stay of Zimbabweans working illegally in South Africa because of the political and socio-economic situation in their country.

Approximately 295 000 Zimbabweans applied for the permit. Just over 245 000 permits were issued, with the balance being denied due to lack of passports or non-fulfilment of other requirements.

The new ZSP was accepted by Cabinet in August 2014. Zimbabwean nationals who were in possession of the DZP permits were eligible to apply for the ZSP if they wished to extend their stay in South Africa. Certain conditions applied, which included a valid Zimbabwean passport; evidence of employment, business, or accredited study, and a clear criminal record.

The ZSP allowed permit-holders to live, work, conduct business and study in South Africa for the duration of the permit, which would be valid until 31 December 2017.

In August 2017, Cabinet approved the reopening of the application process for the current ZSP holders, under certain conditions. The ZSP allows applications from Zimbabweans with a valid Zimbabwean passport, evidence of employment, business or accredited study and a clear criminal record and if successful

grants them a permit to stay and work, study or run a business in South Africa.

VFS Global managed applications for ZSP permits while the DHA adjudicated applications. VFS opened four new offices in provinces where it was anticipated that there would be large numbers of applicants. These were Gauteng, Western Cape, Limpopo and Mpumalanga. The new offices were in addition to the 11 offices already opened, all of which dealt with ZSP applications.

ZSP permit-holders, who wished to stay in South Africa after the expiry of their ZSP, would need to return to Zimbabwe to apply for mainstream visas and permits under the Immigration Act of 2020.

In January 2016, the Lesotho Special Permit (LSP) was launched. The purpose of the programme is to to regularise the stay of Lesotho nationals currently residing in South Africa illegally.

It is meant to document Lesotho nationals who are working, studying or running businesses in South Africa, without appropriate documentation. A total of 90 314 permits were issued.

The special permits will be valid for four years, until 31 December 2019.

In November 2019, the department introduced the new Lesotho Exemption Permit which replaces the LSP. The new dispensation is only applicable to existing holders of the LSP and will be valid for four years. Online applications were opened on 18 November 2019 and will be closed on 31 March 2020.

Role players

Government Printing Works

The GPW is a South African security printing specialist that deals with the printing of passports, visas, birth certificates, smart identity cards and examination materials, as well as government stationery and publications, such as tender bulletins and government gazettes.

It adheres to the overall goal of security printing, which is to prevent forgery, counterfeiting and tampering that could lead to fraud and identity theft.

It does this by continuously updating its security printing technology and today, boasts a new state-of-the-art facility that

has been benchmarked internationally and is widely divergent from its humble beginnings.

The GPW operates as a self-funded business within regulated parameters of the DHA.

South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

Environment



The Department of Environmental Affairs (DEA) is mandated to realise the right of citizens to an environment that is not harmful to their health or well-being, and to have the environment protected for the benefit of present and future generations.

To this end, the department provides leadership in environmental management, conservation and protection towards sustainability for the benefit of South Africans and the global community.

Strategies are therefore in place to:

- ensure that the department has optimal capacity to deliver services efficiently and effectively
- ensure that South Africa's environmental assets are conserved, valued, sustainably used, protected and continually enhanced for the benefit of both current and future generations
- enhance socio-economic benefits and employment creation in a safe, clean and healthy environment for both present and future generations
- provide leadership in environmental management, conservation and protection towards sustainability for the benefit of both current and future generations
- manage the interface between the environment and development to encourage the transformation of the development trajectory to an environmentally sustainable, inclusive, low-carbon and green economic growth path
- promote compliance with environmental legislation, and act decisively against transgressors
- develop and facilitate the implementation of a climate change adaptation and mitigation regulatory framework
- facilitate the transition to an environmentally sustainable, job-creating and low-carbon green development pathway through the Green Fund and environmental projects in the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)
- improve the provision of quality waste- management services across the country with clear environmental health benefits for communities, particularly those with no previous access to waste-management services.

Over the medium term, the department will focus on creating job opportunities through the EPWP in moving towards a green economy; enforcing and monitoring compliance with

environmental legislation; conserving marine ecosystems; investing in biodiversity; monitoring climate change and air quality; and managing waste. The National Development Plan (NDP) aims to create five million jobs by 2030, and the department will contribute to this aim by creating jobs in the environment sector.

The DEA's sustainable development work over the medium term supports the NDP's aim to make interventions to ensure environmental sustainability and resilience to future shocks.

The environmental sector continues to be a source and facilitator of investment, job creation, entrepreneurship and skills development – in line with the key objectives of the NDP.

The DEA has adopted a three-pronged strategic approach to facilitate the government's long-term radical economic transformation goals – the Phakisa Strategic Approach, Environmental Justice Strategic Approach and Economy-wide Service Delivery Strategic Approach. The approaches work in pursuit of low-carbon, inclusive and climate resilient growth.

Creating jobs

The department's work is pivotal in the creation of a green economy in which economic development is not at the expense of the environment. In its efforts to provide 119 267 full-time equivalent jobs and 221 923 work opportunities through the EPWP over the medium term, the department anticipates spending R11.6 billion, accounting for 48.9% of its total budget over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

These jobs and work opportunities will be made available through projects that focus on restoring and rehabilitating degraded ecosystems; expanding the conservation estate; protecting, restoring and rehabilitating wetlands; protecting water resources; and managing land use sustainably. These services are budgeted for in the Environmental Programmes programme, which has an allocation of R12.7 billion over the medium term.

Enforcing and monitoring compliance with environmental legislation

Effective compliance and enforcement underpins environmental justice and the integrity of South Africa's regulatory system. As

such, the department will continue to enforce legislation and regulations governing international trade in wild animals and plants at ports of entry and exit. The department currently has nine environmental management inspectors deployed at only one of the 16 designated ports of entry: OR Tambo International Airport. Deploying environmental management inspectors and compliance and enforcement officials at all ports will require the procurement of office space, equipment to handle animals, safes and microchip scanners.

This will enable officials to inspect an estimated 495 environmental permits over the MTEF period to ensure that protected species and alien plants are not smuggled into and out of the country. An estimated R661 million is provided over the medium term for these activities.

Conserving marine ecosystems

The department plans to continue supporting research voyages to Antarctica, Marion Island and Gough Island. These expeditions support long-term biological, environmental and meteorological research. To carry out this work, the operation and manning of two research vessels accounts for an estimated 23.6% (R380.5 million) of total expenditure in the Oceans and Coasts programme over the medium term.

A further R330.6 million is allocated to implementing the Oceans Economy Strategy, which includes manufacturing for marine transport, offshore oil and gas exploration, aquaculture, marine protection services, and ocean governance.

Investing in biodiversity

In its efforts to ensure that a representative sample of the country's biodiversity is placed under formal protection, the department plans to increase the area of land under conservation from 13.5% in 2018/19 to a projected 14.7% in 2021/22. This entails facilitating the identification of 2 000 hectares for the cultivation of indigenous species across the country, and providing training to 800 biodiversity entrepreneurs as part of the department's efforts to ensure that biodiversity contributes substantially to the economy. This is expected to result in expenditure of R156 million over the medium term, representing 6.1% of the programme's total budget of R2.6 billion over the same period. The bulk of

this expenditure is for operational transfers to the South African National Parks, the South African National Biodiversity Institute and the iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority.

Monitoring climate change and air quality

To contribute towards the reduction in air pollution, the department plans to increase the number of government-owned air quality monitoring stations reporting to the South African Air Quality Information System from 117 in 2018/19 to 125 in 2021/22. This will be made possible by an allocation of R148 million over the medium term. This allocation will also enable the department to roll out the Let's Respond toolkit to a projected 40 municipalities to integrate their climate change responses into the department's planning documents.

This entails reviewing the development plans of municipalities and guiding them to be responsive to climate change, with particular focus on the effects of climate change on vulnerable communities and sustainable economic development.

Managing waste

The department's Waste Management Bureau is tasked with promoting and facilitating the minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste. The bureau provides specialist advice and support for the development and monitoring of integrated waste management plans for industry and municipalities, and manages the disbursement of revenue generated from charges for waste management.

The bureau has been managing the disposal of waste tyres as a transitional arrangement since October 2017, when the previous contractor was suspended. The process of appointing a new contractor is expected to be finalised over the medium term. To carry out its duties, 68.9 % (R1.3 billion) of the allocation in the Chemicals and Waste Management Programme over the medium term is earmarked for the bureau.

Legislation and policies

The framework within which the department fulfils its mandate is guided by a number of policies and legislation:

- The National Environmental Management Act (Nema), 1998 (Act 107 of 1998); the National Environmental Management

Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 46 of 2003); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 8 of 2004); the National Environment Laws Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 44 of 2008); the National Environmental Management Amendment Act, 2008 (Act 62 of 2008) and the National Environment Laws Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 14 of 2009) establish the concepts of participatory, cooperative and developmental governance in environmental management, as well as principles for environmental management and provides for structures to facilitate these.

- The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEMBA), 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), reformed South Africa's laws regulating biodiversity. It sets out the mechanisms for managing and conserving South Africa's biodiversity and its components; protecting species and ecosystems that warrant national protection; the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources; the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bioprospecting, including indigenous biological resources; and the establishment of the South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI).
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act 57 of 2003) provides for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas, the establishment of a national register of protected areas, as well as the proclamation and management of these areas.
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2009 (Act 15 of 2009) provides for the assignment of national parks, special parks and heritage sites to South African National Parks (SANParks).
- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 31 of 2004) provides for a national system of protected areas in South Africa as part of a strategy to manage and conserve the country's biodiversity.
- The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act (AQA), 2004 (Act 39 of 2004) reforms the law regulating air quality to protect the environment by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation and for securing ecologically sustainable development.
- The National Environmental Management: Integrated Coastal

Management Act, 2008 (Act 24 of 2008) establishes a system of integrated coastal and estuarine management in the country, ensuring socially and environmentally responsible development and use.

- The National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act 59 of 2008) reforms the law regulating waste management to protect health and the environment.
 - The World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999) provides for the cultural and environmental protection and sustainable development of, and related activities in a world heritage site.
 - The South African Weather Service (SAWS) Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001).
 - The Sea Shores Act, 1935 (Act 21 of 1935).
 - The Sea Birds and Seals Protection Act, 1973 (Act 46 of 1973).
 - The Dumping at Sea Control Act, 1980 (Act 73 of 1980).
 - The Sea Fishery Act, 1988 (Act 12 of 1988).
 - The Antarctic Treaties Act, 1996 (Act 60 of 1996).
 - The Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998).
 - The Prince Edward Islands Act, 1948 (Act 48 of 1948).
 - The National Environmental Management: Waste Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 449 of 2014)
- Other policy frameworks include:
- The *White Paper on National Climate Change Response, 2011*.
 - The *White Paper on Integrated Pollution and Waste Management, 2000*.
 - The *White Paper on Environmental Management, 1998*.
 - The *White Paper on Conservation and Sustainable Use of Biodiversity, 1997*.
 - The *White Paper for Sustainable Coastal Development in South Africa, 2000*.

The following legislation was amended or pending promulgation:

- Draft regulations on the format of the atmospheric impact report.
- Draft notice on the amendment of the national list of activities, which result in atmospheric emissions which have or may have a significant detrimental effect on the environment, including health, social, economic and ecological conditions or cultural heritage published for public comment.
- Draft notice on the declaration of small boilers as controlled emitters published for public comment.

- Draft national dust control regulations published for public comment.
- Under Section 62 of the NEMBA of 2004, the summary of the non-detriment findings made by the Scientific Authority published for public comment.
- The Biodiversity Management Plan for Pelargonium Sidoides.
- Under Section 97 of the NEMBA of 2004, the regulations related to listed threatened or protected species were published for public comment.
- The National Environmental Management Laws Amendment Act, 2013 (Act 14 of 2013).
- The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 20 of 2014).
- The National Environmental Management: Waste Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 26 of 2014).

- The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 21 of 2014).
- In terms of Section 97 of the NEMBA of 2004, the Draft Regulations for the Registration of Professional Hunters, Hunting Outfitters and Trainers were published for public participation.

The Waste Classification and Management Regulations and the Norms and Standards for the Assessment of Waste for Landfill and the Norms and Standards for the Disposal of Waste to Landfill were published.

Budget and funding

The department's budget for the 2018/19 financial year was R7.4 billion.

As a result of Cabinet-approved reductions to the department's baseline of R83.5 million over the medium term, transfers to

the South African National Biodiversity Institute are reduced by R42.4 million, transfers to South African National Parks by R39.9 million, and transfers to the iSimangaliso Wetland Park Authority by R1.2 million. These entities are expected to generate increased revenue to accommodate these reductions.

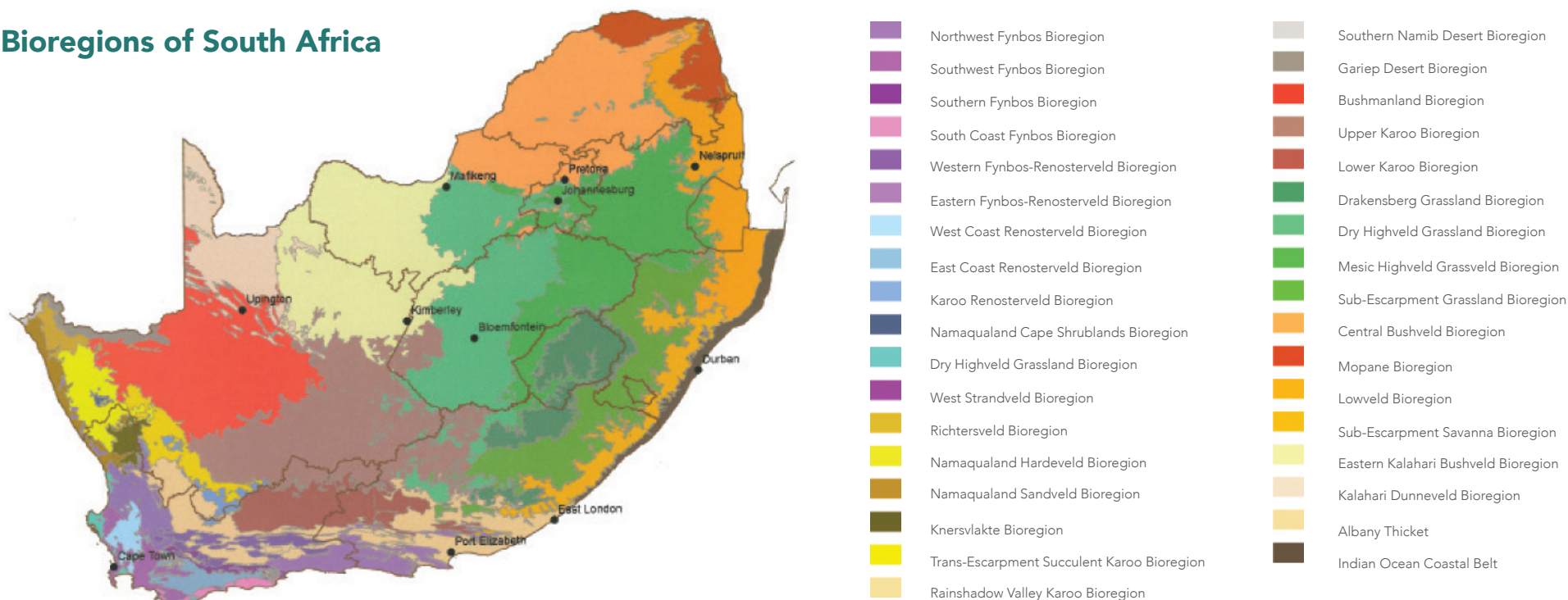
International environment days

South Africa has adopted the entire month of June to heighten awareness of environmental issues through various pertinent activities. It is during the month of June that the country celebrates the World Environment Day, World Oceans Day and the World Day to Combat Desertification.

World Environment Day

World Environment Day is the biggest, most globally celebrated day for positive environmental action. Every year,

Bioregions of South Africa



participants organise clean-up campaigns, art exhibits, tree-planting drives, and concerts, dance recitals, recycling drives, social media campaigns and different contests themed around caring for the planet.

World Environment Day is the United Nations'(UN) principal vehicle for encouraging worldwide awareness and action for the environment. Over the years, it has grown to be a broad, global platform for public outreach that is widely celebrated by stakeholders in over 100 countries. It also serves as the 'people's day' for doing something positive for the environment, galvanising individual actions into a collective power that generates an exponentially positive impact on the planet.

The day is marked annually on 5 June as per the declaration of the UN in 1972. Each World Environment Day is organised around a theme that focuses attention on a particularly pressing environmental concern. The theme for 2018 was, "beating plastic pollution".

The theme urged governments, industry, communities and individuals to come together and explore sustainable alternatives and urgently reduce the production and excessive use of single-use plastic products polluting the environment and oceans, damaging marine life and threatening human health.

World Oceans Day

South Africa joined the rest of the world to mark World Oceans Day on 8 June 2018. The day is aimed at appreciating, protecting, restoring and honouring ecosystem services and resources provided by oceans.

The 2018 World Oceans Day was held under the theme "Prevent Plastic Pollution and encourage solutions for a healthy ocean."

Plastic pollution is a worldwide problem that affects human health and safety, endangers marine wildlife and costs states and nations countless millions in wasted resources and lost revenue. Globally and locally, plastic and synthetic materials are the most common types of marine litter that cause the most problems for marine animals and birds.

Plastic in the oceans eventually moves up the food web, from plankton to larger animals and as it moves up in the food chain, toxic chemicals get more and more concentrated and pose serious danger to humans and top predators since they are at the top of the food chain. Plastic pollution is therefore, a complex environmental challenge that requires joint efforts at the local, regional and global level.

The country has a jurisdiction over one of the largest exclusive economic zones in the world, as it is uniquely surrounded by three ocean spaces (directly by the Atlantic and Indian oceans and in close proximity to the Southern Ocean, which has not yet formally finalised and globally acknowledged) offering a resource rich and biologically diverse environment.

The oceans are vital to human survival and economic development. The protection of ocean ecosystems is the cornerstone of sustainable ocean development, underpinning many economic opportunities that provide significant job creation and livelihood security. Approximately 40% of South Africa's population lives within 100 km of the coastline and

coastal resources are relied on for commercial opportunities as well as for food, recreation and transport.

In order to realise the full socio-economic potential of the ocean resources, it is necessary to strengthen management efforts to control negative human impacts on our ocean resources. The UN has identified pollution, especially originating from land, as a one of the "big stressors" to the health and integrity on marine ecosystems. Globally, it is estimated that roughly 80% of all marine pollution stems from activities carried out on land.

South Africa participates in the Global Programme of Action for the Protection of the Environment from Land-based Activities, which has identified litter as one of the key sources of pollution in the ocean environment.

World Day to Combat Desertification

On 19 June 2018, the DEA celebrated the World Day to Combat Desertification jointly with the Limpopo Provincial Department of Agriculture and Rural Development and the Collins Chabane Local Municipality. The day was celebrated under the theme "Land has true value, invest in it".

The theme called upon producers, consumers, communities and policy makers to utilise land in a sustainable manner. The event focused on raising public awareness on the importance of investing on land, its benefits and role it plays in people's livelihoods as well as reminding the world that land is a tangible asset with measurable value beyond just cash.

World Wildlife Day

The 2019 World Wildlife Day official celebrations were held at the Treasure Beach Environmental Centre in Durban. It was held under the theme "Life below water: for people and planet", which aligns with goal 14 of UN Sustainable Development Goals.

The day is celebrated annually on 3 March with countries around the world turning their attention to the role played by human beings in the protection of wildlife and their habitat. The theme for World Wildlife Day 2018 was, "Big cats: predators under threat".

The day was first proclaimed in 2013 at the 68th session of the UN General Assembly (UNGA), and aims to raise



Important dates on the world's environmental calendar

2 February	World Wetlands Day
20 March	Earth Day
22 March	World Water Day
23 March	World Meteorological Day
27 March	Earth Hour
22 April	Earth Day
22 May	International Day for Marine Biological Diversity
5 June	World Environment Day
8 June	World Oceans Day
17 June	World Day to Combat Desertification
5 – 11 September	World Water Week
16 September	International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer
18 September	International Coastal Clean-up Day
22 September	World Car-Free Day
5 October	World Habitat Day
11 December	International Mountain Day

awareness of the world's wild animals and plants. Among the actions required to advance the 2030 Agenda and Sustainable Development Goals is raising public awareness on the links between wildlife conservation, rural livelihoods and sustainable development, as well as the role of governance and public-private partnerships.

Marine Week

Each year, the DEA observes the National Marine Week to highlight the importance of oceans and the role they play in the life of all citizens. Commemoration of National Marine Week takes place during the second week of October annually.

Due to the substantial and increasing impact of pollution in South Africa, particularly plastic pollution that affects all terrestrial, coastal and oceanic ecosystems, the National Marine Week 2018 was held under the theme: "Nature Knows No Waste". The aim was to educate and encourage the general public, particularly the youth, towards curbing the pollution problem. Most pollution originates from land before it gets transported to the coastal areas and the oceans through river systems.

National Strategy for Sustainable Development (NSSD)

Following the World Summit on Sustainable Development held in South Africa in 2002, the then departments of environmental affairs, tourism and foreign affairs were mandated to formulate the NSSD. The first phase of this process culminated in the adoption of the National Framework for Sustainable Development (NFSD) in 2008.

To remain within the prevailing and flexible context, the NFSD strategic priorities were reformulated to form the NSSD. The NSSD builds on the NFSD and a number of existing initiatives by business, government, non-governmental organisations, academia and other key role players to address sustainability issues in South Africa.

The goals of the NSSD are to:

- develop and promote new social and economic goals based on ecological sustainability and build a culture that recognises that socio-economic systems are dependent on and embedded within ecosystems

- increase awareness and understanding of the value of ecosystem services to human well-being
- ensure effective integration of sustainability concerns into all policies, planning and decision-making at national, provincial and local levels
- ensure effective integration and collaboration across all functions and sectors
- monitor, evaluate and report performance and progress in respect of ecological sustainability.

Mining and Biodiversity Guideline

The Mining and Biodiversity Guideline: Mainstreaming Biodiversity into the Mining Sector is a product of the collaboration between the South African Mining and Biodiversity Forum as well as the departments of Environmental Affairs and Mineral Resources. The guideline seeks to find a balance between economic growth and environmental sustainability and is a key outcome of the Outcome 10 Delivery Agreement.

The Life: State of Biodiversity Report is symbolic of the culmination of 100 years of science in assessing biological resources and highlighting the status of water resources in the country.

The key points in the report are:

- Wetlands, which make up only a little over 2% of the country's footprint, perform irreplaceable functions, such as purifying water and slowing down flood waters. Many wetlands have already been lost; of those which remain, nearly half are endangered.
- Areas with high natural runoff, such as the Drakensberg, the Soutpansberg and the Wolkberg in Limpopo gather and channel the water on which the semi-arid country depends. Only about a fifth of these areas are formally protected.
- All those smaller rivers, which feed into the country's main arteries such as the Orange and the Vaal rivers, are needed to keep water supplies in good health.
- Nearly a fifth of the coastline has some form of development within 100 m off the shoreline, which means nature's buffers against storm surges and rising seas may have been stripped away and paved over in parts. This puts people and property at risk in the face of climate change. Coastal and inshore

ecosystems are more threatened than offshore marine ecosystems.

- Further out to sea, offshore ecosystems are the most poorly protected of all South Africa's ecosystems. Yet, these are the lifeblood for healthy and productive fisheries. Marine protected areas (MPAs) are essential for keeping both the ecosystems and the fisheries safe.
- Biodiversity stewardship programmes, where private landowners enter into an agreement with State conservation bodies to protect a section of their land and biodiversity, are making headway, in terms of national protected area targets. This is more affordable than when the State buys land for conservation purposes. With modest increases in resources, this scheme could make an even larger contribution.
- Some parts of the country have lost more natural habitat than others. If Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and North West keep losing natural landscapes to cultivation, mining and urban expansion at the current rate, these provinces will have almost no natural habitat left outside protected areas by 2050. Where natural vegetation is being converted to other land uses at a high rate, it is important to use maps of biodiversity-priority areas to guide decisions about where best to locate development.
- With an uncertain and extreme climate in the future, natural habitats should be kept healthy so they can support functional, stable landscapes in the long term, which can then better support human activities. Scientists have drawn up a new national map that identifies areas that are important for climate change resilience and which need to be kept intact.
- South Africa has over 2 000 plant species that are used for medicinal purposes, about a third of which are traded commercially; some are threatened.
- Invasive alien plants increased their footprint in South Africa in about a decade. The country loses about R6,5 billion worth of ecosystem services to them each year.
- Scientists have made great strides in mapping and classifying South Africa's ecosystems. This has provided the foundation for meaningful assessment, planning and monitoring of ecosystems. The first maps by which to identify marine and coastal habitat types and wetland ecosystem types have been completed.

Projects, programmes and initiatives

Low carbon and climate resilient economy

South Africa is a Board member of three significant funding bodies: namely the Green Climate Fund (GCF); the World Bank's Climate Investment Fund and the Global Environment Facility.

The memberships enable the country to shape the policies, programming and governance of these respective institutions. The country is also a member of the Partnership for Action on Green Economy.

SANBI and the Development Bank of Southern Africa are accredited as South African Direct Access Entities of the GCF.

The increasing frequency and intensity of extreme weather events around South Africa – from flash flooding in some parts of the country to devastating drought in other parts, has prompted the government to sign the Paris Agreement to Combat Climate Change as an acknowledgement that the problem requires a global effort.

The country continues to play an active role on the international stage through participation in a number of key multilateral environmental agreements and their associated negotiations.

In addition to finalizing the National Climate Change Adaptation Strategy, the country has developed a draft Climate Change Bill to provide effective national response for both mitigation and adaptation action.

South Africa is also in the process of implementing Phase One of the Greenhouse Gas Emission Reduction system, with carbon budgets already allocated to most of the significant emitters.

South Africa's Green Economy Strategy

There is increasing global recognition that today's economic growth and development trajectory is driven by the worldwide shift towards sustainable green economies.

Through the DEA's Green Economy Strategy, the department continues to work towards promoting equitable, inclusive, sustained and environmentally sound economic growth and social development to the benefit of all.

The Green Economy Strategy has eight key pillars, namely:

- green buildings and the built environment
- sustainable transport and infrastructure
- clean energy and energy efficiency
- natural resource conservation and management
- sustainable waste management
- water management

- sustainable consumption and production
- agriculture food production and forestry.

As outlined in the Integrated Resource Plan, by 2030 the DEA aims to have sliced the country's energy demand significantly through technological innovation, good behavioural practice and public commitment to more efficient, sustainable and equitable energy use.

i In January 2019, South Africa hosted the Third Partnership for Action on Green Economy Ministerial Conference in Cape Town. The conference advanced the agenda of inclusive growth, and the adoption of a low carbon and climate resilient economy, domestically and on the African continent. More than 500 delegates attended the conference, including 15 international Ministers or Deputy Ministers of Environment, Finance, Business, Science and Technology and Development who participated in robust discussions on tools and strategies for shaping greener economies and meeting the Paris Agreement requirements.

The conference was an opportunity for member states to reinforce their commitment to transition to a green and sustainable economy. It was also an opportunity to demonstrate implementation of the tools and strategies required to accelerate, scaling up and sustaining of the momentum to broaden green economy principles in the heart of socio-economic and environmental planning frameworks.

National Green Fund

The Green Fund focuses on innovative projects that require financing to cover funding gaps. The fund has a portfolio of 20 active and two completed investment projects, representing investment of R679,8 million since the fund's inception.

Established in 2011, the Green Fund is a national fund providing catalytic finance for investment in green initiatives that will support South Africa's transition towards a green economy.

The fund is additional and complementary to existing fiscal allocations, focusing on innovative projects that need to cover a funding or financing gap.

The fund is managed by the Development Bank of Southern Africa on behalf of the DEA.

Over the medium term, the Green Fund is expected to receive additional allocations from the economic competitiveness and support package of R95 million in 2018/19, R111 million in 2019/20 and R117.1 million in 2020/21. Direct investment into projects, including co-investments and additional support

realised thus far, amount to R285 million, with contributions from the private sector amounting to R91 million.

Drawing investment from the private sector is one of the key mandates of the fund. As investments begin to show favourable returns, it is expected that private sector investors will invest without any state involvement. As a result, direct investment is expected to exceed R500 million over the medium term.

Over 1 600 direct job opportunities and at least 11 300 indirect job opportunities have been created. The majority of these job opportunities are created under the investment projects portfolio. More than 7 400 individuals have been directly trained and capacitated in the area of green skills.

Sustainable Development and the Green Economy

South Africa continues to play an instrumental role within other global coordination mechanisms.

The final adoption of the Paris Climate Change in December 2015 represented a major step forward in international cooperation towards sustainable green, low-carbon and climate-resilient economies globally. During the Paris negotiating process, South Africa played a key role as Chair of the Group of 77 plus China, representing 134 developing countries, and as lead negotiator for the Africa group.

In April 2016, South Africa joined 174 other countries in New York as a proud signatory to the Paris Agreement. The DEA has started domestic ratification processes to enable the entry into force of the agreement in 2020.

This new legal framework will guide international efforts to limit greenhouse gas emissions, and enable the transition to climate resilient societies and economies, particularly through the commitment by developed countries to provide financial, technology and capacity building support to developing countries in their effort to address the climate change challenge.

In the lead-up to the Paris climate change negotiations, South Africa submitted its Intended Nationally Determined Contribution (INDC) to the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC). South Africa's INDC is guided by the National Climate Change Response Policy and outlines the national goals for the country's adaptation effort; and it clearly outlines that South Africa will peak and plateau its greenhouse gas emissions by 2030.

Managing waste

The Waste Management Bureau was established in 2016 in terms of the Nema. The bureau is tasked with promoting and facilitating the minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste by providing specialist advice and support for the development of integrated waste management plans for industry and municipalities. The bureau is also tasked with monitoring the implementation of industry waste management plans, and managing the disbursement of revenue generated from charges for waste management. To carry out these and other related activities, the bureau received an allocation of R1.2 billion over the medium term.

Green Deeds Good

In March 2019, the government launched the Good Green Deeds Programme to mobilise every citizen, and social partners to act now to be a Good Samaritan for Green Deeds.

The programme is led by the DEA and aims to promote environmental actions that take into consideration sustainable living practices. At the centre of this campaign are principles of environmental justice, an understanding that becoming environmentally conscious starts with one small action, and one small action can go on to inspire a global change. South African citizens have to work together to restore and maintain Mother Nature's majesty.

Climate Change Response Policy



On 8 March 2019, President Cyril Ramaphosa unveiled Billy Bin, the cheery green mascot who is passionate about keeping the environment clean. Billy Bin will be a constant reminder to all South Africans that the responsibility to keep South Africa clean lies with them.

The National Climate Change Response Policy is guided by the vision of the NDP of a transition to an inclusive, equitable, low-carbon and climate-resilient economy and society by 2030.

By 2030, South Africa will have an efficient, lower-carbon public transport system that makes everyday use of private vehicles an unnecessary extravagance.

The development of the first phase of desired emission reduction objectives and carbon budgets are well underway. The Carbon Budget system will be introduced in five-year phases – an initial phase from 2016 to 2020, and the subsequent phases from 2021 onwards.

Priority focus areas are communities most vulnerable to the impacts of climate change, namely the indigent, rural dwellers and women.

Given its demonstrated capacity, SANBI has been appointed the national implementing entity of the Global Adaptation Fund.

Pilot projects include the Greater uMgeni Catchment area in KwaZulu-Natal, the Mopani District in Limpopo and the Namaqua District in Northern Cape.

These projects, to the value of US\$10 million, include the enhancement of early warning systems, protecting local communities from extreme weather events, and promoting climate smart agriculture practices.

The SAWS continues to host the Global Atmospheric Watch Station at the Cape Point, one of only three in Africa. This network arose from the need to understand and control the increasing influence of human activity on the global atmosphere and provide climate change information and services.

People and parks

South Africa is home to more than nine million hectares of protected areas network, which includes national parks, nature reserves and world heritage sites, equating to about 8% of the country's land.

These protected areas, among other things, serve as sites for conserving South Africa's ecosystems, protecting high biodiversity value and providing ecosystem services. Most of these protected areas are geographically located in rural areas, forming an integral system with rural communities whose livelihoods and cultures are closely dependent on by these communities.

Wildlife economy

South Africa is the third most biologically diverse country in the world, and therefore has one of the largest natural capital assets. This biodiversity is not only economically viable to the

economic wellbeing of the country but can be used as a vehicle for social upliftment.

The country's biodiversity comes with a number of challenges, ranging from poaching to overexploitation. The Wildlife Economy in South Africa is centred on the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources, including biodiversity-derived products for trade and bio-prospecting, the hunting industry, agriculture and agro-processing of indigenous crops and vegetables and livestock breeds and indigenous marine resources and fisheries.

The focus of the Wildlife Economy is centred on the socio-economic benefits of eco-tourism, co-managed conservation areas and ancillary services to protected areas.

Harvesting indigenous biological resources is a significant source of income for communities. In many cases, one harvester supports an entire household, but the overdependence on these have led to the depletion and at the extreme the extinction of some of the biodiversity.

For example, the existing commercial market for trade in South African bitter aloe, or *Aloe ferox* is well established, as is the trade in *Pelargonium sidoides*, buchu, rooibos, honey bush, Devil's Claw and crocodile fat/oil. These indigenous biological resources are predominantly used in the manufacturing of herbal medicines, cosmetics, food flavours and fragrances.

Additional products with commercial potential for industrial or pharmaceutical application are micro-organisms, marine organisms, gums and resins, and venoms.

Other significant drivers of the biodiversity economy include trophy hunting and the associated industry of taxidermy, sale of live game and sale of game meat. Further opportunities exist in the sale of game meat and skins for leather, bones and horns.

Another example of biodiversity-based industry is in silk production. Other biodiversity-based products include bee-keeping products (honey, wax, propolis and royal jelly), Mopane worms, and ostrich egg shells and feathers.

Role players

South African National Biodiversity Institute

In support of the NDP, government is working through SANBI to spearhead an innovative programme of work on analysing ecological infrastructure and costing natural capital. This

body of knowledge will empower the DEA to make informed development-related decisions.

SANBI is a respected authority in research and has an unmatched research record in the indigenous, naturalised and alien flora of southern Africa and beyond.

Its research management covers systematics and collections expansion, conservation and applied biodiversity science, and climate change. SANBI is also responsible for ensuring that biodiversity knowledge influences policy, management and decision making.

Its biome programmes, which focus on South Africa's biodiversity hotspots, ensure that the country's most important biodiversity regions such as the grasslands, wetlands and succulent Karoo are protected in a sustainable and beneficial way.

SANBI is increasingly embracing biodiversity in its broadest sense through the inclusion of the country's fauna as part of its taxonomic research mandate. It is coordinating a catalogue of all South Africa's species (at least 100 000), including animals, through the South African Tree of Life Project.

The institute operates environmental education programmes within its national botanical gardens, while outreach greening programmes focus on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

SANBI is South Africa's official body for facilitating access to the Adaptation Fund, set up to help developing countries cope with climate change. It was established by the parties to the Kyoto Protocol of the UNFCCC to finance concrete adaptation projects and programmes in developing countries that are parties to the protocol.

The Department of Science and Technology, the DEA, the National Research Foundation and SANBI signed a business transfer agreement to enable the transfer of the national zoological gardens in Pretoria from the National Research Foundation to SANBI with effect from 1 April 2018.

For this purpose, amounts of R69,7 million in the 2018/19 financial year, R73.6 million in the 2019/20 financial year and R77.6 million in the 2020/21 financial year are being shifted from the foundation to the institute.

Managing oceans and coastal conservation

The department continues to support annual research voyages to Antarctica, Marion Island and Gough Island.

Servicing the contract with African Marine Solutions for the manning and operation of two research vessels, SA Agulhas II and SA Algoa, is one of the major cost drivers in the Oceans and Coasts programme, amounting to a projected R557 million over the medium term.

Implementing the Oceans Economy Strategy forms part of Operation Phakisa, a fast results delivery programme launched by government in 2014. An estimated R311.1 million is provided over the MTEF period in the Oceans and Coasts programme for implementing the oceans economy strategy, which includes activities in marine transport and manufacturing, offshore oil and gas exploration, aquaculture, marine protection services, ocean governance, small harbours, and coastal and marine tourism.

South African Weather Service

The SAWS provides useful and innovative weather, climate and related products and services by:

- enhancing observational data and communications networks
- developing and managing talent within the sector
- enhancing collaborative partnerships and disseminating weather services products to their users
- using cutting-edge technology to convert data into meaningful products and services for risk mitigation
- advancing the science of meteorology, research and relevant applications
- enhancing fiscal discipline and resource mobilisation to ensure sustainability.

In its continued efforts to carry out its legal mandate, the work of SAWS is guided by four key strategic goals:

- ensuring the continued relevance of the organisation in delivering meteorological- related products and services in compliance with all applicable regulatory frameworks
- ensuring effective management of stakeholder, partner and key client relations
- addressing the short-term viability and long-term sustainability of the entity's revenue and ensuring continued fiscal discipline

- ensuring the availability of strategy-driven human capital capacity for the performance of the SAWS.

In an effort to combat climate change, the SAWS recently adopted the approach of building "a WeatherSMART nation". This is expected to enhance the early warning system to ensure that climate and weather data, products and applications are available to all South Africans.

Environmental resources

National botanical gardens

SANBI manages the 10 national botanical gardens, classified as conservation gardens, in seven of South Africa's nine provinces. Together, they conserve more than 7 500 ha of natural vegetation and associated biodiversity within their boundaries.

The national botanical gardens are natural escapes close to some of the country's urban centres, offering visitors a taste of the country's uniquely rich and colourful biodiversity. They feature facilities such as restaurants, function rooms and conference venues and include activities such as hikes, picnics and shopping.

- The botanical gardens are:
- Kirstenbosch, Cape Town
 - Pretoria, Tshwane
 - Harold Porter, Betty's Bay
 - Walter Sisulu, Roodepoort
 - Hantam, Nieuwoudtville
 - Free State, Bloemfontein
 - Karoo Desert, Worcester
 - KwaZulu-Natal, Pietermaritzburg
 - Lowveld, Nelspruit
 - Kwekwe, East London.

National Herbarium

The National Herbarium, situated within the Pretoria National Botanical Garden, houses over one million scientific plant specimens in southern Africa.

The Crompton Herbarium in Cape Town focuses mainly on the flora of the winter rainfall region of southern Africa, while the KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium in Durban primarily focuses on

the flora of the subtropical eastern region of South Africa, in particular the flora of the province.

Protected areas

The Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD), founded in 1992 at the Rio Summit, is the legally binding agreement on the use and conservation of biological diversity.

The CBD provides the framework for 196 parties to guide efforts to conserve and sustainably use biological diversity and equitably share the benefits from the use of genetic resources. In October 2010, the parties approved the Strategic Plan for Biodiversity for 2011 – 2020, including 20 Aichi Targets. There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN).

South Africa has 528 protected areas, of which 20 are marine, totalling 7.5 million ha or 6.2% of the country's land area.

Over the medium term, the DEA aims to increase the percentage of land under conservation to 16 121 794 ha in 2018/19 – improving the size of state-managed protected areas that are effectively managed to 90% (5 873 300 ha out of 6 525 889 ha).

South Africa aims to expand the conservation areas under formal protection to the international standard of 10% of the total area of the country. The DEA works closely with landowners to ensure their participation in the Stewardship Programme, which allows land owners to use their land for biodiversity and conservation purposes. This is aimed at expanding the country's conservation estate.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and the maintenance of genetic sources.

Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward Islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive, uninhabited and underdeveloped.

Access is strictly controlled, with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Wilderness areas include the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

South African National Parks

SANParks' primary mandate is to oversee the conservation of South Africa's biodiversity, landscapes and associated heritage assets through a system of national parks. Its mandate is based on the following core values:

- conservation management through the national parks system
- constituency building and people-focused eco-tourism management
- corporate governance and sound business and operational management.

SANParks manages a system of parks, which represents the indigenous fauna, flora, landscapes and associated cultural heritage of the country.

SANParks is responsible for 21 national parks in seven of the nine provinces of South Africa, with a total area of just over 4 million ha and comprising 67% of the protected areas under state management.

The national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld Transfrontier Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Garden Route (Tsitsikamma, Knysna and Wilderness) National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Karoo National Park
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Kruger National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Marakele National Park
- Mokala National Park

- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Table Mountain National Park (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)
- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- West Coast National Park.

Tourism activities within the parks include self-drive safaris, game-viewing, accommodation tariffs, adventure activities such as guided walks and hiking, birdwatching, 4x4 trails, sightseeing, cultural and historical experiences, mountain biking, golf, canoeing and swimming.

The organisation is working to increase the number of visitors to national parks from 5.9 million in 2016/17 to 6.5 million in 2019/20, with the aim of increasing commercial activities revenue from R1.4 billion in 2017/18 to R1.6 billion in 2019/20.

Spending on tourism infrastructure improvements and extensions is projected at R422 million over the medium term.

SANParks will also manage and monitor protected areas and raise awareness about national parks through the biodiversity and conservation programme, with an allocation of R893 million, growing at an average annual rate of 3.4%.

SANParks plays a key role in employment creation through implementation of the EPWP.

Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within a TFCA ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural resource management areas to hunting-concession areas. Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources.

Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible. TFCAs facilitate and promote regional peace, cooperation and socio-economic development.

The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

The seven TFCAs are:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld (Namibia, South Africa)
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa, Zimbabwe)
- Greater Mapungubwe
- Kavango-Zambezi (Angola, Botswana, Namibia, Zambia, Zimbabwe)
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park (Botswana, South Africa)
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area (Mozambique, South Africa, Swaziland)
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area (Lesotho, South Africa).

Biosphere reserves

A biosphere designation is given by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) to special landscapes where people are collaborating to ensure their environmental integrity as the basis for their economic development. Biosphere reserves are nominated by their governments for inclusion in the Man and the Biosphere Programme.

Whether they are terrestrial, freshwater, coastal or marine in nature, all are experimental areas where different approaches to integrated environmental management are tested. This helps to deepen knowledge of what works in conservation and sustainable development.

South Africa's biosphere reserves include:

- Vhembe, situated in the north-east of Limpopo, which includes the northern part of the Kruger National Park; the Makuleke Wetland, which is protected under the Ramsar Convention; the Soutpansberg and Blouberg biodiversity hot spots; and the Makgabeng Plateau.
- The 100 000-ha Kogelberg Reserve on the country's southern coast is in the middle of the Cape Floral Region and home to 1 880 different plant species, 77 of which are found only in this region.
- The Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve starts in Cape Town in the southern suburb of Diep River and stretches up the west coast as far as the Berg River, encompassing parts of the Cape Floral Region. The reserve includes the Ramsar-protected Langebaan Lagoon as well as Dassen Island, which is home to a penguin colony.

- The Cape Winelands Biosphere Reserve includes a part of

i The animal collections of the National Zoological Gardens are the direct responsibility of the Animal Collection and Conservation Department. The department operates in two facilities: the main facility in Tshwane and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, 200 km north of Tshwane.

The facility in Tshwane is an 84-ha ex situ-based facility, which is home to approximately 5 000 different mammals, birds, fish, reptiles, amphibians and invertebrates, comprising of around 600 species and subspecies. One of its unique features is that it has the largest inland aquarium in Africa, which also has a marine fish component. It is also the only zoo in South Africa that is home to koalas, okapi, Komodo dragons and forest buffalo, to name but a few.

The second facility, the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre (MBCC), has both an ex situ and in situ component. The centre is 1 394 ha in size and hosts approximately 830 animals of 42 different species and subspecies directly in its care. In the reserve component, 105 tree species, 71 grass species and 173 free-ranging bird species have also been identified. In 2007, the MBCC was proclaimed as a protected area as a Fossil Hominid Site of SA: Mokopan Valley.

the Cape Floral Region, as well as the wine-growing region.

- In the north there is the Waterberg Biosphere Reserve, an area of some 400 000 ha in Limpopo. It is an important catchment area for the Limpopo Basin, with four large rivers originating within its borders – the Lephalale, Mokolo, Matlabas and Magalakwena rivers.
- The Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve stretches from the Kruger National Park to the Blyde River Canyon. It is an important conservation area as it covers three biomes.
- The Gouritz Cluster Biosphere Reserve is recognised by UNESCO in terms of the Man and Biosphere Programme.

World heritage sites

A UNESCO World Heritage Site is listed by the organisation as being of special cultural or physical significance.

It catalogues, names and conserves sites of outstanding cultural or natural importance to the common heritage of humanity.

While each World Heritage Site remains part of the legal territory of the province wherein the site is located, UNESCO

considers it in the interest of the international community to preserve each site.

For a site to be deemed as a world heritage site, it has to be recognised as having global historical or environmental significance, signify a phenomenal achievement of humanity, or reveal ancient civilisations. The recognition allows the country to access funds for conservation from the World Heritage Fund. To be accepted onto the list, a country must meet stringent criteria and show how the site will be conserved.

South Africa has 10 world heritage sites proclaimed by UNESCO:

- Robben Island: situated 11 kilometres (km) offshore from Cape Town, the island is most famous as the place where Nelson Mandela was imprisoned. It is now home to the world-renowned Robben Island Museum and has become a popular tourist attraction.
- The iSimangaliso Wetland Park was listed as South Africa's first World Heritage Site in December 1999 in recognition of its natural beauty and unique global values. The 332 000-ha park contains three major lake systems, eight interlinking ecosystems, 700-year-old fishing traditions, most of South Africa's remaining swamp forests, Africa's largest estuarine system, 526 bird species and 25 000-year-old coastal dunes – among the highest in the world. The name iSimangaliso means "miracle" and "wonder". The park also has four Ramsar sites.
- The Cradle of Humankind consisting of the hominid fossil sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai. The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung skull fossil site in North West and the Mokopane Valley in Limpopo. The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils that provide evidence of human evolution over the past 3,5 million years. Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are encased in a bed of dolomite deposited around 2,5 billion years ago. In April 2010, a new species of hominid, *Australopithecus sediba*, estimated to be two million years old, was discovered in the Cradle of Humankind.

- The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site) is a world heritage site covering 242 813 ha (2 428 km²). The park spans parts of both South Africa and Lesotho. The park includes the Royal Natal National Park, a provincial park, and the Drakensberg National Park, which covers part of the Drakensberg, the highest mountain in southern Africa. Under the Ramsar Convention, the park is in the List of Wetlands of International Importance.
- Mapungubwe Heritage Site: in September 2011, the DEA, SANParks and Coal of Africa Limited signed an historical Memorandum of Agreement (MoA) as part of the environmental authorisation issued in accordance with Nema of 1998, to ensure the integrity of the Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape World Heritage Site. According to the MoA, the integrity of the World Heritage Site will be maintained through comprehensive biodiversity offset programmes, thereby optimising benefits to local communities.
- Cape Floral Region, the smallest of the six recognised floral kingdoms of the world, is an area of extraordinarily high diversity and home to more than 9 000 vascular plant species, of which 69% are endemic. Much of this diversity is associated with the fynbos biome. The economical worth of fynbos biodiversity, based on harvests of fynbos products (e.g. wildflowers) and ecotourism, is estimated to be in the region of R77 million a year. In July 2015, UNESCO approved the extension of the Cape Floral Region Protected Areas World Heritage Site. At the time of inscription, the site was made up of eight protected areas comprising about 553 000 ha. The eight protected areas are located in the Eastern Cape and the Western Cape. The extension brings the size of the World Heritage Site to 1 094 742 ha and increases the number of protected area clusters making up the Cape Floral Region from eight to 13.
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape: The site covers 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-west of South Africa. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or lharu oms.
- Vredefort Dome, about 120 km south-west of Johannesburg, is a representative part of a larger meteorite impact structure,

or astrobleme. Dating back more than two million years, it is the oldest astrobleme yet found on Earth. With a radius of 190 km, it is also the largest and the most deeply eroded. Vredefort Dome bears witness to the world's greatest known single energy release event, which had devastating global effects including, according to some scientists, major evolutionary changes. It provides evidence of the Earth's geological history and is crucial to understanding of the evolution of the planet. Despite the importance of impact sites to the planet's history, geological activity on the Earth's surface has led to the disappearance of evidence from most of them, and Vredefort is the only example to provide a full geological profile of an astrobleme below the crater floor.

- The Khomani Cultural Landscape covers 959 100 ha, forming part of the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park and including the whole Kalahari Gemsbok National Park, associated with the former San hunter-gatherers. It is a vast desert area associated with Khomani San culture since the Stone Age.

10th World heritage site for South Africa

The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains were added to the prestigious World Heritage List in July 2018, becoming the 10th World Heritage Site for South Africa. The mountains were inscribed at the 42nd UNESCO World Heritage Committee session held in Manama, Bahrain.

Situated in Mpumalanga Province, the site comprises 40% of the Barberton Greenstone Belt, one of the world's oldest geological structures. The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains represent the best-preserved succession of volcanic and sedimentary rock dating back 3.25 to 3.6 billion years. It features meteor-impact fallback breccias resulting from the impact of meteorites formed just after the Great Bombardment (4.6 to 3.8 billion years ago). It has attracted researchers from all over the world because of its most exposed layers of rock formations. Scientists found fossilised bacteria under thin layers of rock thought to be 3.2 billion years old. The intensive work which culminated in a ground breaking research on the site and to nominate it for world heritage recognition started in the early 2000s.

The recognition by UNESCO is expected to unlock the



In South Africa, numerous private bodies are involved in conservation activities. More than 400 organisations concentrate on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, while more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations concentrate on the conservation of the country's fauna and flora. These include the:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- EWT
- Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- Southern African Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa
- World Wildlife Fund of South Africa.

potential of Makhonjwa Mountains and contribute to socio-economic development, attesting to the strategic value of heritage in economic development. It is also expected to boost local eco-tourism development and provide job creation opportunities for rural communities.

Before this new addition, South Africa was tied with Morocco and Egypt with nine World Heritage sites each.

Habitat and wildlife management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies; provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected

in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary landowner in conservation. Landowners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.

Wetlands

The IUCN identifies wetlands as the third most important support system on Earth.

Wetlands make up only 2.4% of South Africa's surface area but they are responsible for a disproportionately high value of "ecological infrastructure" that provides critical ecosystem services such as water purification and flood regulation, among others.

Wetlands support a range of specialised plant, insect and mammal life and also supply food, grazing, building and craft material. They are able to improve water quality, reduce flood impacts, control erosion and sustain river flows. Of special importance is the role wetlands play in ensuring a steady supply of clean water for communities and helping government save hundreds of millions of rands that would be required to set up purification plants/facilities.

South Africa was one of the first six countries to become a signatory to the Convention on Wetlands of International Importance, called the Ramsar Convention, when it came into force in 1975. It is an intergovernmental treaty that provides the framework for national action and international cooperation for the conservation and wise use of wetlands and their resources.

South Africa has 22 Ramsar sites.

The DEA is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme, which ensures that South Africa's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

South Africa's Ramsar sites include:

- Barberspan
- Blesbokspruit Nature Reserve
- De Hoop Vlei
- De Mond (Heuningnes Estuary)
- Kosi Bay
- Langebaan
- Makuleke Wetlands
- Ndumo Game Reserve
- Ntsikeni Nature Reserve
- Nylsvley Nature Reserve
- Orange River Mouth Wetland
- Prince Edward Islands in Antarctica
- Seekoeivlei
- St Lucia
- the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park
- Verlorenvlei Nature Reserve
- Wilderness Lakes.

South Africa is seen as a leader in the rehabilitation of wetlands. The damage done to wetlands can be reversed, as is seen at Rietvlei Dam in Gauteng.

Government has pledged more than R75 million to rehabilitating wetlands. Rehabilitation is ongoing, with attention given to poverty-stricken areas.

World Wetlands Day is annually celebrated on 2 February. The 2019 theme for the World Wetlands Day was: "Wetlands and Climate Change". Wetlands are important ecosystem as they provide a number of benefits, not only to the natural environment but also a human being. The aim of the theme was to demonstrate that, wetlands are the planet's most effective carbon sinks or storage and represent an unrealised potential for climate mitigation

The theme is in line with the 2030 Sustainable Development Agenda's goals, especially the Sustainable Development Goal 13, which states that "take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts" particularly its targets 13.1 which advocates for "strengthening resilience and adaptive capacity to climate-related hazards and natural disasters in all countries".

The theme also responds to article 2 of the Paris Agreement

which calls for increasing the ability to adapt to the adverse impacts of climate change and foster climate resilience and low greenhouse gas emissions development, in a manner that does not threaten food production and livelihoods of communities.

Marine protected areas

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. They are also used to develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

Government shares joint responsibility for South Africa's MPAs with SANParks and Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife.

South Africa's MPAs include:

- Aliwal Shoal, KwaZulu-Natal
- Betty's Bay, Western Cape
- Bird Island, Eastern Cape
- De Hoop, Western Cape
- Dwesa-Cwebe, Eastern Cape
- False Bay, Western Cape
- Goukamma, Western Cape
- Hluleka, Eastern Cape
- iSimangaliso, KwaZulu-Natal
- Langebaan Lagoon, Sixteen Mile Beach, Malgas Island, Marcus Island, Jutten Island, Western Cape
- Pondoland, Eastern Cape.
- Robberg, Western Cape
- Sardinia Bay, Eastern Cape
- Stilbaai, Western Cape
- Table Mountain, Western Cape
- Trafalgar, KwaZulu-Natal
- Tsitsikamma, Western Cape.

Zoological gardens

Established in 1899 in Pretoria, and given national status in 1916, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa is the largest zoo in the country and the only one with national status. Over 600 000 people visit it every year.

The 85-ha NZG is the largest zoo in the country and houses 3 117 specimen of 209 mammal species, 1 358 specimen of 202

bird species, 3 871 specimen of 190 fish species, 388 specimen of four invertebrate species, 309 specimen of 93 reptile species, and 44 specimen of seven amphibian species.

It plays a major role in the conservation of wildlife, maintaining one of the largest animal collections in Africa.

The species are managed across two facilities stretching into Gauteng (Pretoria) and Limpopo (Mokopane). About 70% of the species are of African origin and 30% of global representation.

As a member of the World Association of Zoos and Aquariums and the African Association of Zoos and Aquaria, the NZG participates in several endangered species management programmes and successfully breeds several endangered species of both continental and global significance.

Among the endangered species the NZG contributes to conserving are the cheetah, rhino, ground hornbill, red-billed oxpecker and several endangered antelope species.

The animal collections of the NZG are the direct responsibility of the Animal Collection and Conservation Department. The department operates in two facilities: the main facility in Tshwane and the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, 200 km north of Tshwane.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens' core business is the accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It also plays an important role in conservation projects of both indigenous and internationally endangered animals. The zoo joins other conservation organisations in programmes involving:

- wattled crane recovery
- amphibian conservation
- ground hornbill breeding and off-site surveys
- vulture conservation
- chimpanzee conservation with the Jane Goodall Institute.

The Endangered Wildlife Trust (EWT) is a major partner.

Mitchell Park in Durban is the country's second oldest zoo after the NZG. There are about 30 projects on the cards for the zoo, including cheetah and chimpanzee enclosures.

Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa.

The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering 1 333 ha.

The centre supplement the NZG's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and its own animal collection.

The Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as the lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino.

The De Wildt Cheetah and Wildlife Centre near Pretoria, is best known for its captive breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list in the South African Red Data Book – Terrestrial Mammals in 1986.

De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species.

The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation in coat pattern and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs.

It has donated breeding nuclei of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures.

The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Limpopo was established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah.

The centre caters for, among other animals, five species of vulture: Cape griffins as well as white-backed, hooded, whiteheaded and lappet-faced vultures.

The centre is also known for its wild dog breeding programme.

The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme includes the rare black-footed cat, vulnerable African wild cat, ground hornbills (in cooperation with the NZG), the bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal, sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there. .

Aquariums and oceanariums

There are aquariums in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, Durban and East London.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG in Pretoria is the

largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish.

It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water and the only inland aquarium housing ragged-tooth sharks.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin research centre, various smaller tanks containing 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters along the Cape coast.

The aquarium at uShaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water species, and is the fifth largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet and Wild World.

Sea World has a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium, the largest dolphinarium in Africa.

Snake and reptile parks

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and deadly venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers. Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park at the NZG houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations.

The Pure Venom Reptile Farm is one of the largest of South Africa's reptile parks. It is inland from Shelly Beach, on KwaZulu-Natal's South Coast.

The CrocRiver Enviro Park in Nelspruit is the largest facility of its type in Africa. The park offers, among other things, turtle,

crocodile and fish ponds; the water monitor lizard pond; and the Desert House, in which a desert-like atmosphere has been created, and which is home to the reptile gallery where indigenous and exotic reptiles from all over the world are displayed.

Khamai Reptile Centre's primary aims are conservation, breeding of endangered reptiles and education. Located outside Hoedspruit in Mpumalanga, it offers a close-up look at many local as well as exotic snakes, crocodiles and lizards.

Managing environmental resources

Wildlife protection

The Convention on the International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) states that big cats, which are among the most widely recognised and admired animals, are facing many and varied threats caused mostly by human activities worldwide.

South Africa adheres to the principle of sustainable utilisation of natural resources, as well as principles set out in the NDP aimed at creating a climate-resilient society while growing the economy and increasing jobs. As such, a range of measures have been introduced to ensure that lion, leopard and cheetah populations are conserved and properly managed. This includes the implementation of a Biodiversity Management Plan for the African Lion. The Scientific Authority of South Africa conducted a Non-Detriment Finding (NDF) as required by CITES. The final NDF was published for implementation in January 2018.

The NDF for lion states that there are currently no major threats to the wild and managed lion populations in South Africa, although the management of re-introduced wild lion needs some improvement. Minor, but non-detrimental threats include over-utilisation, disease, poaching and conflict with communities around protected areas.

Wildlife crime not only threatens natural resources, but also the economy through financial burdens and the loss of economic and development opportunities. As a country richly endowed with natural resources, South Africa is not immune to these challenges with criminal syndicates targeting iconic species, such as the cycad, rhino, elephant and lion, as well

as species not often considered as being under threat – birds, tortoises, lizards and snakes.

The declaration of wildlife crime as a priority crime in South Africa has resulted in a multidisciplinary, multi-sectoral approach focused on collaboration through our national security structure. This involves border and customs officials, the National Prosecuting Authority, the Police and institutions such as the Airports Company of South Africa which manages international airports.

The country has also introduced the development of critical skills aimed at increasing its capacity to detect and investigate these crimes. The DEA is currently working with World Wide Fund for Nature on a project to increase the country's ability to tackle wildlife trafficking. This project, funded by the US Department of State's Bureau of International & Law Enforcement Affairs, focuses on the development of further training materials to bolster the country's national compliance and enforcement programme, including an e-learning platform for officials, audio visual materials, specific curriculum and manuals.

Traveller awareness material has also been developed to highlight the threat that wildlife crime poses to the rich biodiversity and encouraging people not to support the illegal trade in wildlife.

The DEA's Environmental Management Inspectors (EMIs) check consignments of wildlife for exports from South Africa to ensure that they meet all legal requirements. About 300 legal wildlife-related consignments are exported/imported on a monthly basis at the OR Tambo International Airport. The EMIs inspected and endorsed approximately 4 200 CITES permits during 2017.

The SARS K9 unit at O R Tambo International Airport use specialist sniffer dogs to detect attempts to smuggle wildlife into South Africa.

Rhino poaching

Combating rhino poaching remains a national priority, and as such, all the relevant government departments will continue their close collaboration to ensure that this iconic species is conserved for generations to come. Rhino poaching has been declared a National Priority Crime, and government continues to

work as a team in the implementation of the Integrated Strategic Management of Rhinoceros.

This is a multi-sectoral, interdisciplinary approach involves other stakeholders such as SANParks, the Department of Home Affairs, the Department of Defence (as a leader of the SANDF), the South African Police Service and the Hawks, the State Security Agency, the South African Revenue Service, the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, and the provincial conservation authorities.

South Africa's largest game reserve, the Kruger National Park, now houses a court which will combat rhino poaching. The Skukuza Regional Court periodically sits once a week.

For the third consecutive year, there has been a decline in rhino poaching, particularly in national parks, and it is the first time in five years that the annual figure is under 1000.

During 2018, the number of rhino poached countrywide decreased to 769. This is a decrease of 259 rhino compared to the previous year when 1 028 rhino were killed for their horns.

A total of 421 rhino were poached in the Kruger National Park, 16.5% less than the 504 poached in the previous year. The number of poacher activities in the Kruger National Park, however, declined by only two recorded activities during the year, with a total of 2 620 incursions and 125 contacts recorded during 2018.

From 1 January to 31 December 2018, a total of 365 alleged rhino poachers and 36 alleged rhino horn traffickers were arrested nationally.

A total of 229 alleged poachers were arrested inside and adjacent to the Kruger National Park, 40 more than those arrested in the previous year.

During 2018, a total of 104 firearms were recovered in anti-poaching operations inside the Kruger National Park and a further 74 firearms were recovered in operations/investigations linked to the park.

Collaboration between the different law enforcement role players such as the conservation and environmental authorities, the South African Police Service (SAPS) Stock Theft and Endangered Species Unit, the Hawks and SAPS Crime Intelligence during 2018, is having a positive impact. This improved cooperation is benefitting both anti-poaching

and crime prevention operations as well as focusing efforts on specific high priority investigations.

There are currently 318 rhino poaching-related cases on the court roll, involving 645 accused and 897 charges. About 275 of these cases are trial-ready.

From January 2018 to December 2018, the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) obtained convictions in 78 of the 82 cases that went to trial. This represents a 95.1% conviction rate. The 78 cases involved 135 accused, all of whom were convicted of rhino poaching and related matters and this translated into over 500 years imprisonment in terms of sentencing in respect of these guilty verdicts.

Operations conducted during 2018 between Customs, the South African Revenue Service, Hawks, the Green Scorpions, Airport Security and other role-players saw the arrest of seven Chinese and four South African citizens and the confiscation of 78 rhino horns, one rhino horn sculpture, two bangles made from rhino horn and 27 pieces of rhino horn.

The lifting of the moratorium on the domestic trade in rhino horn does not mean that rhino horn in private possession can be sold without a permit. No one is allowed to trade rhino horn (including selling, donating, or in any way acquiring or disposing of a rhino horn) without a permit issued by the DEA as well as relevant possession / transport permits issued by the provincial conservation departments. Commercial international trade in rhino horn is and remains prohibited in terms of the CITES provisions.

Managing rhino populations

The biological management initiative focuses on continued movement of rhinos to expand ranges and support rhino strongholds. In small parks and provincial reserves, the translocation of rhinos seek to mimic how young animals disperse naturally. Within Kruger National Park, the translocation of rhinos from Kruger as part of South Africa's biological management innovations of expanding ranges and establishing additional rhino strongholds are challenged by the emergence of bovine tuberculosis in both black and white rhino, albeit at low incidence.

South Africa's veterinary regulations require several procedures to ensure that translocated rhinos do not serve

as a source of spreading the disease into commercial stock production areas of South Africa. The development of efficient systems to overcome this challenge is in progress.

Even so, innovative biological management have used translocations within Kruger National Park as a mechanism to direct poaching to focus less on cows. This goes hand in hand with initiatives to dehorn rhinos embedded in strategic approaches that target individuals that frequent poaching hotspots, but more importantly, approaches that minimize the losses of cows. Complimenting these interventions are guarding initiatives that focus on regular individual monitoring of individual rhinos. These combinations of interventions seek to maximise the breeding potential of both black and white rhinos.

The integrated initiatives of SANParks to manage its rhino population have had varied successes. Within Kruger National Park the continued onslaught of poaching resulted in a continued decline of rhinos.

International Cooperation

International cooperation remains a critical component of the overall response strategy to halt rhino poaching, and related wildlife crime. South Africa continues to engage countries where rhino horn seizures take place in order to request that samples of the rhino horn DNA be sent to South Africa for analysis in line with the CITES resolutions. This enables the country to link the seized horns to poaching cases and live rhino or rhino horn stockpiles, thus providing key information to further support investigations and understand transit routes.

Towards the end of 2018 the Global High Level commitment to combat wildlife crime was again reinforced during the London Conference on Illegal Wildlife Trade. At this event South Africa pledged to continue the important work of implementing and further enhancing the integrated, multi-disciplinary approach in tackling wildlife crime as a serious organised crime; to ensure closer collaboration with international partners and law-enforcement counterparts and continue to focus efforts on dismantling the more sophisticated operational layers of wildlife smuggling networks.

Marine pollution and sustainability

South Africa has one of the world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism developed the National Contingency Plan for the Prevention and Combating of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport. This includes disposing of, recovering or stabilising spilled oil and rehabilitating the environment.

With 80% of marine pollution emanating from land-based activities, the DEA will be implementing the national Programme of Action for land-based sources of pollution, while refining strategies for combating marine pollution from oil spills.

The department has embarked on a process to adopt a new protocol on land-based sources of marine pollution under the amended Nairobi Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the Western Indian Ocean.

The department has also developed the Cape Zone Oil Spill Plan.

Protecting the coastline

To counter illegal activities along the coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km² Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the then Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery-control officers and 100 honorary fishery-control officers, after the implementation of the Honorary Fishery-Control Officers Policy.

The department took delivery of four environmental protection vessels as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources, namely the Lillian Ngoyi, Ruth First, Victoria Mxenge and Sarah Baartman. They patrol up to the 200 nautical mile limit from the shore and the most remote reaches of the EEZ as well as around the Prince Edward Islands.

The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the Southern African Development Communication coastal states.

The Phakisa Approach

Operation Phakisa was launched in 2014 to enable government to implement its policies and programmes better, faster and more effectively.

The initiative was designed to fast-track the implementation of solutions on critical development issues. This is a unique initiative to address issues highlighted in the NDP Vision 2030 such as poverty, unemployment and inequality.

The department has registered notable progress with regards to Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy; Chemicals and Waste Phakisa, and Operation Phakisa: Biodiversity Economies.

Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy

The department continues to unlock the economic potential of South Africa's oceans, growing the gross domestic product and creating more sustainable jobs – while ensuring that the country's oceans and coastal ecosystems are sustainably managed.

Highlights include the development of a National Guideline Towards the Establishment of Coastal Management Lines. This is intended to minimise risks posed by short and long term coastal processes such as storm surges, erosion and sea level rise. A National Coastal Access Strategy is also being developed to provide guidance around the public's access to closed off beaches.

The Marine Spatial Planning Bill was approved by the National Assembly on 24 April 2018 and is expected to undergo procedures of the National Council of Provinces. The department continued to enhance legislation for the Integrated Coastal and Oceans Management Act or Oceans Act. It has finalised an associated Marine Spatial Planning Framework, and is working on the development of sub-regional marine spatial management plans.

Marine pollution is another challenge that threatens fragile ecosystems. South Africa has a number of measures in place to tackle this problem, including the National Pollution Laboratory operated by the Walter Sisulu University which is expected to start working in the near future. The lab will allow for in depth analysis of the samples that could not be done through mobile laboratories.

In addition, South Africa is amongst the countries that have endorsed the UN Environmental Programme's Clean Seas Campaign. The campaign is aimed at stepping up international, regional and national efforts to combat marine litter. As part of the campaign, the department has announced the piloting of its Source to Sea Initiative – new strategy to investigate and combat pollution, in particular plastic pollution which threatens both freshwater and marine ecosystems.

The oceans have the potential to contribute up to R177 billion to the GDP and create just over one million jobs by 2033.

Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy Marine Protected Areas

The gazettement of a network of 20 new representative Operation Phakisa: Oceans Economy MPAs has increased South Africa's marine ecosystem area under protection in the country's EEZ, from the current 0.4% to 5.4%, to provide protection to 90% of habitat types, as well as contribute to global protection in line with South Africa's international commitments.

The new network strives to support multiple objectives for biodiversity in alignment with oceans economy goals. The new MPAs represent seamounts, submarine canyons, volcanic pinnacles, and a variety of ecosystem types on the shelf, continental margin, and abyss in both the Indian and Atlantic oceans. The new network also provides the first protection for several threatened and fragile ecosystem types, including threatened mud, gravel, and shelf edge habitats and sensitive deep water scleractinian, stylasterine, and soft coral-dominated ecosystem types.

This new network of 20 MPAs will, among other things, contribute to fisheries sustainability, advance marine ecotourism, and will help maintain resilience in ecosystems that are under stress from climate change.

Work on the new approved network of MPAs dates back to 2014, when the South African government endorsed a plan to achieve, as part of Operation Phakisa: Ocean Economy, a viable network of MPAs. South Africa's ocean space, which is one of the most varied in the world, is highly productive with rich biodiversity providing for living and non-living resources that contribute significantly to the country's economy and to job creation.

MPAs provide safe spaces in which fish can breed undisturbed. They are essential to maintain eco-certification of the South African deep-sea trawl fishery. This certification process assesses whether habitat and nursery areas for the hake fishery, are adequately protected. MPAs also contribute to growing South Africa's marine eco-tourism sector by providing undisturbed natural habitat for whales, sharks, seals, dolphins, turtles and seabirds for international and domestic tourists to experience.

An adequate network of MPAs will also provide the basis for ongoing resilience to the impact of climate change. Oceans are an essential component of the climate system, absorbing and transferring heat, and regulating the exchange of carbon dioxide with the atmosphere. With increasing carbon dioxide levels, and rising ocean temperatures, this regulatory capacity is at risk. The network of MPAs will assist in building ecological resilience, and therefore social and economic resilience in the growing ocean economy.

The new MPA network is a product of extensive consultation and negotiation with all stakeholders, which sought to ensure that the network is aligned with relevant policies and priorities for fisheries, aquaculture, tourism, as well as marine mining and oil exploration, while also protecting ecologically important areas.

Operation Phakisa: Biodiversity Economy

South Africa has a multi-faceted approach to the management of its rich natural heritage. The approach focuses on an inclusive, value-chain approach to the development of the biodiversity economy, taking into consideration the fact that communities are the primary custodians of the country's biodiversity.

In the 2018/19 financial year, the department plans to increase the supply of indigenous species by availing at least 500 ha of land for the production of high value species. This will be complemented by ongoing implementation of a game donation and custodianship policy framework.

In line with the President's investment drive, the department plans to launch a Biodiversity Economy Investment Catalogue, that will profile investment-ready biodiversity economy projects.



New Operation Phakisa MPAs:

- Orange Shelf Edge
- Namaqua Fossil Forest
- Namaqua National Park
- Childs Bank
- Benguela Muds
- Cape Canyon
- Robben Island
- Southeast Atlantic Seamounts
- Brown Bank Corals
- Agulhas Bank Complex
- Agulhas Muds
- Southwest Indian Seamounts
- Agulhas Front
- Port Elizabeth Corals
- Addo Elephant National Park
- Amathole Offshore
- Protea Banks
- Aliwal Shoal
- uThukela
- iSimangaliso

Operation Phakisa: Chemicals and Waste

Waste economy has the potential to address inequality, poverty alleviation and create jobs. The department continues to support waste pickers through various programmes such as the Recycling Enterprise Support Programme which has already made a material impact to the lives of 12 black-owned and managed enterprises.

The primary objective of the programme is to provide developmental funding for projects in the form of start-up grants. These projects are either start-up or pre-existing enterprises establishing buy-back centres, material recovery facilities, construction & demolishing solutions and plastic palletisation plants in line with the Operation Phakisa initiatives.

The programme has been allocated a budget R194 million over a three-year period.

With regards to chemicals, Cabinet has recommended that South Africa should ratify the Minamata Convention on Mercury and the Kigali Amendment to the Montreal Protocol on the

Protection of the Ozone Layer. The Kigali amendment will have co-benefits for mitigating climate change and ozone-depletion.

The South African government is also committed to minimize plastic pollution. The department recently conducted a Plastic Material Study and is in the process of consulting with the cosmetics industry to phase out the use of micro beads in cosmetics. Plans are also underway to review the impact of the implementation of plastic bag policies.

In addition, the DEA will continue to work with the packaging sector (paper, glass, plastic and metal) to increase over and above 58% the amount of waste diverted from landfill.

The DEA is expected to launch the Keep South Africa Clean campaign with the aim of mobilizing citizens to become environmentally conscious and create a South Africa free of litter and illegal dumping.

Vessel monitoring

The department is making it obligatory for fishing vessels to have satellite technology on board so that their movements can be monitored.

Five coastal nations in the SADC have taken the innovative step of linking their vessel-monitoring systems. Angola, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa and Tanzania have signed a MoU that will allow them to share information about the movement of licensed boats along the southern African coast.

Chemicals and waste management

South Africa has taken a number of steps to promote environmentally sound management of chemicals and waste throughout the life cycle, including being a party to a range of multilateral environment agreements and an active member in instruments on chemicals and waste. These include the:

- Rotterdam Convention on the Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides in International Trade
- Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants
- Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer
- Basel Convention on the Control of Trans-boundary Movement of Hazardous Wastes

- Strategic Approach to International Chemicals Management, which is governed by the International Conference on Chemicals Management.

South Africa had a significant role in the ongoing negotiations concerning the Intergovernmental Negotiating Committee to Prepare a Globally Legally Binding Instrument on Mercury, including research into coal-dependent power/electric stations and the situational analysis of mercury in the country.

To align fragmented legislation, the department established a National Multi-Stakeholder Committee for Chemicals Management to facilitate coordination.

The National Waste Management Strategy has eight key goals:

- promoting waste minimisation, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste
- ensuring effective and efficient delivery of waste services
- growing the contribution of the waste sector to the green economy
- ensuring that people are aware of the impact of waste on their health, well-being and the environment
- achieving integrated waste management planning
- ensuring sound budgeting and financial management for waste services
- providing measures to rehabilitate contaminated land
- establishing effective compliance with and enforcement of the National Environmental Management: Waste Act of 2008.

The DEA established the Waste Management Bureau in April 2016. The programme is aimed at reducing waste through recycling. The bureau monitors recycling plans, and provides specialist services to government and recycling companies.

Over the medium term, the bureau plans to introduce tyre recycling initiatives, which are set to receive operational funding of R230 million in 2018/19 and R245 million in 2019/20.

The bureau also plans to introduce the recycling enterprise support programme, which will provide support services, training and advice to transporters, storage depot operators and tyre recyclers.

An amount of R155 million over the medium term has been allocated to the plastics programme, which will promote waste minimisation, create awareness in the plastics industry, expand

collector networks and support rural collection through building the capacity of small, medium and micro-enterprises.

The National Regulator for Compulsory Specifications also receives transfers of R22,5 million over the medium term to implement compulsory specifications for plastic bags.

Youth Jobs in Waste and Township Greening Projects

These projects are funded by the DEA through its Environmental Protection and Infrastructure Programme and aim to contribute towards poverty alleviation while empowering beneficiaries to participate in the mainstream economy.

The youths will benefit from this project through the formation of self-help groups, which will positively impact on their knowledge of financial literacy and self-empowerment.

The Youth Jobs in Waste initiative is focused on landfill operation and management, planning administration relating to waste collection and planning and undertaking waste awareness campaigns. The people who will be assisting with the activities will be located in the municipalities for a year.

The DEA aims to create eco-friendly greener open spaces that are safe, attractively designed, well managed for the benefit of all the country's communities as well as promoting maximum use of alternative energy sources and promote an environment that is clean, green and healthy for all.

The DEA has funded numerous projects within the Randfontein Municipality, which are being implemented using labour-intensive methods in line with the EPWP, with an aim of 58% women employment, 65% youths and 2% being people with disabilities.

The waste sector has been identified as a key role player in achieving the goal of economic upliftment through job creation as the DEA works towards reaching the NDP's goal of creating an environmentally sustainable, climate change resilient, low-carbon economy and just society by 2030.

The Youth Jobs in Waste Programme was designed to address some of the critical areas of assistance, including capacity-building, where youths are placed in municipalities for a period of a year to assist with administration relating to waste collection and planning.

Recycling

The National Recycling Forum (NRF) is a non-profit organisation created to promote the recovery and recycling of recyclable materials in South Africa.

Members of the NRF include representatives of:

- the formal recycling industry in South Africa
- government departments
- regional recycling forums
- local government-based organisations
- local government utilities and co-opted advisory members.

To promote the interests of its members and the formal recycling industry in South Africa, the NRF:

- provides a national communication forum for key players in the field of recycling
- interacts with central and provincial government to encourage the recycling of glass, paper, plastics, tin plate steel, used oil and electrical and electronic waste
- facilitates the formation of regional forums that draw their memberships from enthusiastic and interested volunteers as well as small recyclers, in the major centres of South Africa
- encourages the establishment of buy-back centres and drop-off points through the activities of its members in the various centres.

Collect-a-Can, one of the oldest recycling initiatives in South Africa, has been instrumental in creating a culture of recycling in South Africa. It has obtained local and international acclaim for its contribution towards protecting the environment, as well as its significant contribution to job creation and poverty alleviation.

Collect-a-Can has introduced millions of schoolchildren to the idea of caring for the environment through its schools competition.

Recycling has been valued at a contribution of as much as R50 billion to the South African economy. In effect, waste is now a renewable resource and not something to throw away.

Climate change and air-quality management

South Africa is making steady progress in implementing the National Climate Change Response Policy, despite having to balance its economic aspirations and environmental protection.

Government continues to engage actively and meaningfully

in international climate change negotiations, specifically with the UNFCCC.

The policy implementation actions and activities flowing from this include the analysis of mitigation potential in key economic sectors as the basis for the establishment of desired emission reduction outcomes, and defining the optimal mix of measures for achieving those outcomes, with the greatest benefit and least cost to the economy.

Air quality remains an important and challenging environmental issue in South Africa.

Technical and legislative tools have been developed to roll-out and monitor the implementation of national environmental management including the:

- National Framework for Air Quality Management
- air quality model by-laws
- Air-Quality Management Planning Manual
- National Ambient Air Quality Standards and Listed Activities and the Minimum Emission Standards.

Several of these tools were under review accelerate the ongoing implementation of the AQA of 2004.

The South African Air Quality Information System contains the latest updated data on locations and can give the status of air quality or pollution for a specific day and time on its website: www.saaqis.org.za. The DEA and the SAWS have upgraded the Saaqis . South Africans can now view the state of air live from the government monitoring network on their smart phones and other gadgets.

A number of air-quality monitoring stations, mostly in Mpumalanga, eThekweni Municipality, the City of Johannesburg and the City of Tshwane, report to Saaqis.

South Africa reached legally binding climate change agreement at the 21st Conference of the Parties (COP 21) to the UNFCCC in Paris, France in December 2015.

The agreement was the culmination of a four-year negotiation process that was initiated in Durban in 2011 at the 17th Conference (COP17) of the Parties to the UNFCCC.

The conclusion to the Durban Mandate, which was to develop a protocol, legal instrument or an agreed outcome with legal force, under the convention, by no later than 2015, will see the new agreement come into effect from 2020.

South Africa is among the countries that have signed the Paris Agreement – committing to ensuring that the country continued to play a positive role in the building of a low-carbon, job-creating and pro-development green economy.

To manage climate change and air quality effectively, the department aims to increase the number of government-owned air quality monitoring stations reporting to the South African air quality information system from 116 in 2017/18 to 125 in 2020/21.

Other activities include rolling out the Let's Respond toolkit in 40 municipalities to provide a process map for integrating responses to climate change into municipalities' integrated development plans. To achieve this, R924 million is provided over the MTEF period.

Environmental impact management

2018 marked 20 years since the adoption of the Environmental Impact Assessment (EIA) as a tool to advance sustainable development.

South Africa's EIA regulations are:

- streamlining the EIA process
- introducing an approach where impact on the environment gets more attention
- introducing a listing notice dedicated to activities planned for predefined sensitive areas.

The Environmental Assessment Practitioners' (EAP) Association of South Africa aims to:

- achieve effective quality assurance in environmental assessment practice in South Africa
- promote the empowerment of black and female professionals within the environmental assessment field
- encourage continued professional development for EAPs
- promote awareness of the purpose and practice of environmental assessment in South Africa.

The DEA has a new and improved EIA and management approach. In addition, the department is using alternative approaches to environmental impact management.

The department is already fully integrating impact assessments on waste and EIA.

In order to advance and fast-track environmental

authorizations for key infrastructure projects, the department continues to undertake Strategic Environmental Assessments (SEAs).

The vast scientific information from these assessments have aided in the streamlining of decision-making for South Africa's Strategic Infrastructure Projects (SIPs) led by the Presidency. A total of 33 SIP catalyst projects were authorized in the past financial year.

South Africa is one of the top investment destinations globally for renewable energy, and over the past financial year, SEAs were conducted for renewable energy, shale gas and electricity grid infrastructure. Work is also underway on the Gas Pipeline SEA.

Aquaculture

Through Operation Phakisa, the government has showed its commitment to aquaculture. The operation looks to unlock the growth potential of the country's coastline, which is in line with the NDP.

It will also ensure that policies and programmes are implemented faster and more effectively. As a result, it can unlock the ocean's potential to contribute up to R177 billion to the country's GDP and create as many as one million direct jobs.

Aquaculture is a big part of that plan and government recognises the industry as a way of contributing to food security since it has shown strong growth of 6.5% a year. Operation Phakisa will look to grow all segments of the aquaculture industry, especially by creating jobs within processing and marketing.

Despite aquaculture's advantages, the wild capture sector remains fishery's biggest contributor. According to the WWF-SA, wild capture fisheries include commercial, recreational and subsistence fisheries. It estimated about 500 000 people fished recreationally in South Africa. Commercially caught line fish was about 16 000 tons, which placed pressure on fish resources.

National Environmental Impact Assessment and Management Strategy (EIAMS)

The EIAMS consists of voluntary and regulated instruments where:

- regulated EIAs are used only when it is the most appropriate tool
- EIAM occurs within the strategic context of environmentally informed spatial instruments, sector strategies and policies
- authorities have enough capacity with skilled and experienced officials
- other stakeholders have the capacity and skills to ensure maximum impact on the effectiveness and efficiency of the strategy
- government regulatory processes have been integrated and aligned
- government, EAPs, developers and the community are equally committed to making it work.

4x4 regulations

The Strategy Towards Co-Regulation of the Off-Road Sector in South Africa is aimed at minimising the impact of off-road driving on the environment by giving direction to off-road users and owners to develop and use inland routes in sensitive areas responsibly. The strategy applies to the inland recreational use of off-road vehicles, including two-wheel, three-wheel and four-wheel vehicles, which include 2x4 and 4x4 motor vehicles, quad bikes and motorbikes.

A key outcome of the strategy was the development, drafting and implementation of national norms and/or standards, with a supportive enabling legislative framework, to facilitate environmental compliance, responsible tourism and the long-term sustainability of the offroad industry.

The banning of off-road vehicles in coastal zones has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially the Damara tern and the African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches again. The number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on KwaZulu-Natal's northern beaches has also increased since the ban was enforced.

Coastal management

The ocean covers three quarters of the Earth, hence the importance of its protection. The DEA recognises the challenges regarding the management of ocean spaces in South Africa's adjacent ocean areas.

Of the 200 estuaries found along the South African coast, 25% are in a degraded state. This is due to inappropriate developments along the banks of estuaries and in their catchment areas. The department is focusing its attention proactively on these degraded systems and prioritising developing management plans to improve the functioning of estuaries in associated hinterlands.

The Buoy Oceans Monitoring System, which provides information on the state of the oceans at Storms River in the Tsitsikamma National Park, is the first in a series of observation and monitoring platforms, which will form the basis of the South African National Oceans and Coastal Monitoring System. The DEA reviewed the Recreational Water Quality Guidelines for Coastal Waters intending to develop effective early warning systems to pre-empt the catastrophic impacts of possible hazards.

Erosion and desertification

According to the UN Environment Programme, desertification affects 900 million people in 99 countries with 24 million tons (Mt) of topsoil being lost to erosion annually. The resultant land degradation costs Africa about US\$9 billion every year.

Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 Mt of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of South Africa's total land area is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa.

South Africa is a signatory to the UNCCD. Its main objectives include cooperation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

South Africa also acts as the coordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification.

The group consists of Argentina, Australia, Brazil, Chile, New Zealand, South Africa and Uruguay. The aim is, among other things, to foster scientific and technological cooperation.

South Africa has introduced legislation such as the NEMBA

of 2004 to promote the conservation of biodiversity, and fight desertification and land degradation.

Biodiversity

South Africa is home to some 24 000 species, around 7% of the world's vertebrate species, and 5.5% of the world's known insect species (only about half of the latter have been described).

In terms of the number of endemic species of mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians found in South Africa, the country ranks as the fifth richest in Africa and the 24th richest in the world.

Marine biodiversity is also high, with more than 11 000 species found in South African waters, which is about 15% of global species. More than 25% of these species (or 3 496 species) are endemic to South Africa, many of which are threatened, especially in river ecosystems (82%) and estuaries (77%).

South Africa ratified the Nagoya Protocol on Access to Genetic Resources and the Fair and Equitable Sharing of Benefits Arising from their Utilisation to the Convention on Biological Diversity, popularly referred to as the Nagoya Protocol on Access and benefit sharing. The Nagoya Protocol is a legally binding agreement outlining a set of terms prescribing how one country will gain access to another country's genetic resources and how the benefits derived will be shared.

The aim of the National Biodiversity and Business Network is to assist businesses from various sectors to integrate and mainstream biodiversity issues into their strategies and operations.

Government and businesses are realising that the economic and social development of the country depends on healthy ecosystems and biodiversity. The South African NDP: Vision 2030 confirms that national economic growth depends on the environmental sustainability of the country's proposed development path.

South Africa is the third most biodiverse country in the world, after Indonesia and Brazil. These countries harbour most of the Earth's species and collectively accommodate more than two thirds of global biodiversity.

South Africa is a signatory to several biodiversity-related multilateral agreements such as the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety
- Ramsar Convention
- Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora
- UNCCD
- Convention on Migratory Species.

The National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP) 2015 – 2025 is aimed at establishing a framework and plan of action for the conservation and sustainable use of South Africa's biodiversity and the equitable sharing of benefits derived from this use.

The National Biodiversity Framework, published in 2009, provides a framework to coordinate and align the efforts of the many organisations and individuals involved in conserving and managing South Africa's biodiversity, in support of sustainable development. The NBF is a requirement of the NEMBA of 2004.

Three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots are found in South Africa. They are the:

- Cape Floral Kingdom (equivalent to the fynbos biome)
- Succulent Karoo (shared with Namibia)
- Maputland-Pondoland-Albany Centre of Plant Endemism, which stretches from the Albany Centre in the Eastern Cape, through the Pondoland Centre of Plant Endemism and KwaZulu-Natal, and the eastern side of Swaziland, into southern Mozambique and Mpumalanga.

The Succulent Karoo Biome is one of only two arid biodiversity hotspots in the world, the other being the Horn of Africa.

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which are divided into 70 veld types.

National biodiversity biomes

Savanna Biome

The Savanna Biome is the largest biome in southern Africa, occupying 46% of its area, and over a third of South Africa. It is an area of mixed grassland and trees, generally known as bushveld.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (*acacia erioloba*) and the camphor bush (*tarchonanthus camphoratus*).

In Limpopo, the portly baobab (*adansonia digitata*) and the candelabra tree (*euphorbia ingens*) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (*acacia nigrescens*), bushwillow (*combretum spp.*), monkey thorn (*acacia galpinii*), mopani (*colophospermum mopane*) and wild fig (*ficus spp.*). In the valley bushveld of the south, euphorbias and spekboom trees (*portulacaria afra*) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the Savanna Biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions.

The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons. Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhino, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck and hippopotamus.

About 8.5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, iSimangaliso Wetlands Park and other reserves lie in the Savanna Biome.

Nama-Karoo Biome

The Nama-Karoo is the third largest biome in South Africa, covering about 20.5% of the country or more than 260 000 km². It stretches across the vast central plateau of the western half of the country. This semi-desert receives little rain in summer.

Rainfall varies from about 200 mm a year in the west to 400 mm a year in the north-east. Summer is very hot and winter is very cold with frequent frost.

Most of the plants are low shrubs and grass. Many plants are deciduous. Trees such as the sweet thorn (acacia karoo) are usually only found along rivers or on rocky hillsides.

Common animals include the bat-eared fox, ostrich, spring hare, tortoises and brown locust. The riverine rabbit is a threatened species found in the Nama-Karoo Biome.

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the central Karoo area of South Africa.

Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptation by plants.

Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo Biome falls within officially

protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest.

Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to advance slowly on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

Grassland Biome

The Grassland Biome is the second largest biome in South Africa, covering an area of 339 237 km² and occurring in eight of South Africa's nine provinces. It is one of the most threatened biomes in South Africa, with 30% irreversibly transformed and only 1.9% of the biodiversity target for the biome formally conserved.

The Grassland Biome provides essential ecosystem services, such as water production and soil retention necessary for economic development. It holds important biodiversity of global and domestic significance and value.

Trees are scarce and found mainly on hills and along riverbeds. Karee (*rhys lancea*), wild currant (*rhys pyroides*), white stinkwood (*celtis africana*) and several acacia species are the commonest.

The Grassland Biome has the third largest number of indigenous plant species in the country.

Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in the wild in this biome.

The area is internationally recognised as an area of high species endemism for birds. The black korhaan, blue crane and guinea fowl are among the birds found in the area.

Succulent Karoo Biome

The Succulent Karoo Biome covers a flat to gently undulating plain, with some hilly and "broken" veld, mostly situated to the west and south of the escarpment, and north of the Cape Fold Belt.

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family asteraceae), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairyland. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered with a multicoloured carpet of flowers (from August to October, depending on the rainfall). This is a winter rainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers.

Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (aloe dichotoma) and the human-like elephant's trunk (pachypodium namaquanum) are prominent in the Richtersveld. Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of the neighbouring Fynbos and Nama-Karoo biomes.

The biome includes 2 800 plant species at increased risk of extinction.

Fynbos Biome

The Fynbos Biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms of the world. This region covers only 0.04% of the Earth's land surface.

Fynbos, which is found mainly in the Western Cape, is the name given to a group of ever-green plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the Erica family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio, than 8 500 kinds, of which more than 6 000 are endemic).

The Fynbos Biome is famous for the protea, which is South Africa's national flower. The biome also contains flowering plants now regarded as garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others.

Protected areas cover 13.6% of the Fynbos Biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks.

This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, the Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. Baboon, honey badgers, caracal, the buck and several types of eagle and dassies are found in the mountains.

Forest Biome

South Africa's only significant natural forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape respectively. Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment (Drakensberg mountains), and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (podocarpus spp.), ironwood (olea capensis) and lemonwood (xymalos monospora) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

Thicket Biome

The Thicket Biome is the second smallest biome in South Africa, and is known for its high biodiversity. Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines.

It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species found there are endemic to the Thicket Biome.

The Thicket Biome, which is predominantly in the Eastern Cape, supports four species of tortoise: the leopard tortoise (*geochelone pardalis*), angulate tortoise (*chersina angulata*), tent tortoise (*psammobates tentorius*) and parrot-beaked tortoise (*homopus areolatus*).

Desert Biome

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the Succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year to year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the Desert Biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass, whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water from broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The Desert Biome incorporates abundant insect fauna, which

includes many tenebrionid beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos.

Some areas in this Biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

International cooperation

In 2018, South Africa participated in a number of important international forums, including the 13th meeting of the Conference of the Contracting Parties to the Ramsar Convention on Wetlands and the 14th meeting of the Conference of the Parties to the Convention on Biological Diversity, the 9th Meeting of the Parties to the Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety and the 3rd Meeting of the Parties to the Nagoya Protocol on Access and Benefit-sharing.

The country also hosted the 7th Meeting of Parties to Agreement on African-Eurasian Migratory Waterbirds (AEWA) from 4 to 8 December 2018. The meeting was developed under the framework of the Convention on Migratory Species.

AEWA brings together countries and the wider international conservation community in an effort to establish coordinated conservation and management of migratory waterbirds throughout their entire migratory range. An example of these are flamingos and blue crane that are Intra-Africa migrants as well as some species of penguin, falcon and swallows that migrate to other continents.

Hosting the conference was expected to boost the bird-watching tourism or avitourism, which according to a Department of Trade and Industry study is found to generally offer higher than average trip spend and longer trip lengths in multiple provinces.

Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem (BCLME)

The BCLME is regarded as one of the richest ecosystems on Earth, with ecosystem goods and services estimated to be worth at least US\$54.3 billion a year. Offshore oil and gas production, marine diamond mining, coastal tourism, commercial fishing and shipping are some of the most important industrial activities that take place in the region.

The accord, signed in Angola, is a formal agreement between Angola, Namibia and South Africa that seeks to provide economic, environmental and social benefits for the three countries.

The Benguela Current Commission is a permanent intergovernmental organisation, with a mandate to promote the long-term conservation, protection, rehabilitation, enhancement and sustainable use of the BCLME.

South Africa has signed several international conventions, treaties, protocols and other agreements supporting the principles of sustainable development including the:

- Convention on Biological Diversity (ratified in 1995)
- Cartagena Protocol on Biosafety (South Africa became a party in 2003)
- Kyoto Protocol (signed in 2003)
- UNCCD
- World Heritage Convention (ratified in 1997)
- Convention on Wetlands of International Importance (Ramsar Convention) (ratified in 1975)
- Convention on the Conservation of Migratory Species (acceded in 1991).

UN Framework Convention on Climate Change

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997. The UNFCCC is aimed at:

- implementing urgent action, from 2013 to 2020, including the adoption of a second commitment period under the Kyoto Protocol and a number of institutional mechanisms such as the Green Climate Fund
- acknowledging the inadequate commitments to reduce emissions made thus far; a work programme was agreed upon to increase pre-2020 levels of ambition
- action for the future with the negotiation of a legal agreement for the period beyond 2020.

The UNFCCC entered into force in 1994. The COP to the UNFCCC meets annually to assess progress in dealing with climate change. The COP is the supreme body of the convention and is its highest decision-making authority.

With 195 parties, the UNFCCC has near universal membership and is the parent treaty of the 1997 Kyoto

Protocol. The Kyoto Protocol has been ratified by 193 of the UNFCCC parties.

Under the protocol, 37 states, consisting of highly industrialised countries and those making the transition to a market economy, have legally binding emission limitation and reduction commitments.

The ultimate objective of both treaties is to stabilise greenhouse gas concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will prevent dangerous human interference with the climate system.

The launch of negotiations to shape the new global climate change agreement and first discussions on how to raise ambition took place at the UNFCCC in Bonn in May 2012, which prepared decisions for adoption at the UNFCCC in Qatar later in 2012.

South Africa played a leading role at COP 21 in Paris, as the Chair of the Group of 77 and China, a group of 134 developing countries that are worst affected by climate change.

UN Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD)

The UN CSD was established by the UN General Assembly in December 1992 to ensure effective follow-up of the UN Conference on Environment and Development, also known as the Earth Summit.

From its inception, the CSD was highly participatory in structure and outlook, by engaging in its formal proceedings a wide range of official stakeholders and partners through innovative formulae.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora

South Africa was a founding member of the CITES Treaty, which was adopted on 3 March 1973, but only came into force on 1 July 1975.

Signed by 149 countries, CITES is an international agreement between governments to protect endangered species against over-exploitation through regulations regarding imports and exports and in some cases prohibiting trade.

CITES was drafted as a result of a resolution adopted in 1963 at a meeting of members of the IUCN. CITES accords varying

degrees of protection to more than 30 000 animals and plant species, whether they are traded as live specimens, fur coats or dried herbs.

The DEA, SANBI, the Scientific Authority and provincial authorities are working together to ensure full compliance with decisions taken at the 17th Conference of Parties to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora.

These include identifying and implementing protocols for the registration of over 1 000 facilities for breeding captive bred parrots; strengthening the monitoring of leopard populations to improve science based-decision making; and initiating a research project to understand how trade in lion bone may impact wild lion populations.

Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer

The International Ozone Day is an annual event that commemorates the date of the signing the Montreal Protocol in 1987. South Africa, which became a signatory to the Montreal Protocol in 1990, has phased out chlorofluorocarbons, halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride.

World Summit on Sustainable Development

At the UN World Summit on Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) 2030 held in September 2015, world leaders adopted the 17 SDGs of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development. Over the next 15 years, with these new goals that universally apply to all, countries will mobilise efforts to end all forms of poverty, fight inequalities and tackle climate change, while ensuring that no one is left behind.

The SDGs build on the success of the Millennium Development Goals and aim to go further to end all forms of poverty. The new goals are unique in that they call for action by all countries, poor, rich and middle income to promote prosperity while protecting the planet.

The 17 SDGs are:

- Goal 1: End poverty in all its forms everywhere.
- Goal 2: End hunger, achieve food security and improved nutrition and promote sustainable agriculture.

- Goal 3: Ensure healthy lives and promote well-being for all at all ages.
- Goal 4: Ensure inclusive and equitable quality education and promote lifelong learning opportunities for all.
- Goal 5: Achieve gender equality and empower all women and girls.
- Goal 6: Ensure availability and sustainable management of water and sanitation for all.
- Goal 7: Ensure access to affordable, reliable, sustainable and modern energy for all.
- Goal 8: Promote sustained, inclusive and sustainable economic growth, full and productive employment and decent work for all.
- Goal 9: Build resilient infrastructure, promote inclusive and sustainable industrialisation and foster innovation.
- Goal 10: Reduce inequality within and among countries.
- Goal 11: Make cities and human settlements inclusive, safe, resilient and sustainable.
- Goal 12: Ensure sustainable consumption and production patterns.
- Goal 13: Take urgent action to combat climate change and its impacts.
- Goal 14: Conserve and sustainably use the oceans, seas and marine resources for sustainable development.
- Goal 15: Protect, restore and promote sustainable use of terrestrial ecosystems, sustainably manage forests, combat desertification, and halt and reverse land degradation and halt biodiversity loss.
- Goal 16: Promote peaceful and inclusive societies for sustainable development, provide access to justice for all and build effective, accountable and inclusive institutions at all levels.
- Goal 17: Strengthen the means of implementation and revitalise the Global Partnership for Sustainable Development.

UN Conference on Sustainable Development (Rio+20)

Rio+20 refers to the UN Conference on Sustainable Development that took place in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in June 2012. The meeting took place 20 years after the landmark 1992 Earth Summit in Rio, when more than 108 heads of State agreed

to work together to develop national strategies to reduce carbon emissions, stabilise GHG, protect forests from destruction, and pay for their share of the damage caused to the Earth through pollution.

At the Rio+20 talks 50 of the 193 member states of the UN launched new energy strategies, and private investors pledged more than US\$50 billion to carry out the goal of doubling the share of global renewable energy and the rate of energy efficiency improvement by 2030.





South Africa Yearbook 2018/19

International Relations

According to the South African Constitution, the President is ultimately responsible for the country's foreign policy and international relations. It is the President's prerogative to appoint heads of mission, receive foreign heads of mission, conduct state-to-state relations, and negotiate and sign all international agreements.

International agreements that are not of a technical, administrative or executive nature will only bind the country after being approved by Parliament. Parliament also approves the country's ratification of or accession to multilateral agreements. All international agreements must be tabled in Parliament for information purposes.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation is entrusted with the formulation, promotion, execution and daily conduct of South Africa's foreign policy.

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's (DIRCO) overall mandate is to work for the realisation of South Africa's foreign policy objectives. This is done by:

- coordinating and aligning South Africa's international relations abroad
- monitoring developments in the international environment
- communicating government's policy positions
- developing and advising government on policy options, creating mechanisms and avenues for achieving objectives
- protecting South Africa's sovereignty and territorial integrity
- contributing to the creation of an enabling international environment for South African business
- sourcing developmental assistance
- assisting South African citizens abroad.

DIRCO's strategic objectives are to:

- protect and promote South African national interests and values through bilateral and multilateral interactions
- conduct and coordinate South Africa's international relations and promote its foreign policy objectives
- monitor international developments and advise government on foreign policy and related domestic matters
- contribute to the formulation of international law and enhance respect for its provisions
- promote multilateralism to secure a rules-based international system

- maintain a modern, effective department driven to pursue excellence
- provide a world-class and uniquely South African state protocol service.

The National Development Plan (NDP) is the overarching apex policy framework that guides the work of the government. In the area of international relations, the NDP states:

"... in order for South Africa to achieve its national goals of eradicating poverty, lowering inequality, creating jobs and making the transition to a resilient carbon economy, foreign relations must be driven by the country's domestic economic, political and social demands, as well as our regional, continental and global obligations."

In pursuance of this injunction, DIRCO has translated the NDP goals into a strategic programme that seeks to:

- sustain political, economic and social relations
- strengthen political and economic integration and development of the SADC
- consolidate the African Agenda
- strengthen and consolidate South-South relations
- leverage relations with the North in advancement of national and continental priorities and the agenda of the South
- advocate for the reform and strengthening of the global system of governance.

South Africa maintains diplomatic relations with countries and international organisations through the 125 diplomatic missions in 108 countries in which South Africa has representation, and through the accreditation of more than 160 countries and international organisations resident in South Africa.

South Africa's diplomatic and consular missions implement the country's foreign policy to enhance its international profile and serve as strategic mechanisms for the achievement of national interest.

In addition, training and policy analysis remain of strategic importance for the execution of DIRCO's mandate.

Legislation

The DIRCO derives its mandate from the following legislation:

- The Foreign States Immunities Act, 1981 (Act 87 of 1981), regulates the extent of the immunity of foreign states from

the jurisdiction of the South African courts and provides for matters connected therewith.

- The Diplomatic Immunities and Privileges Act, 2001 (Act 37 of 2001), provides for the immunities and privileges of diplomatic missions and consular posts and their members, Heads of State, special envoys and certain representatives of the United Nations (UN) and its specialised agencies, and other international organisations and certain people.
- The African Renaissance and International Cooperation Fund (ARF) Act, 2001 (Act 51 of 2001), establishes an ARF to enhance cooperation between South Africa and other countries, in particular African countries, through the promotion of democracy, good governance, the prevention and resolution of conflict, socio-economic development and integration, humanitarian assistance and human resource development.
- International agreements (multilateral and bilateral): International agreements concluded by South Africa in terms of sections 231(2) and 231(3) of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa of 1996.

Enhancing economic diplomacy

In anticipation of growth in the African and Asian regions, South Africa took a conscious decision to expand and strengthen its diplomatic missions in the two regions.

As South Africa consolidated its political relations on the continent by expanding its diplomatic footprint through 47 embassies, high commissions and consulates general, South Africa has also rapidly advanced her economic relations in Africa, through the expansion of its trade volumes, investment portfolio and economic relations across the length and breadth of the continent.

The country has grown her bilateral trade portfolio with countries on the continent from R11.4 billion in 1994 to the current R429 billion.

This has resulted in Africa becoming a prime destination of South African-originated goods and services, especially value-added goods, which assists in contributing to the R198-billion trade surplus, creating much-needed jobs and opportunities for our people within the manufacturing, retail,



Ubuntu brand

Ubuntu magazine

The Department of International Relations and Cooperation's quarterly magazine Ubuntu – South Africa's Public Diplomacy in Action is aimed at:

- communicating with and educating stakeholders on South Africa's foreign policy positions, achievements, objectives and goals
- giving in-depth analysis and information on key departmental issues ranging from current affairs, bilateral and multilateral milestones, upcoming key events, as well as international work done by other government departments, business and parastatals.

The high-quality glossy magazine spreads South Africa's foreign policy message quarterly around the world. Its footprint extends across the globe. The magazine is also available online on www.dirco.gov.za.

Annual Ubuntu Awards

The awards are aimed at recognising South African industry leaders and eminent persons for their distinguished service and contribution towards promoting South Africa's national interests and values across the world.

Awards are given in various categories to organisations/individuals who have through excellence, innovation, creativity, inventiveness, social responsibility or patriotism distinguished themselves as true ambassadors of South Africa.

Ubuntu Radio

Ubuntu Radio is an online, 24-hour radio station aimed at enhancing communication on South Africa's foreign policy.

The first of its kind on the African continent, it is accessible on www.ubunturadio.com and on DStv Audio Bouquet Channel 888. The objective of Ubuntu Radio is to create a platform to exchange views and opinions by various stakeholders.

fast-moving consumer goods, financial services and transport/logistics sectors. It is also worth noting that the Southern African Development Community (SADC) accounts for approximately 80% of our total trade with the continent.

With regard to Asia and the Middle East, South Africa's trade and investment in these regions have grown considerably and continue to do so. In 1994, trade with Asia and the Middle East combined was approximately R45 billion and has increased to approximately R760 billion for Asia and R116 billion with the

Middle East. South Africa is expected to achieve a trillion rand trade with this region by 2019.

There is a direct correlation between the growth of South Africa's diplomatic missions and the phenomenal expansion of its trade and investment relations on both the African continent and in Asia and the Middle East. The same applies to the Americas and Europe. With additional economic diplomacy efforts and enhanced national coordination, South African trade with the world can reach R2 trillion by 2019.

As South Africa explores new markets, it continues to maintain close economic ties with the industrialised economies of the North, which provide, among others, preferential market access to some of South Africa's exports. Enhancing the economic and political dialogue is an important part of South Africa's economic diplomacy strategy as they remain a primary source of Foreign Direct Investment (FDI) and official development assistance (ODA) flows into South Africa.

DIRCO also uses international summits such as Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa (BRICS), G20, SADC, India Ocean Rim Association (IORA) as well as State Visits and Bilateral Consultation mechanisms to promote the trade and investment case for South Africa.

Budget, funding and trade

The DIRCO's budget allocation for the 2018/19 financial year was R6.6 billion.

With regard to Asia and the Middle East, South Africa's trade and investment in these regions have grown considerably and continue to do so. In 1994, trade with Asia and the Middle East combined was approximately R45 billion and has increased to approximately R760 billion for Asia and R116 billion with the Middle East. Working together with other government departments, DIRCO expected to achieve a trillion rand trade with this region by 2019.

Global Governance and continental Agenda

Recalibrating South Africa's foreign policy and services

South Africa's foreign policy is formulated and executed in a

global environment that is constantly evolving. It therefore requires frequent recalibration through comprehensive reviews of various foreign policy levers, tools and instruments to remain relevant and in line with the department's mandate. To this end, in 2018/19, the Minister established a foreign policy review panel and convened the inaugural foreign policy review workshop to begin the process of reassessing the country's foreign policy. The panel's work over the MTEF period is expected to provide strategic guidance and recommendations on rationalising foreign missions. This will be done through critical appraisals of staffing levels within missions, and reviews of the policy frameworks governing the foreign services and those regulating benefits and allowances for foreign service dispensation.

Consolidating global economic, political and social relations

The department continues to focus on consolidating economic, political and social relations through structured bilateral mechanisms and high-level engagements to promote national priorities. As the current Chair of the Indian Ocean Rim Association, South Africa plans to advocate for the restructuring of the global political, economic and financial architecture to be more balanced, representative, inclusive and equitable; and ensure that the international system rests on the important pillars of multilateralism and international law.

In 2019/20, South Africa will assume tenure as a non-permanent member of the UN Security Council, and will use this membership to promote international peace and security through advocating for peaceful dispute resolution and inclusive dialogue; and enhance cooperation and improve efficiency between the UN, the African Union (AU) and other regional and subregional organisations.

In support of South Africa's economic growth, in 2019/20, the department expects to undertake 112 economic diplomacy initiatives on trade and investment, and 126 engagements with chambers of commerce. The department also plans to continue strengthening South Africa's bilateral relations over the MTEF period with a stronger emphasis on economic partnerships in line with economic growth imperatives.

Global Governance

South Africa participates in a rules-based multilateral system to achieve global political and socio-economic stability and security.

Multilateralism, and by implication the commitment to a rules-based, just, and equitable international order, remains a focal point of South Africa's foreign policy. Consequently, South Africa will continue to engage the multilateral system, particularly the UN, through its agencies, funds, programmes and processes, to advance South Africa's foreign policy priorities.

These engagements take into account that the multilateral system still does not fully reflect global political and economic realities and is in need of reform. A key priority for South Africa is to regain lost momentum that would accelerate the reform of the UN Security Council (UNSC), as well as to advance the reform of the broader global governance architecture with a view to improving its representivity and focus its responsiveness to the needs of, and challenges faced by, developing states.

The current unpredictable global environment poses a number of risks to the UN and the global governance system, particularly as it relates to, among others, the dynamics within the UNSC on issues of peace and security (including the situation in the Middle East), promotion and protection of human rights, funding for multilateral processes and honouring commitments to enable national implementation of multilateral decisions such as the 2030 Agenda and its Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) as well as the Paris Agreement on Climate Change.

Ensuring sustainable development in the current global environment will require concerted engagement in the UN system and other multilateral structures such as the G20, on economic growth and the improvement of social well-being and infrastructure through increased trade and investment as well as the fair and equitable movement of goods and services.

Furthermore, in the wake of numerous terror attacks across the world, countering international terrorism remains a priority on the agenda of the UN, particularly with regard to the abuse of cyber platforms for propaganda, recruitment and planning of attacks, radicalising of the youth and inciting extremism leading to terrorist attacks.

Development, human rights, security and international law

are promoted through international forums such as the UN and its agencies:

United Nations

The UN occupies the central and indispensable role within the global system of governance. South Africa looks to the UN to advance the global peace and security and development agenda and address underdevelopment, social integration, full employment and decent work for all and the eradication of poverty globally.

Through its participation in multilateral forums, South Africa also upholds the belief that the resolution of international conflicts should be peaceful and in accordance with the centrality of the UN Charter and the principles of international law.

South Africa was one of the 51 founding member of the UN in 1945. Since then, UN membership has grown to 193 states. After being suspended in 1974, owing to international opposition to the policy of apartheid, South Africa was readmitted to the UN in 1994, following its transition to democracy.

UN General Assembly (UNGA) and the UN Security Council (UNSC)

In September 2018, President Cyril Ramaphosa participated for the first time in the General Debate of the 73rd Session of the UNGA7, under the theme: "Making the United Nations Relevant to All People: Global Leadership and Shared Responsibilities for Peaceful, Equitable and Sustainable Societies".

The President's programme commenced with the unveiling of a life-size statue of the late Struggle icon and first democratically elected President of South Africa, Nelson Mandela, at the UN Headquarters.

Also convened in honour of the centenary of the birth of President Mandela was the UN Nelson Mandela Peace Summit, where President Ramaphosa acknowledged efforts of the world body in peacekeeping, while cautioning that the organisation faced intricate and complex challenges.

In addition to the UNGA General Debate, President Ramaphosa participated in the UN High-Level Meeting on tuberculosis (TB). The meeting focused on efforts to accelerate an end to TB and reach all affected people with prevention and care.

The President also addressed the Council on Foreign Relations (CFR) meeting. The CFR meetings convene government officials, global business leaders and prominent members of the intelligence and foreign-policy community from around the world to discuss international issues.

The President's working visit concluded with trade and investment promotion engagements that included the Invest in South Africa Private Roundtable, the Bloomberg Global Business Forum Panel Discussion, as well as the Business Seminar on Opportunities in South Africa. These engagements were part of a sustained programme of stimulating interest and attracting foreign direct investment into the South African economy, alongside creating the conditions for greater domestic investment.

South Africa has been elected overwhelmingly to serve on the UN Security Council (UNSC) for the term 2019 – 2020. This will be South Africa's third term on the UNSC, having previously served in 2007 – 2008 and 2011 – 2012. South Africa's tenure on the Security Council will be dedicated to the legacy of former President Nelson Mandela and his commitment to peace.

South Africa will also use its experience in the prioritisation of diplomacy, mediation, the pacific settlement of disputes, conflict resolution and peacebuilding through inclusive dialogue and negotiations with the ultimate aim of supporting parties to achieve sustainable peace, national unity and reconciliation; will also actively contribute to achieving a Africa at peace by 2063 by pursuing and promoting Africa's goal of "silencing the guns by 2020", but also to promote and achieve peace in all the regions of the world. In continuing its legacy from the two previous terms on the UNSC, South Africa will advocate for closer cooperation between the UNSC and the AU Peace and Security Council (AUPSC).

Disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control

A primary goal of South Africa's policy on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control includes reinforcing and promoting the country as a responsible producer, possessor and trader of defence-related products and advanced technologies.

In this regard, the department continues to promote the benefits that disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control hold for international peace and security.

As a member of the supplier's regimes and of the Africa Group and the Non-Aligned Movement, the importance of non-proliferation is promoted, taking into account that export controls should not become the means whereby developing countries are denied access to advanced technologies required for their development.

In seeking solutions to intractable disarmament, non-proliferation and arms control challenges in the international arena, a bridge-building approach has been followed in order to seek realistic and achievable solutions. Whilst dealing with challenging issues from a pragmatic perspective, due recognition has been given to the role that civil society can play in partnership with the governments of the world, especially in the context of seeking solutions to the divergent views that often characterise international negotiations.

On 25 February 2019, South Africa joined a growing number of states in submitting its Instrument of Ratification of the Treaty on the Prohibition of Nuclear Weapons to the UN in New York.

The historic treaty was adopted by a vote of 122 States in favour at the UN in 2017. In September 2017, the Secretary-General of the UN Treaty opened the treaty for signatures. South Africa signed the treaty at a ceremony held on the margins of the 72nd Session of the UN General Assembly.

The treaty seeks to establish an international norm, de-legitimising and stigmatising the possession of nuclear weapons. It aims to contribute towards achieving the objective set out in the very first resolution adopted by the UN General Assembly in 1946 to eliminate all weapons of mass destruction.

The treaty complements other international instruments by contributing towards fulfilling the nuclear disarmament obligations under the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, the objectives of the Comprehensive Nuclear Test-Ban Treaty (CTBT) and the various nuclear-weapon-free-zone treaties, such as the Pelindaba Treaty that already banned nuclear weapons in Africa.

UN Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC)

The council is a premier organ of the UN responsible for the economic and social development matters of the world.

Having served at a strategic juncture during the adoption of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development from 2013 – 2015, South Africa was re-elected in 2015 to continue its role on the implementation of the 2030 Agenda and the SDGs. In July 2018, South Africa concluded its tenure as Vice President of ECOSOC and as council member.

South Africa regards sustainable development as a collective opportunity and responsibility that can be achieved through multilateral cooperation, and will continue its active role in the ECOSOC mandated processes to address the follow-up and review of financing for development outcomes and the means of implementation of the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development, all of which are crucial to the realisation of the SDGs.

South Africa further actively participates in the functional commissions of ECOSOC such as the Commission for Social Development, the Commission on the Status of Women.

UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)

South Africa is an active participant in key UNESCO governance structures such as the General Conference and the World Heritage Committee, and is currently serving on the organisation's Executive Board (for the term 2015 to 2019).

South Africa also acceded to the Convention for the Protection of Cultural Property in the Event of Armed Conflict (December 2003) and the Convention on the Protection of Underwater Cultural Heritage (May 2015).

Since South Africa ratified the World Heritage Convention in 1997, it has inscribed 10 world heritage sites under the convention, namely the:

- Fossil Hominid Sites of South Africa (1999)
- Robben Island Museum (1999)
- iSimangaliso Wetland Park (1999)
- Maloti-Drakensberg Park (2000)
- Mapungubwe Cultural Landscape (2003)
- Cape Floral Region Protected Areas (2004)

- Vredefort Dome (2005)
- Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape (2007).
- #Khomani Cultural Landscape (2017).
- Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains (2018).

The Barberton Makhonjwa Mountains in Mpumalanga were inscribed as South Africa's 10th World Heritage Site in 2018. They are thought to be one of the oldest sites on earth, with its volcanic rocks estimated to be between 3.2 and 3.6 billion years old. The mountains are also believed to contain the oldest signs of life, with a micro fossil of bacteria estimated to be 3.1 billion years old.

National interaction with UNESCO's various areas of work is coordinated through the South African National Commission for UNESCO, whose secretariat is hosted by the Department of Basic Education.

Human Rights and Humanitarian Affairs

South Africa played a leadership role in several intergovernmental processes at the UN pertaining to norms and standard setting in international human rights and humanitarian law, law of international protection for asylum seekers, refugees, including migrants, the empowerment of women and gender equality, the protection of the rights of the child and persons with disabilities, as well as food security and nutrition.

To this end, the South African delegation to this system took leadership roles such as chairing relevant intergovernmental working groups, initiating and negotiating flagship resolutions, influencing as well as impacting the agenda setting in these areas.

In the above context, the most important initiative entails the leadership role in the work of the Ad-hoc Committee on the Elaboration of Complementary Standards to the International Convention for the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination aimed at combating contemporary forms of racism.

South Africa participated in a series of meetings at the High-Level Segment of the UN Human Rights Council (UNHRC) 40th Session in Geneva, Switzerland from 25 to 27 February 2019.

The council met against the backdrop of numerous challenges in the world that impact on human rights, peace and security

and development. The council presented an opportunity for developing countries, including South Africa, to ensure that human rights and development issues are made central to any future discussions in the UN system.

The high-level segment was attended by numerous Heads of State, Foreign Ministers, Deputy Foreign Ministers and other dignitaries, including the UN Secretary-General and the Chairperson of the AU Commission. The country's attendance of this session amplified the importance it places on human rights, in particular the Human Rights Council.

2019 marks the last year of South Africa's back-to-back membership on the Council. The country is committed toward the strengthening and deepening of the multilateral system of global governance and the rule of law, despite increasing unilateralism and the growth of populist and ultra-nationalist forces in the world.

UN-South Africa Strategic Cooperation Framework (UNSCF)

The UNSCF 2013 – 17 is the overall framework for the work of the UN system in South Africa. DIRCO and the UN Country Team developed the UNSCF in 2012 through a participatory and consultative process.

The UNSCF includes the presentation of the situation in South Africa overall, as reflected in the New Growth Path, the NDP: Vision for 2030, as well as the Medium Term Strategic Framework (MTSF) and the 2010 Millennium Development Goals Country Report. These informed the identification of the four pillars of UN cooperation:

- inclusive growth and decent work
- sustainable development
- human capabilities
- governance and participation.

The UNSCF also considers the role of South Africa on the continent and globally. The UNSCF has been extended to 31 March 2019 to align it with South Africa's MTSF and fiscal cycle.

World Health Organisation (WHO)

South Africa is one of the 194 member states that constitute

the WHO. The country takes part in the annual World Health Assembly (WHA), which is the WHO's supreme decision-making body, as well as in its executive board meetings.

South Africa also participates in the WHO's Regional Committee for Africa, which convenes annually after the WHA to reflect on the decisions taken at the WHA (particularly those relevant to the continent) and plan for the following year's WHA.

Through its participation in these structures, South Africa contributes to setting international norms and standards on key issues regarding global and public health such as:

- the implementation of the International Health Regulations
- addressing antimicrobial resistance
- the fight against HIV and AIDS, TB and malaria
- building resilient healthcare systems in developing states
- ensuring access to medicines
- achieving Universal Health Coverage (National Health Insurance in South Africa)
- contributing to economic growth through health employment.

Group of 20

South Africa has been a permanent member of the G20 since its inception in 1999 following the Asian financial crises.

The G20 was established to increase multilateral cooperation for the recovery of the global economy, to bring stability to the global financial system, to promote long-term sustainable growth and to strengthen global economic governance.

The G20 economies account for 85% of the global Gross Domestic Product (GDP), 80% of world trade and two-thirds of the world's population. Since the escalation of the G20 to Leaders' Summit level in 2008, the agenda has significantly expanded to include issues of geo-political, development and trade significance. South Africa's participation in the G20 has sought to provide strategic foresight in establishing an economic and financial international policy platform that will drive and negotiate the best possible outcomes for South Africa, Africa and the developing world.

South Africa has been the permanent Co-Chair of the Development Working Group since 2010 for the promotion of national and continental priorities. Addressing the scourge of illicit financial flows has the potential to unlock billions of dollars

that could be utilised to fund Africa and the developing worlds' development.

In addition, South Africa has consistently advanced G20 support for industrialisation in Africa and Least Developed Countries, the implementation of the G20 Partnership with Africa and enhanced G20 support to developing countries by providing the means of implementation for achieving the 2030 Sustainable Development Agenda. These initiatives are aimed at positively impacting the development trajectory of Africa and the developing world and contribute positively to achieving the global commitment of leaving no one behind.

The G20 is unique in its composition of countries of the North and South and therefore as a collective body tends to carry significant profile and influence. South Africa, as the only permanent African member of the G20, has used its participation to advance national priorities, the African agenda of sustainable development, inclusive growth, the reduction of inequality and the promotion of a just economic world order.

In the future, the strategic trajectory of the G20 is anticipated to transform from a crisis response mechanism focusing on short-term policies to one of long-term governance that shapes medium- to long-term policies, and will solidify its role as the premier forum for international economic governance.

South Africa also works together closely with the following international bodies and organisations:

- World Trade Organisation (WTO)
- World Economic Forum (WEF)
- Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD)
- International Labour Organisation (ILO)
- World Intellectual Property Organisation (WIPO).

The country continues to engage with key global economic institutions such as the WTO, the OECD, the ILO and WIPO to ensure that South Africa benefits from trade, investment, industrialization and innovation to address the triple challenges of poverty, inequality and unemployment as espoused in the NDP.

South Africa pursues a system that is sensitive to the needs of the poorest, while leaving policy space at national level to address the development challenges of the South and Africa.

President Ramaphosa attended the G20 Compact with Africa Conference from 29 to 30 October 2018 in Berlin, Germany.

The conference discussed progress made with the G20 Partnership with Africa and the Compact with Africa (CwA). The CwA was formally launched during the July 2017 G20 Hamburg Summit and comprises 12 African countries, including Benin, Côte d'Ivoire, Egypt, Ethiopia, Ghana, Guinea, Morocco, Rwanda, Senegal, Tunisia, Togo and recently Burkina Faso.

The CwA Initiative is based on the premise that significant economic development can be achieved when African countries, G20 members, development partner countries, and international organisations work together to create a better environment for private investment.

President Ramaphosa led a South African delegation to the G20 Leaders' Summit in Buenos Aires, Argentina, from 30 November to 1 December 2018.

The summit was complemented by meetings of Finance Ministers from the G20 member states.

Continental Agenda

Strengthening African cooperation and regional integration

The SADC remains critical for the region's economic development and for South Africa's global competitiveness. The revised regional indicative strategic development plan 2015 – 2020 and the industrialisation strategy and roadmap 2015 – 2063 are the key blueprints in place for this.

A renewed focus on industrialisation emerged from the 38th Ordinary Summit of SADC Heads of State and Government in 2018, and will guide the government's priorities in leading the implementation and domestication of the region's blueprints over the medium term. As the outgoing Chair of SADC, South Africa will continue to participate in the SADC Double Troika Leadership Oversight Structure, and monitor the implementation of SADC summit decisions and resolutions in advancing political and economic integration.

The department continues to play an active role in the AU structures and processes for the advancement of peace and security; and conflict prevention, resolution and management on the continent. This includes the strengthening of mechanisms to

consolidate peace and prevent post-conflict in countries such as Libya and South Sudan, from backsliding into civil unrest. As one of the largest contributors to the AU budget, South Africa's membership contribution is expected to increase by R200 million in 2019/20 (from R237.9 million to R437.9 million) and by R213.3 million in 2020/21 (from R251 million to R464.3 million) to address a shortfall as a result of the current scale of assessment to determine countries' membership fees to the AU. This contribution is expected to decrease to R265.1 million in 2021/22, when the current three-year cycle of the scale of assessment lapses.

African Union

The establishment of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU) in 1963 by 32 countries in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia was intended to continue the fight against colonialism and apartheid on the African continent, promote unity and solidarity, safeguard the sovereignty and territorial integrity of member states and coordinate and intensify cooperation for development.

Following the realization of the objectives that were set during the advent of the OAU, particularly the mission to emancipate the continent from the shackles of colonial and apartheid rule, the AU was formed and brought to force in 2002, wherein 54 countries agreed to chart a new path for the continent, more specifically its economic development.

This new path which was set in 2002 by the AU was underpinned in the determination to tackle and address the multifaceted social, economic and political challenges, through forging an integrated continent that can ultimately realize its full economic potential and play its rightful role in the global economy.

To this end, the AU is making progressive strides and moving towards the right direction in its mission to address the long-standing challenges of underdevelopment, and consequent poverty, unemployment and inequality on the continent.

The AU recognised the need to develop a long-term strategy resulting in the adoption of Agenda 2063, in 2015 by the Heads of State and Government during the 24th Ordinary Session in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.

Agenda 2063 has identified seven cardinal aspirations which

provide an indication of what the continent should achieve by the year 2063:

- A prosperous Africa based on inclusive growth and sustainable development;
- integrated continent, politically united based on the ideals of Pan-Africanism and the vision of Africa's Renaissance;
- An Africa of good governance, democracy, respect for human rights, justice and the rule of law;
- A peaceful and secure Africa;
- An Africa with a strong cultural identity, common heritage, values and ethics;
- An Africa where development is people driven, unleashing the potential of its women and youth; and
- Africa as a strong united and influential global player and partner.

Appreciating the need that the realization of the objectives set by Agenda 2063 should be fulfilled; there was a formulation its First Ten-Year Implementation Plan.

Thus far, there's has been progress made in this regard, as evidenced by:

- the adoption of a Protocol on the Free Movement of Persons in Africa,
- member states having committed to the African continental Free Trade Area (AfCFTA), and
- the Single African Air Transport Market (SAATM) being launched.

These flagship programmes of Agenda 2063 are the catalyst which will ensure the acceleration of integration within the continent and will further enable the African countries to maximize the economic opportunities, particularly trade amongst them.

The objective of the AfCFTA is to promote intra-African trade and offer an opportunity to create larger economies of scale, a bigger market and improve the prospects of the African continent to attract investment. In addition, the AfCFTA will bring together the 55 Member States of the AU, covering a market of more than 1.2 billion people, including a growing middle class and a combined gross domestic of more than US\$3.4 trillion.

Furthermore, the AU has noted that in order to successfully move the continent forward, it has to transform the manner in

which it conducts its business. Currently the AU is undergoing a rigorous process of reviewing how it has been operating, through engaging the recommendations made during the Institutional Reform process. The successful implementation of the agreement borne out of this process will ensure that the AU becomes more effective and efficient in carrying out its mandate.

South Africa, as a member of the AU, remains committed to the organisation and it has demonstrated its desire to ensure that the organisation succeeds. Currently, South Africa is hosting the Pan African Parliament, African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) and the New Partnership for Africa's Development (NEPAD), amongst others. Additionally, the country continues to play a steering role in matters related to Peace and Security on the continent.

In July 2018, President Ramaphosa led a South African Delegation at the 31st Ordinary Session of the Assembly of AU Heads of State and Government in Nouakchott, Mauritania.

The 11th Extra Ordinary Session of the Assembly of the AU took place in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, in November 2018.

South Africa will take over the rotational Chair of the AU in 2020, following on Egypt, which took over the chair of the continental organ in February 2019. African Heads of State formally elected South Africa during a closed session, ahead of the opening ceremony of the 32nd AU Heads of State Summit.

In April 2019, President Ramaphosa undertook a Working Visit to the Arab Republic of Egypt to attend an Emergency AU Troika Summit convened to discuss the political and security situations in Sudan and Libya.

President Abdel Fatah el-Sisi called the summit in his capacity as Chair of the AU. The AU Troika consists of Egypt current Chair; South Africa incoming Chair and Rwanda outgoing Chair. The summit was also attended by the AU Commission Chairperson, Mr Moussa Mahamat Faki who reported on the AU initiatives undertaken to resolve these crises.

Peace and Security Council

South Africa continues to promote peace and stability on the African continent through preventative diplomacy, peace-making, peace-building and peacekeeping efforts. In this context, the country's approach to peacekeeping resonates

strongly with the AU's aspirational goal adopted by the AU Assembly African Heads of State and Government on 25 May 2013 in Addis Ababa of "Silencing the Guns by the Year 2020".

The AU's flagship project on addressing peace and security issues in the context of the African Peace and Security Architecture (APSA), is built around structures, objectives, principles and values, as well as decision-making processes relating to the prevention, management and resolution of crises and conflicts and post-conflict reconstruction and development on the continent.

Furthermore, the AUPSC remains the main pillar of the APSA and is supported by various structures, including the AUC, the Panel of the Wise, the continental Early Warning System, the African Standby Force and the Peace Fund.

The relationship between the AU and the regional economic communities/regional mechanisms for conflict prevention, management and resolution remains crucial for the success of the APSA.

South Africa has actively participated, through both bilateral and multilateral efforts, to resolve some of the continent's pressing conflict areas.

These countries include: Lesotho, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Madagascar, Burundi, South Sudan, Somalia, Central African Republic (CAR), Mali and Libya. South Africa also remains engaged in the peace and security dynamics of the Horn of Africa, the Sahel, the Great Lakes Region and the Lake Chad Basin.

South Africa will continue to play its part in conflict resolution in these countries and respective regions. In addition, South Africa reaffirms its continued solidarity to assist the people of Western Sahara in pursuit of their inalienable right to self-determination and decolonisation. South Africa remains steadfast in its rejection of all acts of terrorism and extremism that have increasingly affected countries on our continent, contributing negatively to internal instability.

AU regional economic communities (RECs)

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, as well as integrating African economies.

RECs are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must coordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as coordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future RECs, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives.

Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the Permanent Representatives Committee.

South Africa's development is intertwined with that of the southern Africa region and the African continent at large. The country's efforts at ramping up industrialisation should be viewed within the overall framework of the SADC Industrialisation Strategy and Roadmap as approved by the SADC Extra-Ordinary Summit in April 2015. South Africa seeks to industrialise the regional and continental economies in order to develop its own manufacturing capacity.

In addition, the country seeks to radically alter the colonial/post-colonial pattern where Africa was a supplier of raw materials. Africa should produce value-added goods for exports into the global economy.

It is only in this way that Africa can address the paradox of a rich-resource continent inhabited by a poverty-stricken population, and make a decisive break with the past.

New Partnership for Africa's Development

NEPAD, an AU strategic framework for pan-African socio-economic development, is both a vision and a policy framework for Africa in the 21st century. NEPAD provides unique opportunities for African countries to take full control of their development agenda, to work more closely together, and to cooperate more effectively with international partners.

NEPAD manages a number of programmes and projects in six theme areas namely:

- agriculture and food security
- climate change and national resource management
- regional integration and infrastructure
- human development

- economic and corporate governance
- cross-cutting issues, including gender, capacity development and information and communications technology (ICT).

South Africa, as one of the initiating countries, played a key role in the establishment of NEPAD and the African APRM, and hosts the NEPAD Agency and APRM Secretariat in Midrand, Gauteng.

The APRM process is aimed at addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services to the citizens of African countries. It encourages the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated regional and continental economic integration through the sharing of experiences and best practices, and is important to the sustainability of NEPAD.

NEPAD remains the main programme of reference for intra-African socio-economic and developmental relations and Africa's partnerships with international partners such as the:

- European Union (EU)-AU Strategic Partnership
- Forum on China-Africa Cooperation (FOCAC)
- Group of Seven Most Industrialised Nations plus Russia (G8)
- Tokyo International Conference on African Development
- New Asian-African Strategic Partnership (NAASP)
- Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development.

Through NEPAD, Africa has expanded its development priorities. Development and funding in agriculture, ICT, science and technology, infrastructure and education have improved the quality of life for millions of Africans.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC developed from the Southern African Development Coordination Conference (SADCC), which was established in 1980. It adopted its current name during a summit held in Windhoek, Namibia, in August 1992.

Before 1992, the aim of the SADCC was to forge close economic cooperation with southern African countries, excluding South Africa, to bolster their economies and reduce their dependence on the South African economy.

From 1992, when the organisation became SADC, its mandate changed to the following:

- promoting and defending peace and security
- evolving common values, systems and institutions
- establishing an open economy based on equality, mutual benefit and balanced development
- breaking down tariff barriers
- promoting trade exchanges and mutual investment
- realising the free movement of goods, personnel and labour services
- achieving the unification of tariffs and currencies
- establishing a free trade zone.

The initial member states were Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, Eswatini, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe. South Africa became a member after 1994.

South Africa has consistently sought to nurture regional integration at three levels: the Southern African Customs Union (SACU), SADC and the Tripartite FTA between the SADC, the Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa (COMESA) and East African Countries (EAC). In particular, South Africa has championed a "developmental regionalism" approach that combines market integration, cross-border infrastructure development as well as policy coordination to diversify production and boost intra-African trade. South Africa contributed to the development of SACU's Five-Point Plan, which aims to transform the customs union from a tariffs and a revenue-sharing agreement to an integrated institution capable of promoting true regional economic development.

South Africa and Namibia co-hosted the SADC Solidarity Conference with Western Sahara from 25 to 26 March 2019 in Pretoria. This came after the 37th Summit of the SADC Heads of State and Government resolved to convene the Solidarity Conference with Western Sahara.

During the Solidarity Conference, the SADC Heads of State and Government expressed the region's support towards decolonisation and right to self-determination of the people of Western Sahara.

Work in SADC continues to focus on consolidating the SADC FTA launched in 2008, before considering deeper forms of integration in the region. The ongoing negotiations to

establish the Tripartite FTA will combine the three major RECs of 600 million people and a combined GDP of USD\$1 trillion, as building blocks towards continental integration.

At its meeting in Cape Town on 9 May 2018, Cabinet approved the agreement establishing the TFTA between the COMESA, EAC and SADC be tabled in Parliament for ratification.

The establishment of the TFTA has been heralded as one of the most important developments in Africa. It responds to the need for Africa to overcome small fragmented markets and increases prospects of stimulating industrialisation, employment, income generation and poverty reduction. It further addresses the negative impact on industrialisation, economies of scale and competitiveness.

The TFTA is a key Africa-led project that is being done through the promotion of intra-African investments and attraction of more foreign investment into the FTA. It is an important initiative in accelerating regional integration efforts aimed at improved intra-African trade,

The TFTA is anchored on the development integration approach that is based on three pillars: market integration, infrastructure development and industrial development. It also forms the basis for the ongoing African continental FTA negotiations which will unlock trade and investment opportunities in the entire continent.

This is also aligned to South Africa's NDP objective of an integrated Southern African region with beneficial relations with the rest of the world.

One of the key areas to stimulate regional economic development has been the finalisation of the SADC Regional Infrastructure Development Master Plan, which will focus on the following six priority sectors: energy, transport, ICT/communications, water, tourism and meteorology.

South Africa has played a critical role in promoting peace, security and political stability in the SADC Region including participation in peace missions. This includes creating an environment conducive to regional political integration, facilitation, and the promotion of democracy and good governance.

Development partners

South Africa has key partnerships such as FOCAC, Africa's comprehensive partnership with India, and the Korea-Africa Forum. South Africa's government spares no effort in strengthening the progressive forums of the South such as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM), G77+China, Africa-South America Summit and the NAASP. These forums have demonstrated that they are trusted allies and partners in South Africa's aim for a better Africa in a better world.

Relations with countries of the South remain strong and South Africa's Brazil, Russia, India, China and South Africa (BRICS) membership has yielded benefits for the country and is expected to do so for the rest of the continent. Efforts continue within BRICS on common objectives, including addressing challenges in respective regions and the world at large. BRICS also continues to provide alternative market access as well as strategic political support in pursuit of a just and equitable world.

In the same vein, South Africa continues to support the consolidation of the India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Dialogue Forum. IBSA serves as an intimate platform from which to coordinate matters of common interest and concern, and to promote development through the IBSA Fund for the Alleviation of Poverty and Hunger.

The Indian Ocean region is of vital importance and of growing geostrategic significance. South Africa views the IORA as the pre-eminent regional organisation linking Africa, the Middle East and Asia via the Indian Ocean. The association is growing in stature and prominence, and South Africa is chairing the IORA from October 2017 to 2019.

Brazil, Russia, India, China, South Africa trade alliance

Since its formation, BRICS has seen its work evolve and expand from its initial economic mandate to also include a focus on global political-security issues.

As such, the grouping is a strong and vocal promoter and supporter of multilateralism with the UN playing the central role in dealing with global challenges and threats and of the World Trade Organisation as the institution that sets multilateral trade rules.

BRICS has achieved a number of milestones that clearly illustrate that the Grouping has significantly strengthened and delivered on its agenda. The implementation of the "Strategy for BRICS Economic Partnership" (2015), is vigorously pursued and encourages measures that support greater participation, value addition and upward mobility in the global value chains of BRICS firms, including through the preservation of policy space to promote industrial development.

BRICS' commitment to the enhancement of intra-BRICS trade, investment, and financial cooperation is further strengthened and supported through the establishment of the Contingency Reserve Arrangement (CRA) and the New Development Bank (NDB) that focusses on financing infrastructure and sustainable development projects in BRICS countries, as well as in Emerging Markets and Developing Economies (EMDEs).

In addition, the NDB's Africa Regional Centre (ARC) was established in Johannesburg, and will furthermore streamline financing projects in South Africa and in the region.

The forum also derives benefits through the BRICS Track II institutions such as the BRICS Business Council; BRICS Think-Tank Council; and the BRICS Inter-Bank Cooperation Mechanism.

People-to-people engagements have also flourished and various forums for business people, academics, civil society, youth, and parliamentarians have been established.

Initiatives such as the BRICS Film Festival, Cultural Festival and Sports Games are exciting highlights of the annual calendar of events.

South Africa assumed the rotational Chairship of BRICS on 1 January 2018 and successfully hosted the 10th BRICS Summit in Johannesburg from 25 to 27 July 2018, under the theme: "BRICS in Africa: Collaboration for Inclusive Growth and Shared Prosperity in the 4th Industrial Revolution."

As part of its Chairship, South Africa proposed new areas of BRICS cooperation, which also formed the outcomes of the 10th summit. These include:

- Fourth Industrial Revolution (4IR): As part of the key deliverables, the BRICS Leaders endorsed the establishment of a BRICS Working Group on the 4IR through the BRICS Partnership on New Industrial Revolution.

- BRICS Networks of Science Parks, Technology Business Incubators and small and medium enterprises: In further support of the above point, BRICS Networks of Science Parks, Technology Business Incubators and Small and Medium-sized Enterprises, is to be established.
- Vaccine Centre: A BRICS Vaccine Research Centre is to be established in South Africa to address common challenges in health.
- Women's Forum: To promote inclusive growth in the development of the BRICS societies, the forum's work in establishing a BRICS Women's Forum and the BRICS Women's Business Alliance, is ongoing.
- Peacekeeping: BRICS leaders recognized the importance of UN peacekeeping for the maintenance of international peace and security and the contribution of BRICS countries to UN Peacekeeping.
- BRICS Working Group on Tourism: In order to increase economic development and people-to-people relations to further grow intra-BRICS tourism, a BRICS Working Group on Tourism is to be established.
- Foreign Affairs Spokespersons: Work is ongoing in the establishment of the BRICS Foreign Affairs Spokespersons Platform.

In addition, the following agreements were signed during the 10th BRICS Summit:

- The Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Regional Aviation Partnership
 - The MoU on Environment
 - Agreement between Brazil and the New Development Bank on the Hosting of the NDB Americas Regional Office in Brazil
- A key element for South Africa since joining BRICS in 2011, was to strategically position Africa on the Agenda of BRICS through expressions of support for the continent's objectives of development and industrialisation.

In 2013 during its first tenure as BRICS Chair South Africa introduced the BRICS-Africa Outreach Dialogue – an initiative which South Africa again elected to host in 2018 albeit in an extended format that also included the BRICS Plus format, represented by Jamaica, Argentina, and Turkey.

Heads of State and Government of SADC were also in

attendance. The 2018 edition was thus a joint meeting with Leaders from the continent and those from the Global South, discussions were centred on (i) BRICS support for Africa's industrial and infrastructure as contained in the NEPAD programmes and the AU's Agenda 2063; and (ii) on the implementation of the UN's 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development and the building of broad partnerships for development.

India, Brazil and South Africa Forum

The IBSA Dialogue Forum brings together three large pluralistic, multicultural and multiracial societies from three continents as a purely South-South grouping of like-minded countries committed to inclusive sustainable development, in pursuit of the well-being of their peoples and those of the developing world.

The principles, norms and values underpinning the IBSA Dialogue Forum are participatory democracy, respect for human rights, the Rule of Law and the strengthening of multilateralism.

The realisation of the trilateral alliance between IBSA stems from three commonalities between the three countries, namely: all three countries are vibrant democracies, they share common views on various global issues and are substantial emerging economies within their sub-regions.

The engagement process of the IBSA countries takes place on a number of levels, namely: Summit (Heads of State and Government), the IBSA Trilateral Ministerial Commission meeting (Ministers), Senior Officials (Sherpas), and Technical (through various working groups).

An informal meeting of IBSA's Foreign Ministers met in June 2018 and adopted the IBSA Declaration on South-South Cooperation.

The Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, India's External Affairs Minister and Brazil's External Relations Minister met in New York on 27 September 2018, on the margins of the 73rd Session of the UN General Assembly.

Commemorating the 15th anniversary of its formal launching, the Ministers underscored the importance of the principles, norms and values underpinning the IBSA Dialogue Forum, including participatory democracy, respect for human rights and the rule of law. In mapping out the strategic outlook of IBSA, the

Ministers reiterated the need for IBSA to leverage its strengths and unique identity as a grouping of the Global South, bringing together three large pluralistic, multi-cultural and multi-racial societies from three continents.

In the context of today's dynamic global order, the Ministers underscored the strategic significance of IBSA in safeguarding and advancing the interests of the South on the global stage. They stressed the importance of multilateralism and the need to reform global governance structures in order to make them more inclusive, democratic, representative, transparent and responsive to the needs of the South.

Indian Ocean Rim Association

IORA is a charter-based regional organisation is an economic cooperative community of 21 littoral and island states around the Indian Ocean and seven dialogue partners. It represents one of the most diverse and geo-strategically important regions of the world, with a heterogeneous mix of developed, developing, Least Developed Countries and Small Island Developing States.

South Africa was at the forefront of drafting the IORA Concord's Action Plan (2017 – 2021) which provides a firm set of realistic and measurable commitments.

South Africa also prioritized IORA's relations with other international multilateral bodies such as the UN and the AU through the 2050 African Integrated Maritime Strategy and Agenda 2063, as well as deepening and broadening IORA's engagement with its Dialogue Partner countries. Dr Nomvuyo Nokwe South Africa's former High Commissioner to Mauritius, is the current Secretary-General of IORA.

South Africa successfully hosted the 8th Biannual meeting of the IORA Committee of Senior Officials in Durban from 30 to 31 July 2018 and the 18th meeting of the IORA Council of Ministers on 2 November 2018 in Durban.

Commonwealth

The modern Commonwealth is a voluntary association of 53 independent member countries. Membership is diverse and includes developed and developing countries in Africa, Asia, the Americas, the Caribbean, Europe and the South Pacific.

Since rejoining the Commonwealth in 1994, South Africa

has interacted closely with the work of the Commonwealth, contributing politically, financially and in terms of capacity and expertise to the work of the organisation.

A South African delegation led by President Cyril Ramaphosa attended the Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM 2018), under the title "Towards a Common Future" that took place in London on 19 and 20 April 2018.

South Africa actively participated through interventions delivered at the executive sessions of the CHOGM, the Pre-CHOGM Foreign Ministers Meeting as well as side-events arranged during this period.

CHOGM 2018 provided South Africa with an opportunity to market and promote South Africa as an investment destination. The South Africa delegation also utilised the opportunity to continue to lobby for South Africa's candidature to the UN Security Council for the term 2019 – 2020. It further provided an ideal opportunity to promote the centenary year of the birth of President Nelson Mandela.

On 20 April 2018, the meeting adopted the Final Communiqué, a Leaders' Statement as well as the Commonwealth Blue Charter on the Oceans Economy; the Commonwealth Cyber Declaration on Security in the Cyber Space; the Commonwealth Guidelines on Election Observation on Electoral Support and the Declaration on the Commonwealth Connectivity Agenda for Trade and Investment on Promotion of Trade and Investment.

Non-Aligned Movement

The NAM, consisting of 120 members, is chaired by the Venezuela until 2019. It is the largest political grouping of countries outside the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

A South African delegation attended the 18th Mid-term Ministerial Conference that was held in Baku, Azerbaijan, from 5 to 6 April 2018. The meeting took place under the theme: "Promoting International Peace and Security for Sustainable Development".

South Africa actively participated through statements delivered by the Deputy Minister during the General Debate and the NAM Ministerial Committee on Palestine.

South Africa also introduced a Special Declaration on the

Commemoration of the Centenary of the Birth of Nelson Mandela, which was adopted by consensus.

The Ministerial Conference adopted the Baku Final Document; The Baku Declaration; Political Declaration of the Committee on Palestine and the Special Declaration on the Commemoration of the Centenary of the Birth of Nelson Mandela. South Africa's participation was guided by national priorities, namely consolidation of the Africa agenda, close South-South cooperation and countering the marginalisation of the South.

South Africa's main priority still remain the monitoring of the debate on Palestine and to actively show solidarity with the Palestinian people.

As a member of the NAM Committee on Palestine, South Africa supports all initiatives of the movement aimed at the realisation of the inalienable rights of the Palestinian people, including their right to return to their homeland.

Group of 77 (G77) and China

The G77 was established on 15 June 1964 by 77 developing countries, signatories of the "Joint Declaration of the Seventy-Seven Developing Countries" issued at the end of the first session of the UN Conference on Trade and Development, in Geneva, Switzerland.

Although the members of the G77 have increased to 134 countries, including China as the associate member, the original name was retained due to its historic significance.

The G77 and China is the largest intergovernmental organisation of developing countries in the UN system. It provides the means for countries of the South to promote their collective economic interests, enhances its joint negotiating capacity on all major international economic issues within the UN system and promotes South-South cooperation.

South Africa chaired the G77 and China in 2006 and 2015. Significant during South Africa's chairing of the G77 was the adoption of the landmark 2030 Agenda for SDGs, which builds on the Millennium Development Goals and sets the global development trajectory until 2030.

As Chair of the G77, South Africa was also at the forefront of the negotiations and successfully carried out its mandate

to ensure that the positions of developing countries were advanced.

Additionally, during South Africa's chairing of the group developing countries were able to influence the outcomes of the Paris Climate Change negotiations, and international outcomes on development financing.

West Africa

Senegal

Senegal and South Africa are bound by their historic ties of friendship that were established during the struggle against colonialism and apartheid. Full diplomatic relations were established on 6 May 1994.

Senegal is a bastion of stability in Francophone West Africa. It is a strong constitutional democracy and one of the only African countries that have never experienced a coup d'état or any type of violent transition since its independence from France in 1960.

South Africa and Senegal enjoy cordial bilateral political, economic and social relations underpinned by strong historical ties dating back to the years of the liberation struggle.

The Dakar Talks are widely considered to have paved the way towards a negotiated settlement between the African National Congress and the then government in South Africa.

South Africa and Senegal conduct their bilateral relations through a Joint Commission for Bilateral Cooperation.

Mali

South Africa and Mali established bilateral relations in May 1994. The bilateral relations between the two countries are conducted through the Joint Commission for Cooperation signed in December 2000.

South Africa assisted the government of Mali in the preservation of the Ahmed Baba Institute of Higher Learning and Islamic Research in Timbuktu through an African Renaissance Fund contribution.

Peace, security and stability remain a challenge in Northern and Central Mali. South Africa supports the current peace process in Mali and encourages all the parties involved to remain committed to the implementation of the Peace Agreement in an effort to ensuring lasting peace.

The Gambia

South Africa and The Gambia established formal diplomatic relations on 7 August 1998. The South African Ambassador in Dakar, Senegal, is accredited to The Gambia on a non-residential basis.

Guinea-Bissau

South Africa and Guinea Bissau established formal diplomatic relations on 11 October 1994, even though the relations between South Africa and Guinea-Bissau date back to the common struggle against apartheid and colonialism.

Cabo Verde

South Africa and Cabo Verde exchanged diplomatic notes to establish diplomatic relations in 1994 followed by the signing of the Agreement on the Establishment of a Mechanism for Bilateral Consultation during an AU Summit in 2015.

Liberia

The formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and Liberia were established in 1997. The Liberian government opened its embassy in Pretoria in October 1997 while South Africa opened a resident diplomatic mission in Monrovia in October 2010.

South Africa and Liberia maintain good diplomatic and political relations since the attainment of freedom and democracy in South Africa.

South Africa and Liberia signed an Agreement on Visa Exemption for Holders of Diplomatic and Official Passports on 3 May 2018.

The two countries have also since the establishment of diplomatic relations signed a General Cooperation Agreement, the MoU on Economic and Technical Cooperation.

These agreements allow the two countries to engage on a number of areas of possible cooperation, including agriculture, energy, infrastructure development, capacity and institutional building and trade as well as in the health sector.

Sierra Leone

The diplomatic relations between South Africa and Sierra Leone were established in 1998 through the exchange of diplomatic notes.

In April 2018, President Cyril Ramaphosa congratulated Julius Maada Bio on his election as President of the Republic of Sierra Leone

Niger

Diplomatic relations were established in May 1994. In March 2008 South Africa opened an embassy in Niamey which is headed by a Chargé d 'Affaires. Niger opened its embassy in Pretoria during the last quarter of 2012.

An Agreement on the Establishment of a Joint Commission of Cooperation was concluded on 8 May 2007 and the inaugural session of the commission took place in October 2013.

Côte d'Ivoire

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Côte d'Ivoire were established in May 1992. The Agreement on the Establishment of a Joint Commission of Cooperation (JCC) was concluded in December 2015.

At a political level, given South Africa's firm commitment to the African Renaissance and its attendant features of stability and democratisation on the continent, the country previously played an important role in assisting to find a peaceful resolution to the stalemate following the disputed Presidential Elections in Cote d'Ivoire.

Bilateral trade between South Africa and Cote D'Ivoire has experienced an upward trend. South African investors are present in the following sectors: banking, transport and telecommunications.

Nigeria

President Ramaphosa undertook a Working Visit to Nigeria from 10 to 11 July 2018, during which he met with his counterpart, President Muhammadu Buhari.

During the visit, President Ramaphosa also participated in the 2018 Annual Meeting and 25th Anniversary Celebrations of the African Export-Import Bank hosted by Nigeria.

As the continent's two largest economies, South Africa and Nigeria enjoy good political, economic and social bilateral relations formally established in 1994, immediately after South Africa's first democratic elections.

Formal relations between South Africa and Nigeria have been conducted through the Bi-National Commission, established in 1999 as a structured bilateral mechanism to promote political, economic, social, cultural, scientific and technical cooperation between the two countries.

Through eight successful biennial sessions over the years, the Bi-National Commission has deepened and solidified the relations between the two countries, and laid the foundation for increased bilateral political and economic cooperation.

There are a number of signed bilateral agreements between the two countries which cover various areas such as arts and culture, education, agriculture, trade and investment, mining, defence, policing, immigration, taxation, science and technology, health, tourism, environment and energy amongst others.

There are over 120 South African companies currently doing business in Nigeria in various sectors, mainly in telecommunications, banking, retail, hospitality, mining, tourism, agriculture and construction and tourism.

Some of the South African companies that have invested in Nigeria include MTN, Multichoice, Stanbic Bank, Shoprite Checkers, South African Airways, Sasol and Bon Hotels.

In February 2019, President Ramaphosa congratulated his Nigerian counterpart, President Buhari following his successful re-election to the position of President of Nigeria.

Ghana

On 5 July 2018, President Ramaphosa hosted President Nana Addo Dankwa Akufo-Addo from Ghana on a State Visit to South Africa.

The State Visit strengthened the already good political, economic and social relations that South Africa and Ghana enjoy, which were formalised at the advent of democracy in South Africa. The two countries established in May 2007 a Permanent Joint Commission for Cooperation, as a structured bilateral mechanism to provide for political, economic, social, cultural, scientific and technical cooperation between the two countries. During the State Visit and after four successful biennial sessions, the commission was elevated to become a Bi-National Commission at the presidential level.

The Permanent Joint Commission for Cooperation essentially

oversees the implementation of more than 20 bilateral agreements and memoranda of understanding, which cover various fields, including trade and investment, avoidance of double taxation, information and communication, transport, electricity, oil and gas, tourism, environment, science and technology and arts and culture.

Trade between South Africa and Ghana increased considerably from almost R4 billion in 2014 to R13 billion in 2018. South Africa exported R4.4 billion worth of goods to Ghana in 2018 while imports were valued at R8.7 billion, thus registering a trade deficit of R4.3 billion with Ghana in 2019.

The majority of the South African investment projects are in the services sector with a total of over 100 projects valued at over US\$780m. Other sectors that South Africa has invested in include agriculture, building and construction, manufacturing and tourism.

Benin

South Africa and Benin established formal diplomatic relations in May 1994. South Africa opened an embassy in Cotonou in 2007 and Benin opened its embassy in Pretoria in January 1999.

The Agreement for the Establishment of a Joint Commission on Cooperation was concluded on 14 June 2015.

Burkina Faso

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Burkina Faso were established in May 1995. South Africa has an embassy in Ouagadougou since February 2007 and Burkina opened an embassy in Pretoria in June 2007.

An Agreement to Establish a Joint Cooperation Commission was concluded in April 2007.

South Africa and Burkina Faso work closely through regional bodies, SADC and ECOWAS, as well as the continental body, the AU, to address all challenges that hinder Africa's development and to ensure that the set objectives in relation to the Agenda 2063 are achieved without fail.

Togo

Relations between South Africa and Togo were established in

1997. The South African Ambassador in Benin is accredited to Togo on a non-residential basis. South Africa and Togo are currently negotiating a Framework Agreement for Cooperation.

The agreement will establish cooperation in a number of fields including agro-processing, port management, mining and energy. Nedbank and the Public Investment Corporation are the second and third largest shareholders respectively in the Lomé Head-Quartered West African Bank, Ecobank.

East Africa

Burundi

South Africa's relations with Burundi are sound and cordial. South Africa participated as the mediator in the AU-led Burundi Peace Process, which was first led by former President Nelson Mandela, followed by former President Thabo Mbeki and then by then Deputy President Zuma. The process led to the Arusha Peace Accords in 2000 – 2005 that brought an end to the long civil war.

South Africa has invested significantly in Burundi's peace and stability and it closely follows developments in Burundi, a small but key role player in the Great Lakes Region.

Peace and stability in Burundi are seen as crucial factors to the achievement of peace in the entire region.

South Africa supports the facilitation efforts led by the East African Community in the spirit of the Arusha Peace and Reconciliation Agreement led by former Tanzanian President Benjamin Mkapa, with the support of the AU and the UN. The country supports efforts to create an environment conducive to the holding of elections.

South Africa ready to assist and support the mediation process, if and when it is called upon. It continues to stand by the people of Burundi in their search for sustainable peace, security and development.

Djibouti

South Africa and Djibouti enjoy excellent relations. Current infrastructure development programmes, including the free development zones, provide fertile ground for active investment by South African companies.

Eritrea

Eritrea serves as one of the fastest-growing economies in the Horn of Africa with a GDP growth rate of 8,5%. The country is rich in mineral resources, including copper, gold, granite, marble, oil and gas reserves. The promotion of trade and investment between South Africa and Eritrea is important, especially in the fields of tourism and infrastructure development.

Ethiopia

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia, which were revived in 1995 when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa, remain strong.

The two countries have a number of bilateral agreements in place that establish a regulatory framework to facilitate political, economic and social interaction such as an agreement on the avoidance of double taxation. The umbrella agreement provides for the establishment of a Joint Ministerial Commission should meet every two years.

In April 2018, President Ramaphosa congratulated Dr Abiy Ahmed Ali on being chosen to lead Ethiopia's Ethiopian People's Revolutionary Democratic Front ruling coalition on 28 March 2018, and his subsequent swearing-in as Prime Minister on Monday, 2 April 2018.

A South Africa-Ethiopia Senior Officials Meeting was held in March 2018, followed by the Joint Ministerial Commission in August 2018.

Indian Ocean Islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with the Comoros, Madagascar, Mauritius and Seychelles remain strong.

Greater emphasis is being placed, in terms of South Africa's Operation Phakisa, on building partnerships with the islands in respect of the Ocean Economy to enhance trade and investment in areas such as, among others, marine manufacturing and transport; aquaculture; offshore oil and gas exploration; and marine protection and governance.

The South Africa-Seychelles Senior Officials Meeting, which was held in March 2018, was upgraded to a Joint Commission due to the increased bilateral interaction between the two countries.

Further emphasis on South Africa's relations with the islands is being provided through the IORA, which is chaired by South Africa.

South Africa and Seychelles established formal relations in 1992. The relationship has been progressive, with a display of support for strategic tourism events hosted in each country and a shared vision for regional tourism development and integration. South Africa and the Seychelles will this year mark the 25th anniversary of the establishment of their diplomatic relations.

In March 2018, the DIRCO hosted the Executive Head of the Seychelles Ministry of Foreign Affairs, Ambassador Barry Faure, for the second session of the Joint Commission of Cooperation between South Africa and the Seychelles.

The meeting reaffirmed the close friendship and common interests and values that are the foundation of the strong relationship between the two countries.

The two countries used the occasion to review bilateral political and economic relations, expressing satisfaction at the progress achieved in various areas of cooperation since the last session of the joint commission in 2014. The parties demonstrated their commitment to increase cooperation.

They agreed to explore other areas of cooperation over the coming years in trade and investment; agriculture and fisheries; education and human resource development; environment and the blue economy; youth and sports; defence and police; tourism and culture; health; science and technology; maritime and air transport; higher education; and social development.

In January 2019, the government sent a representative to attend the inauguration of President-elect Andry Rajoelina in Antananarivo. The visit was also used to strengthen bilateral and socio-economic relations between the two countries.

Madagascar and South Africa have strong bilateral relations and currently have an MoU on Regular Diplomatic Consultations which covers various areas of cooperation such as political, security, economic and social issues of mutual interest.

Kenya

At the end of May 2018, Deputy President David Mabuza went to Nairobi, Kenya, on a Working Visit that also coincided with

the Madaraka Day (Freedom Day) celebrations, marking the day when Kenya attained internal self-rule from Britain in 1963.

South Africa and Kenya enjoy strong bilateral relations, with the two countries' Heads of State meeting on the margins of various international and multilateral engagements to discuss matters of mutual interest.

In November 2018, researchers from South Africa and Kenya met in Pretoria to enhance collaboration on science and technology between the two countries.

South Africa and Kenya enjoy cordial relations since the signing of a bilateral agreement in 2004, which was implemented by the Department of Science and Technology (DST) and Kenya's Ministry of Education, National Commission for Science, Technology & Innovation.

The DST has called for the two countries to develop a joint young technology entrepreneurs programme to support transboundary collaboration in technology innovation, including at grassroots.

Rwanda

Since the establishment of diplomatic relations in 1995 between South Africa and Rwanda, the two countries continue have close interaction at a high political level.

Rwanda is an important partner in the advancement and the championing of the African Agenda by being among the first countries to volunteer for the African APRM and by actively contributing troops to the African Peacekeeping Missions in Sudan and the CAR.

In January 2018, President Ramaphosa met the President of Rwanda, Mr Paul Kagame during several High Level meetings, which included the World Economic Forum's Annual Meeting in January which was held in Davos, the 10th Extraordinary Summit of the AU which took place in Rwanda in March 2018 and the G20 Summit in Canada in June 2018. In his capacity as the Chairperson of the AU, President Kagame also participated in the BRICS Africa Outreach meeting as part of the 10th BRICS Summit in South Africa in July 2018.

South Africa and Rwanda signed over 20 bilateral agreements in various fields and continue to enjoy cordial relations

Somalia

In September 2018 the UN Secretary-General announced the appointment of Nicholas Haysom of South Africa as his Special Representative for Somalia and Head of the UN Assistance Mission in Somalia. He succeeded Michael Keating of the United Kingdom from October 2018.

Sudan

The relations between South Africa and Sudan remain cordial. South Africa is also playing a key role in the resolution of conflicts and the post-conflict reconstruction efforts in that country. Moreover, Sudan serves among key African countries with the potential for increased trade and investment. South Africa and Sudan are in the process of finalizing an Agreement on Joint Cooperation Commission.

South Sudan

On 14 January 2019, Deputy President David Mabuza, visited Addis Ababa in Ethiopia to continue with the consultations he has been having with the leadership of the Member States of the Intergovernmental Authority on Development (IGAD), as part of facilitating efforts towards sustainable peace and stability in South Sudan.

The Deputy President met with the Chairperson of IGAD and Prime Minister of Ethiopia, Dr Abiy Ahmed Ali. They discussed the implementation of the Revitalised Peace Agreement on South Sudan and preparations for the transitional period.

Uganda

South Africa and Uganda have enjoyed good political and economic relations since 1994. The relations were cemented when the South Africa-Uganda Joint Commission of Cooperation was inaugurated in Pretoria during November 2012.

South Africa and Uganda continue to cooperate closely and coordinate their positions on issues in a number of regional and multilateral forums, such as the AU and the UN, and share similar perspectives, particularly on the political and economic integration processes on the African continent.

North and Central Africa

Egypt

South Africa and Egypt have a Joint Bilateral Commission (JBC), convened at ministerial level, for enhancing and strengthening bilateral relations.

South Africa is committed to forging closer strategic cooperation with Egypt, focusing in particular on economic and security cooperation, and to continue working together in pursuance of continental integration, peace and security as well as the fight against all forms of terrorism and extremism.

Libya

South Africa is deeply concerned over the prevailing political and security situation in Libya, which has gravely affected peace and security in the region.

At the same time, South Africa has also noted, with satisfaction, the positive developments regarding the UN Political Agreement to establish a government of National Accord in Libya.

In this regard, South Africa urges the Libyan people and its leaders to set aside their differences and unite in the interest of peace, stability and prosperity in Libya. Further, South Africa is ready to assist the Libyan people by sharing her experiences on democratic transition and reconciliation.

Algeria

South Africa enjoys historic and cordial relations with Algeria and regards it as a strategic partner in the region and continent. Since the establishment of the Presidential Binational Commission in 2000, bilateral political trade and economic links have been growing steadily.

Algeria's relations with countries of the Maghreb, the Mediterranean, the Arab Peninsular and the Sahel regions serves as a platform to promote joint Algeria-South Africa partnerships/ventures in the mutual interest of all parties.

Morocco

South Africa and Morocco enjoy cordial diplomatic relations. Morocco recalled its Ambassador to South Africa in 2004, following South Africa's recognition of the Sahrawi Arab Democratic Republic (SADR). Bilateral relations have since

been maintained at the level of a *Chargé d'Affaires en titre* (Morocco) and *Chargé d'Affaires ad interim* (South Africa).

Western Sahara is Africa's longest-running territorial dispute and an issue of continental and international law and diplomatic controversy, having been on the decolonisation agenda of the UN and AU for more than 50 years.

Morocco contends that the Western Sahara, a former Spanish colony, is an integral part of its kingdom. On the other side, the Polisario Front, which is campaigning for the territory's independence, demands a referendum on self-determination.

The SADR is a full member of the AU, while Morocco withdrew from the then OAU, in protest at the SADR's inclusion. Morocco was re-admitted as a member of the AU in 2017.

Throughout the years, Pretoria has maintained the same position on the right to self-determination for the Saharawi people, as enshrined in the UN Charter and the AU Constitutive Act.

Western Sahara

Formal diplomatic relations were established at ambassador level in 2004. South Africa continues to render political support and humanitarian assistance to the SADR. Through the African Renaissance Fund, South Africa supports projects that aim to benefit the Saharawi population.

South Africa's international solidarity and support for the self-determination of Western Sahara is based on:

- the principles of multilateralism and international legality in seeking a just, lasting and mutually acceptable political solution, which will provide for the self-determination of the people of Western Sahara;
- the centrality of the AU and UN in the resolution of the conflict;
- the Constitutive Act of the AU, in particular the principle of the sanctity of inherited colonial borders in Africa and the right of peoples of former colonial territories to self-determination and independence;
- respect for international human rights law in the occupied territories, notably the right to freedom of association, assembly, movement and expression;
- respect for international humanitarian law and support for the provision of humanitarian assistance to the Saharawi

refugees in a way that is predictable, sustainable and timely;

- an end to the illegal exploration and exploitation of the natural resources of Western Sahara in the illegally occupied territory and the discouragement of the involvement of foreign companies in such activities; and
- support for the integration and stability of the Maghreb Union as a building block of the AU.

South Africa reiterates its call for two parties to return to a discussion table and have constructive direct dialogue.

In March 2019, South Africa hosted a Solidarity Conference with the SADR, following a resolution by SADC during the 38th Ordinary Summit of Heads of State and Government to convene the conference. During the solidarity conference, the SADC Heads of State and Government would express the region's support for decolonisation and self-determination for Western Sahara on the basis of the values and principles that have guided the quest for independence throughout Africa.

SADC's collaboration on and with Western Sahara has been informed by the region's own decolonisation experiences and the quest for liberation and self-determination.

Mauritania

South Africa made a constructive contribution in Mauritania in support of the implementation of the democratic road map undertaken by the military transitional government following the *coup d'état* of August 2005.

These efforts contributed to the restoration of constitutional order and stability in Mauritania, leading to South Africa's support for the lifting of the AU suspension of the country in April 2007.

In terms of economic relations, progress has been recorded between the two countries in the areas of fisheries and mining.

Tunisia

The South African embassy in Tunisia was officially opened in 1994. South Africa and Tunisia enjoy a very healthy and mutually beneficial political and economic relationship. Relations between the two countries are based on a Joint Bilateral Commission launched in 1996.

In October 2018, the then Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation undertook a Working Visit to Tunis where he met the country's Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs, Mr Sabri Bachtobji, to discuss a wide range of bilateral issues. He also paid a courtesy call on the Tunisian Foreign Minister, held consultations with the Minister of Tourism and Handicrafts as well as the Secretary of State for International Trade. He also delivered the Nelson Mandela Centenary Lecture at the University of Tunis II.

Chad

South Africa and Chad established diplomatic relations in 1994, but it was only in 2013 that both countries appointed resident ambassadors.

Chad is a member of the Economic Community of Central African States (CEMAC), the Community of Sahel-Saharan States, the Grouping G5 of the Sahel, the Lake Chad Basin Commission, member and host of the Multi-National Joint Task Force (in the fight against Boko Haram) and is the designated Chair of the CEMAC. In 2017, South Africa signed a Bilateral Air Services Agreement with Chad.

Democratic Republic of São Tomé and Príncipe

Following its independence in 1975, São Tomé and Príncipe expanded its diplomatic relationships. Since the establishment of full diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1994, the relations between the two countries have grown significantly.

Republic of the Congo

Bilateral cooperation between the two countries takes place within the framework of the GPA, signed in 2003 and which establishes a Joint Commission for Cooperation, the deepening of bilateral relations between the two countries have seen the signing of a number of agreements.

The Joint Trade Committee is playing an important role in facilitating the trade and investment relationship.

Equatorial Guinea

On 2 April 2019, President Cyril Ramaphosa concluded a Working Visit to Equatorial Guinea where he held talks with his

counterpart, President Obiang Nguema Mbasongo. President Ramaphosa was accompanied by a delegation comprising of the then Minister of International Relations and Cooperation, and Minister of Defence and Military Veterans and other senior government officials.

The visit provided an opportunity for President Ramaphosa and President Nguema to strengthen political, diplomatic and economic relations between the two countries, in pursuance of the objective to promote peace, security and sustainable development in Africa and the world.

They further agreed on the need to strengthen South-South cooperation and inter-African cooperation in particular.

South Africa and Equatorial Guinea enjoy cordial relations that were formally established in 1993. The two countries have entered into a number of bilateral cooperation agreements, including a General Cooperation Agreement and two agreements on defence cooperation. The two countries are also formulating draft agreements to enhance cooperation in education and energy.

During the visit, the Heads of State participated in a bilateral meeting and witnessed the signing of the Rules of Procedure for a Joint Permanent Commission.

South Africa and Equatorial Guinea serve as non-permanent members of the UNSC and have committed themselves to work together to champion Africa's quest for peace and stability in line with the collective vision encapsulated in the AU's Agenda 2063.

Cameroon

South Africa and Cameroon enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Cameroon is the economic hub of the Central African Region.

The seaport of Doualla in Cameroon is used to import goods to landlocked countries in the region such as Chad and the CAR.

Central African Republic

South Africa opened its embassy in Bangui in 2017 and the two countries enjoy cordial relations.

Southern Africa

Angola

South Africa and Angola continue to work together in maintaining peace, stability and regional integration and promoting the SADC Agenda.

Angola is one of South Africa's major trading partners in Africa with almost 90% of Angolan exports to South Africa being petroleum-related products.

President Ramaphosa, in his capacity as Chair of the SADC, visited Angola in April 2018.

The President held a consultative meeting with President João Lourenço of Angola.

Namibia

South Africa and Namibia enjoy strong and fraternal relations that are characterised by regular and increasing interaction at all levels. The economies of South Africa and Namibia are interlinked with South Africa being one of Namibia's major trading partners.

Namibia imports 80% of its consumables from South Africa. South African companies have a large presence in Namibia and are involved in various sectors such as housing, food and beverages, construction, hotels and leisure, banking and medical services.

In January 2019, South Africa signed a MoU with Namibian for the neighbouring countries to work together in various matters within the fisheries space as the two countries share a common border. This means that there is transboundary of fishing species in both countries and co-management between the two countries has always been important.

In March 2018, President Ramaphosa paid a courtesy visit to Namibia.

South Africa, Namibia and Angola share one of the most productive Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem (BCLME). The collaboration of the three countries is historic where international partners have funded a number of significant projects in the BCLME region. The collaboration was later formalised through Benguela Current Commission and now ratified into a convention.

Lesotho

South Africa's bilateral relations with the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho remain strong and are based on a shared language, history and culture. Lesotho is landlocked in South Africa, creating a unique dependence.

South Africa supplies nearly 90% of Lesotho's total imports and it is critical to the economic success of the Kingdom.

The strong cooperation that exists between the two countries cover a wide range of areas such as the Lesotho Highlands Water Project, the Metolong Dam Project and the revamping and upgrading of the Mokhotlong road and the Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier.

Eswatini

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the Kingdom of Eswatini, reflected in the Joint Bilateral Commission for Cooperation Agreement, are amiable and informed essentially by historical and cultural affinities, including the geographical proximity between the peoples of the two countries.

In March 2019, President Ramaphosa concluded a Working Visit to the Kingdom of eSwatini where he held talks with King Mswati III on a range of bilateral issues.

President Ramaphosa's visit formed part of a series of courtesy calls on Heads of State and government in the SADC.

President Ramaphosa and King Mswati reviewed bilateral cooperation between the two countries

The two leaders directed the ministers of international relations and cooperation in the two countries to convene a Joint Bilateral Commission for Cooperation that oversees the implementation of signed agreements between South Africa and eSwatini.

Zambia

South Africa and Zambia maintain solid economic cooperation as evidenced by the presence of several South African companies in Zambia.

Improved cooperation in a variety of areas such as air services and infrastructural development present economic opportunities to the South African private sector and parastatals.

In March 2018, President Ramaphosa received a courtesy

call from President Edgar Chagwa Lungu of the Republic of Zambia. President Ramaphosa had a working visit to Zambia on 9 August 2018.

The two Presidents committed that South Africa and Zambia would continue to work together on the region's common agenda relating to, among others, peace, security and economic integration.

Structured bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Zambia formerly took place under the framework of the Joint Commission for Cooperation which was signed on 18 October 2005.

Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC)

South Africa and the DRC maintain good diplomatic and political relations. The highest expression of the quality and significance of these diplomatic relations is the annual Bi-National Commission, co-chaired by the Heads of State.

The General Cooperation Agreement, signed by South Africa and the DRC on 14 January 2004, is the principal agreement establishing bilateral cooperation between the two states in the form of the BNC, which provides the basis for political, economic and technical cooperation.

In January 2019, President Ramaphosa congratulated Mr Felix Tshisekedi as President-elect of the DRC after the confirmation by the country's Constitutional Court.

He emphasised the need for the full implementation of the Peace, Security and Cooperation Framework in the DRC and the Great Lakes Region.

Zimbabwe

South Africa and Zimbabwe enjoy historic political and fraternal relations which also incorporate regional affiliation and cultural ties.

Zimbabwe is one of South Africa's main trade partners in Africa and several South African companies operate in Zimbabwe in sectors such as mining, tourism, agriculture, banking, manufacturing and retail.

In March 2018, President Ramaphosa as Chair of SADC visited Harare for a consultative meeting with President Emmerson Mnangagwa.

The meeting aimed to further strengthen the strong economic, political and social relations that exist between South Africa and Zimbabwe. The Heads of State exchanged views on important regional, continental and global issues of mutual concern.

South Africa and Zimbabwe enjoy excellent bilateral relations which date back to the days of the liberation struggle.

On 2 August 2018, President Ramaphosa congratulated President Emmerson Mnangagwa on his election as the President of the Republic of Zimbabwe, following elections held on 30 July 2018.

In March 2019, President Ramaphosa and President Mnangagwa co-chaired the third session of the South Africa-Zimbabwe Bi-National Commission.

Relations between South Africa and Zimbabwe are conducted through the Bi-National Commission which was established in 2015.

During the Bi-National Commission, the two Heads of State reviewed bilateral cooperation and progress made with the implementation of bilateral agreements.

South Africa and Zimbabwe are signatories to 45 agreements which cover a wide range of fields, including trade and investment, health, labour, migration, defence, taxation, tourism, scientific and technological cooperation, water and the environment.

In March 2019, President Ramaphosa and President Mnangagwa co-chaired the third session of the South Africa-Zimbabwe Bi-National Commission.

Malawi

South Africa and Malawi enjoy cordial and fraternal bilateral relations inclusive of political, economic and cultural relations and within the context of regional integration and intra-Africa trade. These bilateral relations are conducted under the framework of the Joint Commission for Cooperation.

Since its inception in May 2007, three sessions of the Joint Commission for Cooperation were held in June 2008, September 2012 and April 2016, respectively. The fourth session of the commission was held in South Africa in 2018.

Mozambique

In January 2019, President Ramaphosa undertook a Working Visit to Mozambique, where he held bilateral talks with his counterpart President Filipe Nyusi to discuss bilateral, regional and global issues of common interest.

South Africa and Mozambique enjoy very good economic, political and cultural relations dating back to the days of the struggle against apartheid.

Mozambique was among the SADC countries that President Ramaphosa visited soon after he assumed Presidency in 2018.

In March 2019, the Minister of International Relations visited Mozambique and Zimbabwe to hand over donations aimed at assisting victims of Cyclone Idai. The donations included financial aid, clothes, water purifiers, non-perishable food items and blankets.

Tanzania

The bilateral relations have been characterised by high-level interaction between the two countries aimed at consolidating and strengthening political, economic and social cooperation.

Economic relations between South Africa and Tanzania have since 1994 grown significantly and continue to expand. The two countries have elevated their bilateral relations by signing a Bi-National Commission Agreement in 2011, thus increasing the scope of areas of cooperation between the two countries.

Botswana

South Africa and Botswana cooperate in a wide range of areas, including transport, trade and investment, health, education, environmental affairs, water, science and technology, agriculture, justice, immigration, energy, finance, culture, security and sport.

In March 2018, President Ramaphosa paid a Working Visit to Botswana.

Relations with Asia and the Middle East

The People's Republic of China

South Africa and China first established formal ties in January 1998.

Since then, the two countries have achieved a significant number of bilateral cooperation agreements in areas such as trade, investment, economic and people-to-people relations.

South Africa and China share a common developmental agenda based on the principle of internationalism and enjoy strong diplomatic and trade relations. China is South Africa's biggest trading partner and also the second biggest economy in the world.

The two countries share membership of and participate as partners in numerous international bodies, including BRICS, the Group of 77+ China, G20 and are co-chairs of FOCAC.

South Africa's bilateral relations with China are guided broadly through mechanisms such as the Beijing Declaration establishing the Comprehensive Strategic Partnership, the Bi-National Commission, Joint Inter-Ministerial Working Group on Cooperation, Strategic Dialogue Mechanism and the 5 –10 Year Strategic Framework on Cooperation signed in 2014.

South Africa-China bilateral relations have grown from a partnership to a strategic partnership and subsequently to a comprehensive strategic partnership. South Africa and China have committed to building, developing and strengthening relations based on shared principles of friendship and mutual trust; equality and mutual benefit; coordination; mutual learning; and working together for development.

South Africa and China's bilateral relations are managed through structured mechanisms, including the BNC, the Joint Working Group and the Strategic Dialogue. These mechanisms are chaired at the Deputy President, Ministerial and Deputy Ministerial level respectively.

South Africa is China's largest trading partner in Africa and China is also South Africa's largest trading partner as reflected in the total trade volume of R343 billion.

South Africa and China work together to improve the structure of bilateral trade by encouraging the trade of high value-added manufactured goods and increasing China's investment in South Africa.

The two sides continue to deepen their cooperation in infrastructure development, including the construction of roads, railways, ports, power plants, airports and housing.

It should be noted that the current bilateral trade volume is

skewed in favour of China and through the numerous high-level engagements the leaders have sought to redress the trade deficit through signing of Agreements and MoUs among others which provide further opportunities for increased exports to China.

In July 2018, President Ramaphosa hosted the President of China, Xi Jinping, on a State Visit to South Africa. The two Heads of State used the State Visit to engage in bilateral talks and evaluate the progress achieved by the two countries on the Strategic Programme of Cooperation with specific reference to the six priority areas identified in 2015.

They include the alignment of industries to accelerate South Africa's industrialisation process; enhancement of cooperation in special economic zones; enhancement of marine cooperation; infrastructure development; human resources cooperation; and financial cooperation.

President Ramaphosa paid a successful State Visit to China in September 2018, to further deepen bilateral relations with China. South Africa signed several agreements with China during the two State visits, with an overall investment commitment from China to the value of US\$14.7 billion.

Japan

South Africa and Japan enjoy excellent diplomatic relations in the fields of trade and investment; science and technology cooperation; and skills development support.

Since 2010, the relations have been upgraded to that of a Strategic Cooperation Partnership.

Japan is a major investor in the South African economy, with a current presence of approximately 140 Japanese companies providing over 150 000 local job opportunities.

The Tokyo International Conference on African Development (TICAD) is a strategic partnership between Africa and Japan that was launched in 1993, with a view to serve as a consultative forum for development assistance to Africa.

TICAD's first Japan-Africa Public-Private Economic Forum (JAPPEF) was held in Sandton, Johannesburg in 2018. The JAPPEF provides USD30 billion for joint public-private African development projects.

The forum brought together Japanese and African Ministers

of Trade and Investment, as well as captains of industries from both Japan and the African continent.

The primary aim of the forum was to promote trade and investment between Japan and Africa, in further support of TICAD's development goals.

In October 2018, South Africa participated in the Ministerial Meeting of the TICAD in Tokyo, Japan.

The meeting reviewed the progress made by the TICAD process since the conclusion of the 6th TICAD Summit, held in Kenya in 2016, and the TICAD Ministerial Review Meeting held in Mozambique in 2017.

The meeting also served as the Ministerial-level preparatory meeting for the 7th TICAD Summit of Heads of State and Governments (TICAD VII) expected to be held in Yokohama, Japan in August 2019.

TICAD remains an important strategic partnership of the AU, with the potential to support African countries to industrialise their economies, create sustainable, inclusive growth and, with it, sustainable employment opportunities and a better future for their people, thus also having the potential to contribute significantly to fulfilling the aspirations of the NDP priorities.

Republic of Korea (ROK)

Formal diplomatic relations between South Africa and the ROK were established in December 1992.

Increasingly, the focus of the bilateral relationship between South Africa and ROK is on trade and investment links, as the latter houses some of the world's leading companies such as Hyundai, Samsung, KIA, Daewoo and LG, which have been sources of investment into South Africa.

The ROK is South Africa's fourth-largest trading partner in Asia. The trade relationship encompasses a wide variety of products, ranging from minerals to sophisticated high-technology electronic products.

By mid-2018, there were over 30 ROK companies in South Africa, with investments in the manufacturing, energy, science and technology, shipping and transport sectors. The ROK regularly makes technical skills training and development opportunities available to South Africa, from which many South Africans have already benefitted, including human resource

capacity building programmes as part of rural development and rural teaching projects.

Structured South Africa-ROK bilateral relations have so far been conducted within the Policy Consultative Forum framework, co-Chaired at Deputy Ministerial level. The first forum took place in Pretoria in 2003. In 2014, the Policy Consultative Forum was elevated to a Joint Cooperation Commission at Ministerial level.

Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK)

South Africa established diplomatic relations with the DPRK in August 1998 and the two countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Due to the imposition of various UN Security Council sanctions against the DPRK as a consequence of the country's controversial nuclear weapons and missile programmes, economic relations with South Africa remain limited.

South Africa is encouraged by the recent positive developments on the Korean Peninsula and the efforts on all sides to promote direct contact and dialogue to ensure holistic and durable solutions to the regional security tensions and welcomes the rapprochement, which culminated into two inter-Korean Summits between the DPRK leader Kim Jong-un and the ROK President Moon-Jae-in in April and May 2018.

The two leaders adopted the Panmunjom Declaration for Peace, Prosperity and Unification of the Korean Peninsula, followed by a Summit meeting between American President Donald Trump and the DPRK leader Kim Jong-un in Singapore, which also adopted a Joint Statement in the interest of peace and security.

South Africa has consistently called for the denuclearisation of the Korean Peninsula, as it firmly believes that nuclear weapons and the pursuance of such capabilities do not enhance security, but rather constitute a source of regional and international insecurity.

Mongolia

South Africa and Mongolia established diplomatic relations on 25 May 1994. The Mongolian embassy in Egypt is accredited to South Africa, while South Africa's embassy in Beijing is accredited to Mongolia.

Mongolia's mining sector and its vast coal reserves potentially offer an opportunity for collaboration with South Africa, especially in terms of clean coal technologies.

South and Central Asia

Central Asia

The South African Ambassador to Kazakhstan is accredited to Tajikistan, Turkmenistan and Kyrgyzstan, while the South African Ambassador in Turkey is accredited to Uzbekistan, both on a non-residential basis. Both Tajikistan's Ambassador to Egypt and Kyrgyzstan's Ambassador in Saudi Arabia are accredited on a non-residential basis to South Africa.

Kazakhstan

In November 2018, South Africa hosted a delegation from Kazakhstan, including the country's Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs of, Mr Yerzhan Ashikbayev and officials the Kazakhstan Ministry of Foreign Affairs for the Sixth South Africa-Kazakhstan Bilateral Political Consultations.

Bilateral relations between the two countries are cordial and are conducted under the umbrella of the structured Protocol on Regular Political Consultations, signed in 1997 and co-chaired at the level of Deputy Minister. The Consultations convene at alternating venues in Kazakhstan and South Africa.

The Bilateral Political Consultation serves to explore opportunities to strengthen relations between the two countries, focusing on trade and investment, skills exchange and academic cooperation and to build on existing cooperation at various levels in the multilateral fora.

The sixth round of the bilateral consultations reviewed progress made since the previous round and further explored closer cooperation in the fields of education and skills exchange, science and technology, mining, agriculture and energy to encourage the expansion of economic cooperation.

Bilateral agreements in a variety of fields, including trade and economic cooperation, immigration and justice are currently under consideration and close to finalisation.

South Asia

South Africa's economic strategy in South Asia is strongly focused on deepening trade and investment linkages, particularly with countries that offer potential for future growth and where synergies and complementarities in products and technologies exist.

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with India, Pakistan, Sri Lanka, Bangladesh, Nepal, Afghanistan and the Maldives.

India

South Africa and India enjoy strong historical and fraternal bonds forged through India's steadfast opposition to racial discrimination and its support for the liberation struggle in South Africa.

Formal diplomatic relations were established in November of 1993 and close cooperation occurs within multilateral groupings such as BRICS, IBSA, IORA and the G20. Formal bilateral relations are structured via a Joint Ministerial Commission and Foreign Office Consultations, which takes place at a senior official's level.

A South Africa-India Business Summit was held in Johannesburg on 30 April 2018, and succeeded in promoting closer ties between the private sectors of both countries. Commercial relations have grown steadily over the last few years, especially in the areas of trade, investment and tourism.

During the July 2018 BRICS Johannesburg Summit, President Ramaphosa and Indian Prime Minister Narendra Modi signed a MoU establishing the Mandela-Gandhi Centre of Specialisation for Artisan Skills which will be situated at the Tshwane South TVET campus and which will specialise in skills training.

In January 2019, the Deputy Minister of International Relations and Cooperation paid an official visit to India where and attended the Raisina Dialogue.

The Raisina Dialogue is India's flagship conference of geopolitics and geo-economics and attracts high-level participants from all over the world. The theme for the 2019 edition was: "A World Reorder: New Geometries, Fluid Partnerships, Uncertain Outcomes." The then Deputy Minister also attended a meeting to discuss issues of mutual interest such as further enhancing the trade and commercial relationship between

South Africa and India, growing foreign direct investment and partnering in areas beneficial for both countries, such as skills exchange. Meetings were also held with business sector representatives and think tanks in Mumbai to promote South Africa as a destination for trade, investment and tourism and to advance the country's foreign policy objectives.

South Africa and India enjoy a strategic partnership and bilateral relations anchored by a deep and shared history of friendship and solidarity. The two countries share a common vision on a range of global issues and closely cooperate in various multilateral fora, such as BRICS, IBSA, G20 and IORA.

In January 2019, President Ramaphosa visited India, at the invitation of the country's Prime Minister Modi.

The visit to India was in the context of strengthening political, economic and cultural bilateral relations between the two countries.

During the visit, South Africa and India entered into a three-year Strategic Programme of Cooperation (2019 – 2021) that aims to further enhance the bilateral strategic partnership.

The President also delivered the inaugural IBSA Forum's Gandhi-Mandela Memorial Freedom Lecture. 2019 marks the 150th birth anniversary of Gandhi, which comes a year after former President Nelson Mandela's centenary celebrations.

During the visit, President Ramaphosa and Prime Minister Modi jointly addressed the India-South Africa Business Forum.

The President encouraged Indian companies to form partnerships with South Africa's financial institutions and private sector to jointly collaborate on projects that can build Africa's productive capacity and infrastructure.

Pakistan

Pakistan and South Africa enjoy cordial bilateral relations and a strong historical bond. Bilateral relations are structured via a Joint Commission. In 2015, a decision was taken to elevate the commission from senior officials' level to that of Deputy Minister.

Both countries are keen to grow the trade relationship further concentrating on deep mining and technology, energy and agro-processing.

Sri Lanka

The bilateral relations between the two countries are cordial and conducted under the umbrella of the structured Partnership Forum.

The two countries held the Seventh Session of the Partnership Forum in Colombo, Sri Lanka in October 2018.

The major exports to Sri Lanka are minerals, primarily coal. Bilateral relations have shown a marked strengthening as a result of growing collaboration over a wide spectrum of activities, most notably tourism, investment, trade, educational exchanges.

Bangladesh, Nepal and Maldives

The South African High Commissioner in Colombo, Sri Lanka, is accredited to Bangladesh, Nepal and Maldives on a non-residential basis.

Bangladesh has been identified as a country with enormous potential for the expansion of trade and economic relations with South Africa.

South Africa and Nepal share good bilateral relations, consolidated further through the exchange of high-level bilateral visits. Various visits from Nepal have also focused on learning from the South African model of transitional justice, best practices and good governance.

While bilateral relations between South Africa and the Maldives are cordial, there is currently no bilateral mechanism in place to advance relations between the two countries.

In an effort to enhance bilateral relations, the Maldives government made a request to open a Diplomatic Mission in South Africa in May 2018. In June 2018, South Africa approved the request.

South-East Asia

The Association of Southeast Asian Nations (ASEAN) has dramatically outpaced the rest of the world in both economic and GDP per capita growth, since the late 1970s.

Already some 67 million households in the ASEAN member states are part of the consuming class, with incomes exceeding the level at which they can begin to make significant discretionary purchases.

That number could almost double to 125 million households by 2025, making ASEAN a pivotal consumer market of the future, and hence of strategic importance to South African trade.

Trade between South Africa and ASEAN is growing rapidly. South Africa's largest trading partners in South East Asia are: Thailand, Indonesia, Malaysia, and Vietnam.

Thailand

South Africa is Thailand's largest trading partner in Africa, while Thailand is South Africa's largest trading partner in ASEAN.

The South African embassy in Thailand is also accredited to Myanmar, Laos and Cambodia.

Malaysia

Malaysia is the fourth-largest new investor into the African continent.

Malaysia continues to remain an important partner to South Africa and is instrumental in working together with South Africa on the latter's Operation Phakisa initiatives.

Singapore

In August 2018, the then Deputy Minister of International Relations represented South Africa in the Singapore-Sub-Saharan High-Level Ministerial Exchange. The Deputy Minister also took part in the Africa-Singapore Business Forum (ASBF) – a premier platform for business exchange and fostering trade and investment between Africa and Asia.

As an integral part of its policy of promoting the overseas growth for Singapore-based companies and international trade, the Singaporean government is also focussing on Africa as a source of new markets through initiatives such as the ASBF and the Sub-Saharan High-Level Ministerial Exchange.

South Africa and Singapore established diplomatic relations in 1992. The current bilateral mechanism that allows the two countries to optimise existing cooperation is the South Africa-Singapore Foreign Office Consultations which takes place annually. South Africa hosted the 5th Foreign Office Consultations in 2018.

Indonesia

South Africa and Indonesia established diplomatic relations in August 1994. Consequently, the South African embassy was established in Jakarta in January 1995.

Vietnam

South Africa and Vietnam celebrated 25 years of diplomatic relations in 2018.

In March 2019, South Africa hosted the fourth Meeting of the South Africa-Vietnam Intergovernmental Partnership Forum for Economic, Trade, Scientific, Technical and Cultural Co-operation. Delegates discussed relations between the two countries and agreed that more needed to be done to expand trade opportunities between the two countries.

There has been positive developments in bilateral relations, particularly the exchange of 14 high-level visits, since the third meeting in the Vietnamese capital of Hanoi in 2015.

Brunei-Darussalam, Cambodia, Lao People's Democratic Republic (PDR), and Timor-Leste

South Africa's relations with Brunei-Darussalam, Cambodia, the PDR and Timor-Leste are cordial.

The South African Mission in Thailand is accredited on a non-residential basis to Cambodia, Laos and Myanmar; the Mission in Malaysia is accredited on a non-residential basis to Brunei-Darussalam; and the Mission in Indonesia is accredited on a non-residential basis to Timor-Leste.

Philippines

South Africa and Philippines celebrated 25 years of diplomatic relations in 2018. Strong relations have been established through a shared history and a friendship that goes back to the Asian-African Bandung Conference of 1955.

South Africa and the Philippines established a structured Bilateral Consultative Forum (BCF) which aims at furthering cooperation between the two countries.

Australasia and the Pacific Islands

Australia

South Africa and Australia enjoy cordial relations and interact

biennially through a Senior Official Meeting.

South Africa and Australia cooperate across a range of sectors and issues, including law enforcement, sport, tourism, education, defence relations, and science and technology.

Australia is South Africa's 23rd-largest trading partner. The majority of exports from South Africa to Australia are finished goods. Exports of high-quality passenger motor vehicles head the list.

New Zealand

At a bilateral level, South Africa and New Zealand enjoy close cooperation in business, tourism, agriculture, disarmament, fisheries, environmental protection, indigenous people and human rights issues.

Relations are coordinated through a biennial Senior Official Meeting. New Zealand is South Africa's 33rd-largest trading partner.

A significant feature of the South Africa-New Zealand relationship is its sporting ties, in particular, rugby, cricket, netball and in recent years, soccer. The two countries also enjoy productive cooperation at a multilateral level.

Both countries are members of the Valdivia Group (Group of Temperate Southern Hemisphere Countries on Environment), which aims to promote the Southern Hemisphere's views at international environmental meetings and enhance scientific cooperation.

They also work closely together within the context of the Antarctic Treaty and Southern Indian Ocean Fisheries Agreement, and interact regularly within the context of the WTO and the Cairns Group.

Relations with the Middle East

South Africa's relationship with the Arab States remains cordial, with ongoing engagements at various political and economic levels that are anchored by the strategic objective of strengthening South-South relations.

Palestine

South Africa and Palestine have enjoyed warm relations since the inception of democracy. Official diplomatic relations between

a democratic South Africa and Palestine were established in 1995.

South Africa and Palestine have enjoyed warm relations since the inception of democracy. Official diplomatic relations between a democratic South Africa and Palestine were established in 1995.

In November 2018, South Africa announced its renewed commitment to a just and lasting solution to the question of Palestine. It stated that the prolonged Palestinian struggle against dispossession and the fragmentation of the State of Palestine had resulted in the aggressive displacement of many Palestinians seeking refuge, mainly in the Middle East.

South Africa remains concerned and condemns the continued illegal settlement expansion by Israel, which constitutes a contravention of international law, particularly the Fourth Geneva Convention of 1949.

South Africa believes that the only way to bring about lasting peace in the Middle East is to have a two State solution for Palestine and Israel based on the international recognition and independence of the State of Palestine.

This would be based on the 4 June 1967 borders, with East Jerusalem as its capital, functioning within recognised and secure borders and living side-by-side in peace with Israel and its other neighbours, as endorsed in the Quartet Roadmap, the Madrid Principles, the Arab Peace Initiative and the relevant UN Security Council resolutions.

Syria

Diplomatic relations between Syria and South Africa were established in June 1994, with Syria having opened an embassy in South Africa in 1998.

Since the start of the Syrian civil war in 2011, the two countries have continued to maintain diplomatic relations.

South Africa affirmed its support for Syria's territorial integrity and reiterated its support for a political solution to the conflict in Syria.

South Africa also declared its condemnation of all violence and human rights violations and remains concerned about the deteriorating humanitarian and security situation in Syria.

South Africa has called on all parties involved to work for a

comprehensive and peaceful resolution of the conflict taking into account the legitimate aspirations of the people of Syria, through inclusive national dialogue and a Syrian-led political process.

Iraq

Iraq opened its embassy in Pretoria in December 1999 and an Iraqi Ambassador was accredited to South Africa in 2001.

In February 2019, South Africa commended Iraqi authorities on the progress achieved in forming the national government. The country reaffirmed its support for the mandate of the UN Mission in Iraq. It also supports the sovereignty and territorial integrity of Iraq in line with the principles of the UN Charter

Jordan

Jordan was the first Arab country to establish diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1993. The embassy of South Africa was established in Amman in December 1993, and the embassy of Jordan was opened in Pretoria in June 1994.

In December 2018, South Africa and Jordan celebrated 25 years of the establishment of diplomatic relations, a very important milestone in the relationship.

The two countries enjoy a warm and increasingly diverse relationship, underpinned by strengthening political ties. The relationship would be further strengthened by concluding a MoU on Bilateral Consultations between the two countries.

Lebanon

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the Republic of Lebanon, with formal diplomatic relations having been re-established on 27 June 1994.

At present South Africa has no residential diplomatic presence in Lebanon. The South African Ambassador in Syria is accredited to Lebanon on a non-residential basis. South Africa attaches great importance to the ties that have been built between the two countries.

United Arab Emirates (UAE)

South Africa is committed to maintaining cordial diplomatic and trade relations with the UAE.

During the State Visit of President Ramaphosa to the UAE in July 2018, the country committed to invest US\$10 billion in South Africa with a focus on targeted sectors, such as tourism and mining to support the sustainable development of the country.

The intention is to manage the investment through a Joint investment Fund which will coordinate the interest of both South Africa and the UAE in ensuring the investment meets its intended objectives.

During second session of the Joint Commission between South Africa and the UAE held in Pretoria in October 2018, the two countries pledged to strengthen bilateral relations in areas of infrastructure and the economy.

The commission was preceded by a senior officials' meeting which saw sub-committees engage on areas of economics, trade and investment cooperation, politics, security, transportation, food security, science and technology, social development, arts and culture.

An agreement on cooperation in social development between South Africa and the UAE was signed. The cooperation will focus on early childhood intervention, research and social studies, teenager development, services to person with disabilities, among other areas of mutual interest.

Iran

The primary mechanism for engagement with Iran is the Joint Commission, established in 1995 and allows for a high-level review of bilateral relations and considers areas to further strengthen relations.

This commission is supported by an inter-sessional mechanism, the Deputy Ministerial Working Group which further monitors the implementation of decisions and undertakings made during the Joint Commission.

The ninth Deputy Ministerial Working Group between South Africa and the Islamic Republic of Iran was held in March 2019 in Cape Town.

South Africa believes in diplomacy and the peaceful resolution of conflicts. South Africa welcomed and will continue to support the Joint Comprehensive Plan of Action on Iran's nuclear programme.

The plan of action was unanimously endorsed by the UN Security Council in Resolution 2231, which provides a binding legal framework to the agreement.

Saudi Arabia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Saudi Arabia were formalised in November 1994.

In July 2018, President Ramaphosa went on a State Visit to Saudi Arabia and met King Salman bin Abdulaziz al Saud.

The purpose of the visit was to assess the status of bilateral relations, while focussing primarily on strengthening economic linkages between South Africa and Saudi Arabia, particularly in terms of increasing inward investment and diversifying the trade relationship.

South Africa imports approximately 47% of its oil from the Arab country and regards it as a strategic partner in the Middle East.

The country is also a large investor in South Africa, especially in the area of renewable energy.

To further strengthen trade, investment and economic ties, including business-to-business cooperation between South Africa and Saudi Arabia, a substantive business delegation accompanied President Ramaphosa on the visit.

In September 2018, the then International Relations and Cooperation met with His Excellency Ahmed bin Abdulaziz Kattan, Saudi Arabia's Minister of State for African Affairs, in Johannesburg.

The two Ministers committed to implementing high-level decisions emanating from President Ramaphosa's State Visit, including the pledge by the Saudi government to invest US\$10 Billion in South Africa.

Qatar

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the State of Qatar were established in 1994. South Africa's political and economic relations with Qatar have diversified and grown significantly over recent years and have become more diverse.

Qatar has traditionally enjoyed a healthy trade surplus owing to the high proportion of oil and petrochemical trade to South Africa.

Kuwait

Kuwait remains an important partner for South Africa in the Middle East, particularly in terms of economic relations.

Kuwait has become an increasingly important market for South African exports and several Kuwaiti companies have made multimillion-rand investments in the construction and development of hotels and real estate in South Africa, as well as investments on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange.

Kuwait is South Africa's largest source of FDI from the Middle East, especially in the hospitality industry, through the Zimbali Resort investment and the automotive component investment by KAPICO.

Oman

Diplomatic relations were established in 1995 and are managed through the South Africa-Oman Partnership Forum. Both countries are keen to attract further investment.

A primary project by Oman is the Port of Sohar Projects, which will facilitate the trade of agro-processed products from South Africa.

Yemen

Relations between South Africa and Yemen are cordial. Both two countries are members of UN, IORA and the NAM.

The continued civil war in Yemen has hindered the development and strengthening of bilateral relations.

North America

Canada

Canada has a long-standing and wide-ranging track record of constructive engagement, at bilateral and multilateral levels, in Africa, ranging from peacekeeping and development aid to FDI.

About two thirds of South African exports to Canada relate to minerals and mining equipment, with agricultural and chemical products making up the rest. Canada views South Africa as a gateway into the SADC and the rest of Africa.

Canada's cooperation with South Africa focuses on strengthening service delivery, support for HIV and AIDS programmes and rural development.

In June 2018, at the invitation of Prime Minister Justin Trudeau, President Ramaphosa paid a Working Visit to Canada where he participated in the G7 Leaders' Outreach Summit, held in Quebec City, under the theme "Healthy, Productive and Resilient Oceans and Seas, Coasts and Communities"

In line with the President's stated drive to attract investment to grow the economy and create jobs, as well as reduce poverty and inequality, the President had an opportunity to engage with representatives of the business community in Toronto.

On the side-lines of the G7 Summit, President Ramaphosa held a number of bilateral engagements with Heads of State and Government from various States including Norway, France, Germany, Vietnam, Rwanda, Kenya and the host country, Canada.

A successful meeting of the structured Annual Consultations took place in May 2018 in Ottawa, Canada. Bilateral trade between the two countries is largely balanced.

United States of America

Formal relations between South Africa and the United States (US) are historic, dating back to 1789.

The bilateral relationship is broad and deep, covering political, diplomatic, economic, social, scientific, educational, cultural, as well as regional and global cooperation on issues of mutual interest.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the US are cordial. The US supports South Africa's domestic priorities and continues to align its assistance programmes to the NDP. The US contributes approximately US\$541,681 million in Official Development Assistance per year and is the biggest international donor to South Africa's HIV and AIDS efforts, via the President's Emergency Programme For Aids Relief.

The US is a major economic partner for South Africa, an important export market for value-added goods, a source of FDI, technology and of tourists.

Trade and investment relations take place under the auspices of the African Growth and Opportunity Act, under which South Africa gains duty-free and quota-free access to the US market for value-added products.

The US is currently South Africa's third-largest trading partner,

absorbing a substantial amount of manufactured exports from South Africa.

South Africa continues to place a high premium on high-level political exchanges. In this regard, an invitation has been extended to the US Secretary of State to visit South Africa for the 4th meeting of the Ministerial-level South Africa – US Strategic Dialogue, which is a structured mechanism to strengthen bilateral relations and deepen cooperation on regional and global issues.

Regional Organisations

European Union (EU)

The EU remains a key strategic region for South Africa and a prominent dialogue partner from the global North.

Relations with the EU are structured in accordance with the Trade, Development and Cooperation Agreement, whereas trade relations are governed by the SADC-EU Economic Partnership Agreement (SADC-EU EPA). The SA-EU Strategic Partnership is the only strategic partnership the EU has with an African country, and one of only 10 globally.

The strategic partnership expanded the scope of the interaction beyond trade issues, to incorporate a much wider scope of cooperation with structured bilateral mechanisms and High-Level meetings (Summit, Ministerial Political Dialogue, Senior-Official meetings and Inter-Parliamentary meetings) to support South Africa's national, regional, continental, and global priorities and programmes.

The Joint Cooperation Council, Co-Chaired by the Director-General of the DIRCO and the EU counterpart, covers over twenty sectoral policy dialogues, including diverse issues such as development cooperation, science and technology, space, migration, health, trade, education and skills development, peace and security, and human rights.

The EU is South Africa's largest trading partner, as a block of 28 Member States, and largest foreign investor representing 77% of total FDI stocks in the country.

President Ramaphosa wrapped up a three-nation visit to Europe in November 2018. The visit sought to strengthen political, economic and multilateral relations with the EU as South Africa's single largest trade partner.

The visit kicked off in France, where President Ramaphosa addressed the European Parliament in Strasbourg before leading the South African delegation to the 7th European Union-South Africa Summit in Brussels in Belgium on 15 November 2018. Through the summit, South Africa and the EU renewed solidarity and agreed to strengthen relations underpinned by increased trade and investment.

South Africa is the only African country, and one of 10 countries globally, that has a strategic partnership with the EU.

More than 2 000 EU companies operate in South Africa, creating more than 500 000 direct and indirect jobs.

The President reaffirmed South Africa's bold ambition to attract US\$100 billion dollars in investment over the next five years.

On 15 and 16 November 2018, President Ramaphosa co-chaired the Global Commission on the Future of Work at the Headquarters of the ILO in Geneva, Switzerland.

Western Europe

Belgium

Relations between South Africa and Belgium are strong and dynamic, covering a number of areas that are important to South Africa's national development objectives.

Belgium serves as port of entry for the largest portion of South African exports to the European Union and beyond.

In September 2018, Minister Sisulu hosted the Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Foreign Affairs and European Affairs of Belgium on a Working Visit to South Africa.

Belgian ports are important entry points through which South African exports find their way to European countries and beyond. The balance of trade is currently in South Africa's favour.

President Ramaphosa visited Belgium in November 2018 during the second leg of his two-day Working Visit to the EU.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Belgium are underpinned by shared values of freedom and democracy and a similar approach to a broad range of international issues, specifically peace and security.

South African exports to Belgium include precious stones, organic chemicals, iron, steel and manufactured goods, while relations between Flanders and South Africa is largely driven

by development cooperation, but also includes culture, science and innovation, youth policy, education, economy and trade.

The Netherlands

Since 1994, South Africa and the Netherlands have forged a solid partnership that covers many fields, including Economic, Trade, Science and Technology, Education, Judicial, Multilateral and Culture. The Dutch has consistently supported South Africa in terms of bilateral and multilateral relations.

There are approximately 42 Agreements, MoUs and Letters of Intent in various areas, mainly in terms of Water Resource Planning, Science and Technology, Military Cooperation, Development Cooperation and Infrastructure Development.

Luxembourg

Bilateral and economic relations, especially in the financial services and funds sectors, remain strong between Luxembourg and South Africa.

Germany

South Africa and Germany have a strategic relationship, with regular structured dialogue and cooperation engagements covering a broad range of areas, including political dialogue, trade and investment, science and technology, the environment, vocational education and training, development cooperation, energy, defence, labour and social affairs, as well as arts and culture.

President Ramaphosa hosted the President of the Federal Republic of Germany, Frank-Walter Steinmeier, on a State Visit to South Africa in November 2018. The last official visit to South Africa by a German President was undertaken 20 years ago by then Federal President Roman Herzog.

This State Visit followed a bilateral meeting between President Ramaphosa and German Chancellor Angela Merkel on the margins of the G20 Africa Summit in Berlin in October 2018.

Relations between South Africa and Germany are cordial, multifaceted and of a strategic nature.

The importance of Germany to South Africa's national and international interests can be seen in Germany's support of South Africa's domestic objectives, such as fostering economic

growth, overcoming poverty and social imbalances, increasing the skills base and supporting efforts to combat the effects of climate change.

Germany is also one of the largest foreign investors in South Africa, with more than 600 German companies having subsidiaries or production in the country, sustaining approximately 100 000 jobs.

South Africa and Germany will both serve as Non-Permanent Members of the UN Security Council for the period of 2019 – 2020.

Switzerland

Relations between South Africa and Switzerland are based on equal partnership. There are some 200 Swiss companies in South Africa, employing around 36 000 South Africans. Consultations take place at the level of Deputy Minister Level.

The 9th South Africa-Switzerland High-Level Consultations was hosted by Switzerland in November 2018. South Africa hosted the 8th Session of South Africa – Switzerland Joint Economic Committee on the 15th of June 2018.

Switzerland has transitioned from a purely Development Assistance Programme in South Africa to focussing on an Economic Cooperation.

The Swiss Strategy for Economic Cooperation with South Africa is implemented by the State Secretariat for Economic Affairs and financed through the Swiss Framework Credit 2017 – 2020 for economic and trade policy measures.

The planned commitment for South Africa for the 2017 – 2020 period is 55 million Swiss Francs (approximately ZAR 740 million), which is allocated in close coordination with South Africa's National Treasury.

Switzerland has granted South Africa special status on the Swiss foreign-policy agenda as one of the focus areas for Swiss interests outside Europe.

South Africa is Switzerland's second largest trading partner in Africa after Ghana.

Switzerland is the 7th largest foreign investor in South Africa, with more than 100 Swiss companies having subsidiaries of production in South Africa, sustaining approximately 33 000 jobs.

Austria

Apart from the political dialogue, the two Foreign Ministries have signed an MoU on the Establishment of Bilateral Consultation Mechanism between the Austrian Ministry for Europe, Integration and Foreign Affairs and the Department of International Relations and Cooperation of the Republic of South Africa. The MoU was signed during the second South Africa-Austria Senior Officials Dialogue in June 2016 in Vienna, Austria.

It allows for regular bilateral consultations at senior officials level to review all aspects of bilateral relations, exchange views on regional and international issues of mutual interest as well as on developments taking place in regional and international fora.

Current bilateral programmes supported by the Austrian embassy in South Africa are as follows:

- Supporting tourism schools and curricular developments in hospitality industry;
- Supporting renewable energy training, particular solar through the Soltrain II project;
- Providing vocational welding training through the Austrian Welding Academy and with the support of the Austrian Development Agency;
- Supporting vocational training through the Ithuba College south of Johannesburg; and
- Promoting Higher Education through university to university cooperation.

The partnerships include the Universities i.e. Western Cape – Linz, Wits – Vienna, Stellenbosch – Graze and many others. South Africa enjoys cordial bilateral relations with the Republic of Austria, focused primarily on economic exchanges.

The bilateral exchanges focus on trade and investment, tourism and technological co-operation as well as vocational training.

South Africa ranks sixth among Austria's overseas trading partners, and is by far Austria's major trading partner in Africa.

Some 400 Austrian companies are engaged in trade relations with South African companies. More than 50 Austrian companies have direct investments in South Africa.

South Africa is Austria's main trading partner in Africa and ranks 6th among Austria's overseas trading partners.

United Kingdom

Bilateral relations between South Africa and the UK cover a wide spectrum and have a far-reaching impact. Cooperation between the two countries is broad and includes health, education, science and technology, energy, the environment, defence, police, arts and culture, sports and recreation.

There is a healthy flow of investment in both directions. The UK is recognised as the foremost source of FDI into South Africa, while South African companies equally have made large investments in the UK.

In August 2018, President Ramaphosa hosted the then UK Prime Minister Theresa May at Tuynhuys in Cape Town. May was in the country on a Working Visit. The visit to South Africa and other African countries was seen as a push to cement ties with countries outside the EU as Britain prepares to leave Europe's trade bloc.

In April 2018, President Ramaphosa led a South African delegation to the Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting 2018 in London and also paid a Working Visit to the UK, holding bilateral talks with former Prime Minister May.

He addressed, among others, the African Leaders' Roundtable of the Commonwealth Business Forum.

President Ramaphosa also engaged with senior international investors and business leaders hosted by Bloomberg and attended the Commonwealth Business Forum Heads of Government Roundtable with senior business leaders hosted by the then Prime Minister Theresa May.

The two countries have identified key sectors for investment to boost economic growth and development. These sectors include manufacturing, agro-processing, infrastructure development, mining, energy and tourism.

South Africa and the UK also have strong relationship in wide-ranging areas of cooperation, including energy, science and technology, education, health, arts and culture.

Ireland

Ireland was the only EU member country that did not have full diplomatic relations with South Africa until the dawn of democratic South Africa.

Ireland continues to be a valued source of FDI in the following

sectors: business services, alternative/renewable energy, software and information technology services, and plastics.

The Irish government also provides assistance to South African students through the Kader Asmal Fellowship.

France

France is a significant technological, trade, investment, tourism and development cooperation partner for South Africa.

Bilateral technical cooperation between South Africa and France exist in various sectors, including energy, agriculture, manufacturing, transport, education and science and technology. About 250 French companies have invested in South Africa and employ around 300 000 people.

In March 2019, South Africa and France agreed to strengthen bilateral relations, following their 8th South Africa-France Forum for Political Dialogue held in Pretoria.

During the meeting, the two countries committed to regular, structured bilateral meetings at ministerial level; defend the democratic values which they share and promote strong multilateralism. They agreed to increase cooperation within the framework of the G20 and in the UN Security Council, of which South Africa is a non-permanent member for the period 2019 to 2020. They further agreed to reduce global inequality under France's G7 Presidency, and continue to support the Paris Agreement on Climate Change and the common vision on the environment and human rights.

They also agreed to a number of bilateral interactions and cooperation, which include:

- Regular interaction and deliberation on addressing peace, security and development concerns in Africa;
- Deepen the working relationship between the AU, EU and UN to bolster peace keeping, security, governance and promoting democracy in Africa;
- Increase cooperation in the Indian Ocean and continue discussions about France's role in the IORA;
- Conclude arrangements for the 2019 Ministerial Joint Economic Commission in South Africa, to advance trade and investment relations;
- Conclude the implementation of the South Africa-France Partnership Framework 2016 – 2019 and to renew the

Framework during the 9th Forum for Political Dialogue in 2020.

During the forum, the two countries signed new agreements, namely the:

- Agreement on Cooperation in the Field of Basic Education;
- Declaration of Intent on Establishing a Co-funded Scholarship for master's and doctoral students;
- Framework Agreement between the South African National Space Agency and the Centre National d'Etudes Spatiales in Space Cooperation;
- Financing Agreement between the Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa Limited and Agence Française de Développement;
- Memorandum of Understanding between La Réunion National Park and South African National Parks;
- Cooperation Protocol between the Association pour le Centre de ressources et d'appui sur le risque requin à La Réunion of the French Republic and the KwaZulu-Natal Sharks Board of the Republic of South Africa.

The next Forum for Political Dialogue meeting is expected to be held in Paris on mutually agreed dates in 2020.

Greece

South Africa and Greece enjoy traditional and close ties of friendship and cooperation as well as a convergence of views and cooperation on various regional and international issues in general.

South Africa-Greece relations are, furthermore, underpinned by the presence of a substantial and influential Greek professional and business community in South Africa.

Bilateral relations between the two countries continue to grow in a number of strategic and mutually beneficial areas.

Cyprus

South Africa has excellent and long-standing bilateral relations with Cyprus. It has maintained strong ties with that country, partly because of a substantial and influential Cypriot community in South Africa.

Italy

South Africa enjoys constructive bilateral relations with Italy, based on a shared commitment to the values of freedom, democracy and a similar approach to a broad range of international issues.

This is due, in part, to the strong cultural links and long-standing diplomatic relations between the two countries underpinned by a dynamic, well-integrated and respected Italian community here which also contributes to the economy of the country.

A MoU establishing bilateral Consultation was signed and entered into force in 2003; with Senior Officials Meeting being a platform set to coordinate political relations at the Deputy Director-General level.

Spain

The 12th South Africa-Spain Annual Consultations, which serve as the main forum for coordinating bilateral relations between the two countries, was held in Spain in November 2018. The consultations were an opportunity for South Africa and Spain to strengthen relations on a wide range of issues in bilateral, political and economic matters.

The consultations are held at Deputy Ministerial level and anchored through a MoU signed in 2000.

On the trade front, Spain is one of South Africa's major trading partners in the EU.

There are 100 Spanish companies that have invested in South Africa and they are estimated to have created over 12 000 jobs largely in renewable energy and metals sectors.

Portugal

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Portugal are cordial and cover many areas, underpinned by the High-level Political Consultative Forum, which provides a platform for the two countries to explore the deepening of relations across the spectrum of South Africa's national priorities, political cooperation, the strengthening of trade and investment and development cooperation.

By mid-2018, approximately 200 South African students were pursuing tertiary education in various fields in Portugal.

Holy See

South Africa opened a Mission at the Holy See in 2017. The Holy See is of strategic importance politically and in respect of Human Rights and International Humanitarian Law.

Central, Eastern Europe, Nordic And Baltic Countries

Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys good relations with all the Nordic and Baltic countries flowing from the strong grassroots support of these countries for democratisation in South Africa.

Relations have been established in various fields at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development cooperation is broad and has benefited civil society and government. Although Nordic countries stopped providing development assistance to South Africa in 2009, these countries continue to provide technical support and also partner with South Africa and civil society in addressing development needs in various fields.

Relations in the international arena have seen close cooperation on multilateral issues. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of NEPAD and are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa.

This was reinforced by the signing of the Declaration of Intent on Partnerships in Africa in June 2008, which laid a framework for future trilateral cooperation.

Denmark

The bilateral relations between South Africa and Denmark are predicated on the historic Danish support and solidarity with the liberation struggle against apartheid in the early 1960s, leading to the eventual establishment of formal diplomatic relations at the advent of South Africa's democracy.

South Africa has close relations with Denmark dating back to the constant and strong support for democracy in South Africa. Bilateral political relations are warm and sound.

Denmark is also an important partner with regard to overseas development. South Africa's relations with Denmark are coordinated through the South Africa-Denmark Senior Officials Consultations and the main areas of cooperation include water-

resource management, science and technology, maritime affairs, and environmental affairs.

Denmark supports South Africa in achieving the objectives of the NDP and National Water & Sanitation Master Plan.

The Strategic Water Sector Programme addresses issues of financing and research and innovation. Other areas of support include exchange of expertise on affordable and clean energy and sustainable cities and communities.

Estonia

There is no resident Estonian Mission in South Africa. The South African embassy in Finland is also accredited to Estonia on a non-residential basis.

The ICT sector, Science and Technology and Tourism have been identified as potential areas for strategic bilateral cooperation between South Africa and Estonia.

Finland

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Finland were re-established in 1994. The bilateral relationship was given more definite structure with the signing of the Declaration of Intent at the Skagen Nordic Summit in 2000. Regular bilateral consultations are co-ordinated at Senior Officials' level.

The main areas of co-operation include education and skills development with special emphasis on the maritime sector and cooperation in the field of science, technology and innovation.

The blue economy is central to both countries and is also emphasised as an area with potential for future partnerships.

Finland supports Africa's infrastructure development through its funding of the EU-Africa Infrastructure Trust Fund.

It also supports the implementation of the Joint Africa-EU Strategy by promoting four of the eight thematic partnerships of the joint strategy in Africa; namely, peace and security, democratic governance and human rights, climate change and science, information society and space.

Iceland

Formal diplomatic relations were established in 1995 at an Ambassadorial level on a non-residential basis. The South African embassy in Norway is accredited to Iceland on a non-

resident basis.

In terms of trade cooperation, South Africa's exports to Iceland amount to R78 million and the Iceland's exports to South Africa amount to R70 million.

Latvia

Full diplomatic relations were established later in 1991. The South African embassy in Sweden is accredited to Latvia.

Lithuania

South Africa and Lithuania entered into diplomatic relations in 2008 and the first Lithuanian Ambassador to South Africa was appointed in 2015. The South African embassy in Sweden is accredited to Lithuania.

Relations between South Africa and Lithuania are coordinated at Senior Officials level. The main areas of cooperation between South Africa and Lithuania include Trade and Investment, Energy, Transport, Science and Technology and Academic and Cultural cooperation.

Norway

South Africa opened a Consulate General in Oslo in September 1988 while Norway already had a Consulate General in Cape Town. In January 1992, diplomatic relations were upgraded to ambassadorial level.

South Africa and Norway have a history of working together in the promotion of democracy; good governance and human rights. Both countries cooperate and support each other in bilateral and multilateral relations.

South Africa's relations with Norway are coordinated through the South Africa-Norway High Level Consultations.

South Africa and Norway cooperate in the field of Peace Building and Mediation. The Programme focuses on building capacities for female mediators in conflict situations.

Training provided includes women in government and non-government organisations. In the area of the Blue Economy, South Africa and Norway have established a Fisheries Law Enforcement Academy at Nelson Mandela University called FishFORCE. The Norwegian government has committed an amount of approximately R50 million (over the next five years)

to the academy.

In the area of science and technology, South Africa and Norway have signed a new framework programme for joint research cooperation, referred to as, South Africa-Norway research co-operation, focusing on blue economy, climate change, the environment and sustainable energy. The programme will run over a period of five years, starting from 2018 to 2023.

The goal of the project is to enhance the knowledge base for policies and decisions for sustainable development in the areas of oceans and blue economy, environment – with emphasis on oceans and pollution, climate change and sustainable energy in South Africa and Norway.

In March 2018, South Africa and Norway met to discuss ways to strengthen their bilateral relations. They have sought to deepen co-operation in areas such as the maritime sector, alternative and renewable energy, environmental protection, science and technology and skills development.

The meeting took place within the framework of the 1996 MoU on Bilateral Political Consultations between the two countries.

South Africa and Norway have developed a close relationship dating back to the early Struggle years when Norway became an active supporter of organised resistance against the apartheid regime.

In the 1990s, a new era of cooperation in higher education and research was initiated, both bilaterally and multilaterally, including a number of joint projects between South African and Norwegian higher education institutions.

South Africa and Norway have also been conducting annual high-level bilateral consultations to identify areas of common political and economic interest.

Following the launch of Operation Phakisa, South Africa and Norway re-confirmed their mutual interest in exploring opportunities for development of ocean space and the blue economy, including the maritime sector, marine resources and aquaculture.

The two countries have further agreed to strengthen bilateral cooperation on the environment and to explore opportunities in the area of renewable energies.

Sweden

Formal relations between Sweden and South Africa date back to the 1930s when a South African legation was opened in Stockholm. Relations were upgraded to Ambassadorial level in 1994. Bilateral Relations are co-ordinated through the South Africa-Swedish Binational Commission, which was inaugurated in September 2000 by former President Thabo Mbeki and Prime Minister Göran Persson.

Areas of co-operation include science and technology, maritime affairs, and environmental affairs.

South Africa's relations with Sweden are coordinated at Deputy President's level and the main areas of cooperation.

The Swedish government has extended the 30 fully funded scholarships for South Africans to pursue post-graduate studies in Sweden until 2021. The programme offers 10 scholarships per annum over a period of three academic years.

Eastern Europe

The Eastern Europe region is of crucial importance to South Africa's strategic objectives, straddling a wide spectrum of political and economic interests.

The region is well endowed with strategic commodities and minerals that are of vital significance to South Africa's economy.

Cooperation in gas and oil and energy can go a long way towards alleviating South Africa's energy needs.

Azerbaijan

South Africa and Azerbaijan established diplomatic relations in 1991. The South African embassy in Ankara is also accredited to Azerbaijan on a non-residential basis.

Structured bilateral relations were established by means of an MoU on Regular Diplomatic Consultations that was concluded in February 2014. The MoU provides for the strengthening and broadening of the scope of bilateral co-operation in the political, economic, scientific, technological, cultural and humanitarian areas. Other areas of potential interests are energy, defence and air services.

Belarus

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Belarus

were established in March 1993. Currently the South African Ambassador to the Russian Federation is the non-residential Ambassador to the Belarus. Belarus opened its embassy in South Africa in January 2000 and the first South African Ambassador presented credentials in February 2000.

South Africa and Belarus mainly engage through the Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation led by the Department of Trade and Industry (dti).

The committee is co-chaired at the level of Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs on the Belarusian side and at the Deputy Minister of the dti on the South African side.

The primary objective of Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation is to strengthen and develop trade and economic cooperation on a long term and stable basis and on the principles of equality and mutual benefit.

Georgia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Georgia were established in 1992. The South African embassy in Kyiv, Ukraine, is non-residentially accredited to Georgia. The government of Georgia opened an embassy in South Africa in August 2011.

The two countries have good bilateral relations and have been cooperating mainly through sport, culture and in the agricultural sector especially through wine making exchange programmes.

Through joint efforts, Georgian and South African links are deepening through increased interactions in culture and sports, such as rugby.

The two countries have established a Wine Makers exchange programme which has seen student and expert exchanges between Telavi State University (Faculty of Agra-Sciences) and the University of Stellenbosch (Faculty of Wine Sciences)

Russian Federation

South Africa regards the Russian Federation as an important strategic partner and close bilateral and multilateral ties exist between the two countries.

With the dissolution of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, South Africa became the first African state to recognise the independence of the Russian Federation. Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and the

Russian Federation in February 1992.

Since the re-establishment of bilateral relations, South Africa's relations with Russia have evolved into a strategic relationship over the past few years through continued high level political engagements.

One of the primary mechanisms for improving the bilateral relationship and advancing the government's development objectives is the Inter-Governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Co-operation which was established in 1999. The committee is the most important mechanism underpinning mutually beneficial trade and economic ties between the two countries.

The Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation has proven to be an effective instrument for effective engagement on trade and investment issues, as well as critical skills and technology transfers amongst others. The Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation has given practical substance to the political commitment on the part of the two countries to work together, as expressed in the Treaty of Friendship and Partnership signed by both countries.

Sectors covered within the Inter-governmental Committee on Trade and Economic Cooperation include Agriculture; Forestry and Fisheries; Energy; Education; Mineral Resources; Science and Technology; Transport; Water and Sanitation; Trade and Industry and the South Africa-Russia Business Council.

Further substance has been added to the growing relationship through the South Africa-Russia Friendship and Cooperation Agreement which was signed in 2006 and a Declaration on Strategic Partnership between the Republic of South Africa and Russia was signed in March 2013.

Serbia

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Serbia were established in April 2002 when Serbia was still referred to as the Federal Republic of Yugoslavia.

Serbia regards South Africa as a strategic partner on the African continent, a regional power and a leading economy that is playing a positive role in promoting peace, security and sustainable development in Africa.

South Africa's contribution to the advancement of multilateralism, the rule of law, human rights and an equitable global governance system is similarly appreciated.

Serbia opened its embassy in Pretoria in June 1996. The South African Ambassador in Athens, Greece, is accredited to the Republic of Serbia on a non-resident basis.

Areas of cooperation are based on shared interests between the two countries, including consolidation of peace and security, the establishment of democratic values and observance of human rights as embodied in the UN Charter.

Turkey

The South Africa-Turkey strategic partnership is informed by the two countries' growing political and economic profile and their geostrategic location in Africa and Euro-Asia; Turkey's rapidly growing political and economic footprint in Africa, including the Africa-Turkey strategic partnership; the two countries' capacity to project their foreign policies regionally and globally; active participation and membership in various organisations such as the G20 and the UN.

Relations between South Africa and Turkey had since 2005 been co-ordinated through the South Africa-Turkey Joint Economic Commission.

An Agreement to elevate the relations to a Bi-National Commission at Deputy President and Prime Minister levels respectively, was signed in Turkey in June 2012 and ratified by the Turkish Parliament in July 2015.

On the economic front, Economic Relations between South Africa and Turkey are coordinated through the South Africa-Turkey Joint Economic Commission, led by the South African Minister of Trade and Industry on the South African side.

The primary objective of the commission, which was established in 2005, is to promote and deepen bilateral trade relations and economic between the two countries.

The priority sectors for the Joint Economic Commission include agriculture and agri-business; automotives; infrastructure, energy and construction services; minerals resources; textile and clothing; as well as tourism.

Ukraine

Diplomatic relations between Ukraine and South Africa were established in March 1992. South Africa opened its embassy in Kiev during October 1992 whilst Ukraine opened its embassy in Pretoria during 1995.

Cooperation between the two countries is guided through regular Senior Officials' Political Consultations. Areas of cooperation between South Africa and Ukraine include military cooperation, education and science and technology.

Central Europe

Central Europe has seen substantial improvement in relations with South Africa. A number of bilateral mechanisms with these countries were established at various levels.

The areas of cooperation have been considerable in, inter alia, the fields of education, arts and culture, science and technology, agriculture, water affairs, trade, tourism. South Africa works very closely with Central European countries on multilateral forums.

Bulgaria

South Africa and Bulgaria have maintained cordial and warm relations dating back to the liberation struggle as Bulgaria hosted a number of anti-apartheid activists.

Diplomatic relations at the level of Ambassador were established through the exchange of Notes in February 1992 and the South African embassy in Sofia started functioning in 1992, while the Bulgarian embassy in Pretoria was opened in February 1993.

Croatia

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Croatia have developed steadily since diplomatic relations were established in 1992. The South African embassy in Hungary is accredited to Croatia whilst Croatia opened its embassy in Pretoria in November 1995.

Bilateral relations between the two countries are co-ordinated at the level of senior officials with emphasis in various areas such as marine technology, higher education and training, science and technology, and tourism.

Czech Republic

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Czech Republic were established in 1991 and resident embassies in each other's capitals were established soon after.

Bilateral relations have evolved to a level of maturity, underpinned by increasing commercial and business-to-business activities, as well as people-to-people exchanges.

Political consultations are coordinated at Deputy Ministerial level. Areas of cooperation between the two countries include tourism, defence, medical equipment, pharmaceuticals and agro-processing.

In November 2018, South Africa and the Czech Republic held a meeting for political consultations in Pretoria. It focussed on trade and investment, tourism, defence cooperation and science and technology.

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Czech Republic were established in July 1991, with the two countries enjoying cordial relations demonstrated by an extensive exchange of visits.

Relations between South Africa and Czech Republic are governed by the South Africa-Czech Republic Joint Committee for Economic Cooperation, which aims to promote and deepen bilateral trade and economic cooperation.

Hungary

Hungary was the first, among the Central European countries, to establish diplomatic ties with South Africa. Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Hungary were established in July 1991.

Both countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Hungary and South Africa cooperate in the fields of education, science and technology. The cooperation on higher education and training came into effect in 2016.

The first 85 students travelled to Hungary in August 2017 to study in various fields and at various levels of bachelors, master's and PhD.

The two countries also have a bilateral agreement in the field of water resource management.

Poland

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Czech Republic were concluded on 18 December 1991 and embassies were opened in each capital.

Political consultations between the two countries were established thereafter and are co-ordinated at the Deputy Minister's level. Poland, with a population of 38 million people, is the sixth-largest economy in the EU.

South Africa is Poland's top trade partner in Africa. Areas of cooperation between Poland and South Africa include aeronautics, automobiles, defence and agriculture.

Romania

South Africa and Romania established diplomatic relations in November 1991. The formal mechanism, legalising bilateral political consultations on an institutionalised basis between South Africa and Romania, was signed in September 2016. The protocol is crucial in strengthening bilateral relations as well as providing a political framework for other agreements and commitments.

South Africa and Romania signed an agreement in the field of science and technology in September 2004. The partnership has successfully contributed to scientific advancement in both countries.

Other areas of cooperation between South Africa and Romania include energy, mining, agriculture, and marine technology.

Slovakia

Full diplomatic relations between the former Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia and South Africa were established in October 1991.

The dissolution of the Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia brought about the Slovak Republic as a separate sovereign state in 1993.

The bilateral diplomatic relations entered into with the Federal Republic of Czechoslovakia continued uninterrupted with the Slovak Republic. South Africa's bilateral relations with Slovakia are sound.

Whilst South Africa does not have an embassy in Bratislava, South Africa's relations with Slovakia are managed on a non-

resident basis by the South African embassy in Vienna.

Areas of co-operation between South Africa and Slovakia are in the fields of automobiles (including automotive components), agro-processing, medical equipment and pharmaceuticals.

Slovenia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Slovenia were established in 1992. However, both countries do not have resident diplomatic representation in each other's country.

Both countries enjoy cordial bilateral relations. Bilateral relations between the two countries exist at the level of Senior Officials with meetings taking place alternatively every two years.

Mexico

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Mexico are good and the two countries work closely together in multilateral forums on issues such as South-South cooperation and nuclear disarmament. South Africa is Mexico's biggest trading partner in Africa.

Latin America and the Caribbean

South Africa's bilateral relations with Latin America and the Caribbean continue to advance the development agenda of the South, and strengthen cooperation among developing countries through active participation in groupings of the South at regional, inter-regional and multilateral levels.

In this regard, the need to build stronger and balanced relationships with Latin American and Caribbean countries is of particular importance. South Africa has observer status in the Caribbean Community and Common Market and acts as the region's voice in the G20.

Brazil

The Presidents of South Africa and Brazil meet regularly to discuss issues of mutual interest. South Africa maintains the view that the Rio+20 Conference, which took place in Brazil, helped to ensure that the issue of sustainable development remained a top priority on the agenda of the UN and the international community.

The preferential trade agreement between the SACU and the Southern Common Market trade blocs has led to a steady increase of South African exports into Brazil. According to trade statistics, the trade deficit with Brazil shrunk considerably in 2018 – US\$700 million down from US\$1.2 billion in 2017. This was due to the fact that South Africa has increased its exports to Brazil by 37% from US\$483 million in 2017 to US\$663 million in 2018.

Part of this was due to the ratification of the SACU/Southern Common Market preferential trade agreement where SACU had offered the Southern Common Market tariff line items of about 1065 product lines across 16 sectors of which 469 products are zero percent import duty free.

The Southern Common Market reciprocated this agreement by offering SACU 1052 product lines of which 778 products were at 0% import duty free.

Argentina

Argentina is South Africa's third-largest trading partner in the Latin American and Caribbean region after Brazil and Mexico. Regular ministerial meetings ensure continuous improvement in bilateral ties.

The Caribbean

South Africa enjoys cordial relations with the countries of the Caribbean. The majority of inhabitants of the Caribbean are of African descent and have strong historical and cultural links to the continent.

South Africa's endeavour in conjunction with the AU and Caricom to strengthen cooperation between Africa and the African Diaspora in the Caribbean has given added impetus to bilateral and multilateral relations. South Africa attaches importance to strengthening its relations with the Caribbean and developing common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial North, reform of international institutions and promoting the development agenda and protection of small island states.

Uruguay, Chile and Colombia

South Africa and Chile enjoy sound bilateral relations, which are conducted through the Joint Consultative Mechanism at deputy ministerial level.

The Joint Consultative Mechanism continues to serve a constructive purpose in the ongoing political dialogue between the two countries at bilateral, regional and multilateral levels.

South Africa is Chile's largest trading partner in Africa and South Africa is the biggest investor in Chile's mining sector. The biggest area of trade between South Africa and Chile is capital goods for mining.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Colombia are cordial and growing. In January 2019, South Africa affirmed its commitment to assist Colombia in achieving lasting peace after years of conflict.

Peru

South Africa is one of the largest investors in Peru, with SABMiller and Anglo American operating in that country.

The main South African exports to Peru are mining equipment, paper and carton, metal sheeting and specialised structural steel.

Venezuela

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and the Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela were established in 1993 and in 1995. The two countries share cordial relations premised on mainly political relations.

In July 2018, South Africa hosted the Venezuelan Minister of Foreign Affairs after Venezuela held its Presidential elections in May 2018. The visit was an opportunity to continue to strengthen the existing bilateral relations between South Africa and Venezuela, specifically in the areas of trade and investment; agriculture; energy; transport; mining, tourism and consular matters.

In January 2019, President Ramaphosa congratulated Nicolas Maduro Moros of Venezuela, following his inauguration for a second term.

Cuba

Cuba remains a strategic partner of South Africa and the region.

Relations between South Africa and Cuba are characterised by high-level political dialogues.

There are over 30 signed bilateral agreements in place between the two countries covering vast areas of cooperation. The most active of these agreements are in the areas of health cooperation, human settlements technical exchange, public works technical assistance, cooperation on water resource management and water supply and most recently, the agreement on professional services in the field of basic education.

In April 2018, President Ramaphosa congratulated the new President of Cuba, His Excellency Miguel Diaz-Canel.

In July 2018, Minister Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma attended the graduation ceremony of 700 medical students from the Nelson Mandela-Fidel Castro Programme in Cuba.

The programme was forged by Presidents Nelson Mandela and Fidel Castro in 1996 as part of the various bilateral agreements between South Africa and Cuba.

